

made by Mansy

على ع النبي وإدع على دعوة حلوة

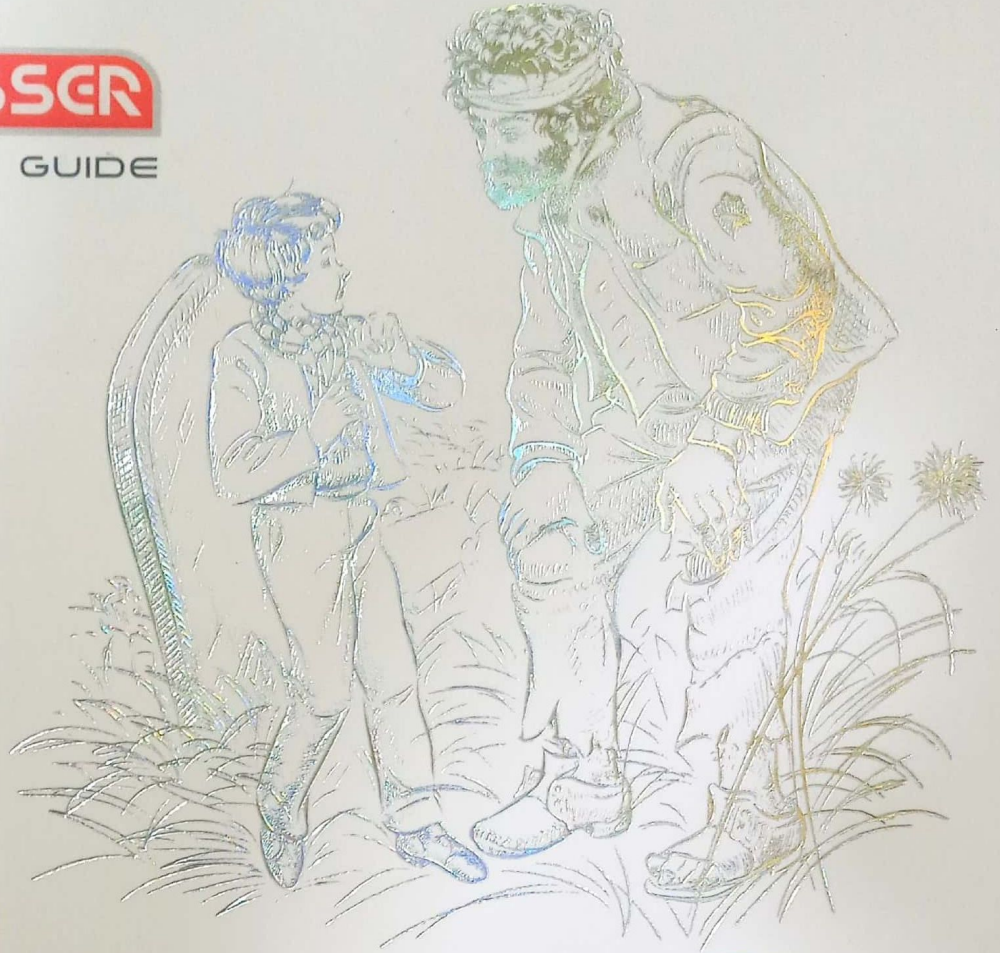
#دفعه المنوفية 2022

#قناة تالة ثانوى 2022



EL-MOASSER

GUIDE



New

Hello!

& Great Expectations

By A Group Of Supervisors



UNIT 7

The meaning of success

SB pages 6 : 15

WB pages 2 : 7

Learning Outcomes :

❖ Reading :

An article about achieving success despite challenges

❖ Writing :

An invitation to an event to celebrate achievements

❖ Listening :

A short lecture about what successful people have in common

❖ Speaking :

Research, plan and give a presentation about a successful person

❖ Language :

Present perfect simple versus present perfect continuous; adverbs and adjectives (review)

❖ Life skills :

Critical thinking: evaluate the meaning of success; Problem solving: how to achieve set goals



لإتقان الوحدة

- * تلك الأسئلة والامتحانات التدريبية.
- * دليل المعاصر في المهارات.
- * قاموس المعاصر اللغوي.
- * دليل المعاصر للأزهر الشريف.

1 & 2

LESSONS
SB pages 6 - 9 WB pages 2 & 3

Vocabulary

Part 1

• اختبر مدى إتقانك للمفردات الرئيسية في كراسة المفردات الإضافية.
• المفردات اللغوية باللون الأحمر هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية.

تلوية

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

achieve(d) (v)	يُنجز - يحقق	inspiring(adj)	مُلهم
achievement(n)	إنجاز	inspiration(n)	إلهام
administrative(adj)	إداري	powerlifting(n)	رياضة القوة - رفع الأثقال
challenge (d) (v/n)	يتحدى - تحدي	quality(n)	سجة - خاصية
combine(d) (v)	يربط - يجمع/يضم	quote(d) (v/n)	يقتبس - اقتباس
councillor(n)	عضو مجلس	signposting(n)	إرشاد - لافتة - دلالة
impress(ed) (v)	يُبهِّر - يثير إعجاب	signposting	
impressive(adj)	مُبهِّر	language (n)	اللغة الدلالية
independent(adj)	مُستقل	success(n)	النجاح
inspire(d) (v)	يُلهم		

2 Important Vocabulary

accept(ed) (v)	يقبل	lift(ed) (v)	يرفع
assistant(n)	مُساعد	male(n/adj)	ذكر - مذكر
average(adj/n)	متوسط/عادي	muscle(n)	عضلة
averagely(adv)	في المعدل/في المتوسط	opportunity(n)	فرصة
celebrate(d) (v)	يحتفل بـ/يُحيي مناسبة	overcome - overcame	يتغلب علي
certain(adj)	مُتأكد - مؤكد	- overcome (v)	
certainly(adv)	بالتأكيد	Paralympics(n)	الألعاب الأولمبية لنوي الهمم
championship(n)	بطولة	paraphrase(d) (v)	يشرح/يُفسِّر
childhood(n)	(مرحلة) الطفولة	perform(ed) (v)	يؤدي
choice(n)	اختيار	polio =	شلل الأطفال
determination(n)	إصرار	(poliomyelitis) (n)	
disability(n)	صعوبة - إعاقة	presentation(n)	عرض تقديمي
Down's Syndrome(n)	متلازمة داون	quality(n)	سمة - ميزة
enthusiastic(adj)	مُتحمس - شغوف	quote(d) (v/n)	يقتبس - اقتباس
evaluate(d) (v)	يُقيِّم - يُقدِّر	rarely(adv)	نادرًا
event(n)	مُناسبة - حدث	role model(n)	مُثل أعلى/قدوة
extreme(n)	شديد - متطرف	significant(adj)	كبير/ملحوظ
		silver(n)	ميدالية فضية - الفضة

extremely(adv)	للمغاية	specific(adj)	مُحدد
facilities(n)	مُرافق - تسهيلات	summarise(d) (v)	يُلخِّص
female(n/adj)	أنثي - مؤنث	task(n)	مِهْمة/تَكليف
highlight(ed) (v)	يُبرز - يُظلل	treat(ed) (v)	يُعالم - يعالج
importance(n)	أهمية	value(n)	قيمة
interest(ed) (n/v)	اهتمام - يثير اهتمام	Valladolid(n)	بلد الوليد
lecture(n)	محاضرة	vote(d) (n/v)	تصويت/اقتراع - يُصوَّت/
lecturer(n)	مُحاضر		يقترع

3 Definitions تعريفات

administrative (adj)	إداري (خاص بالإدارة)	relating to the work of managing a company or organization
challenge (n)	تَحْدِي	something that tests strength, skill, or ability, especially in a way that is interesting
combine(d) (v)	يجمع بين / يضم	to do two different activities at the same time
councillor(n)	عضو مجلس	a member of a council
impressive(adj)	مُبهِّر	making you admire it because it is very good, large, important, etc.
independent(adj)	مُستقل	confident and able to do things by yourself in your own way, without needing help or advice from other people
inspiration(n)	إلهام	- a person, experience, place, etc. that gives you new ideas for something you do - a good idea about what you should do, write, say, etc., especially one which you get suddenly
quality(n)	سمة - خاصية	something that people may have as part of their character, for example courage or intelligence
quote(d) (v)	يقتبس	to give a piece of information that is written down somewhere

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

- ★ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

1. To me, secondary 3 is a/an I work hard to overcome.
a. achievement b. success c. inspiration d. challenge

2. Teenagers look forward to being totally of their families.
a. inspiring b. independent c. impressive d. administrative
3. Your performance has us. You're really talented.
a. evaluated b. combined c. impressed d. paraphrased
4. I believe that time planning is necessary if one wants to be a/an
a. achievement b. success c. determination d. challenge
5. The job of a secretary is mainly
a. inspiring b. independent c. impressive d. administrative
6. Poets find nature It is the source of the ideas for most poems.
a. inspiring b. independent c. impressed d. administrative
7. I began at 14, and at 20 I got into boxing.
a. value b. powerlifting c. polio d. Syndrome
8. As a writer, Naguib Mahfouz found for his novels in the Cairo society around him.
a. achievement b. success c. inspiration d. challenge
9. We've significant success so far.
a. challenged b. achieved c. overcame d. treated
10. Ronaldo is a/an footballer. Most fans admire him.
a. average b. independent c. impressive d. administrative
11. The great achievements Dr Zewail made young scientists.
a. evaluate b. combine c. summarise d. inspire
12. Winning the gold medal in the Olympics is the best I've made.
a. achievement b. syndrome c. inspiration d. challenge
13. Criminals the authority of law, so they are punished by law.
a. challenge b. achieve c. overcome d. treat

2 Important vocabulary

14. I sent my complaint شكوي to the local
a. quote b. disability c. role model d. councillor
15. We need to the new system to see how much we've achieved.
a. evaluate b. combine c. impress d. inspire
16. I have a cousin who suffers from Downs
a. value b. powerlifting c. polio d. Syndrome
17. I believe that is one of the top ingredients of success.
a. determination b. presentation c. opportunity d. championship
18. I was careful to attend Professor Sallam's
a. votes b. averages c. lectures d. Paralympics

19. Teenagers like it when you them like grown-ups.
a. challenge b. achieve c. overcome d. treat
20. My father is about football. He never misses watching a match.
a. enthusiastic b. significant c. male d. female
21. Oxygen and hydrogen to make water.
a. evaluate b. combine c. impress d. inspire
22. I won't go out until I finish the in hand.
a. facility b. task c. polio d. Syndrome
23. I look up to my father. He is my
a. quote b. disability c. role model d. modal
24. I won't understand this poem unless it is
a. lifted b. interested c. impressed d. paraphrased
25. The first symptoms أعراض of are fever الحمى, headache and a stiff neck.
a. value b. powerlifting c. polio d. Syndrome
26. Giving a/an needs a lot of careful preparation.
a. determination b. presentation c. opportunity d. championship
27. Despite her disability, she won the gold in the
a. Olympics b. average c. lecture d. Paralympics
28. My father has played a/an role in my life. I am all his.
a. enthusiastic b. significant c. male d. female
29. Mrs Nadene, my secretary, the long report in only two pages.
a. evaluated b. combined c. summarised d. inspired
30. Our city lacks the car parking
a. facility b. task c. polio d. Syndrome
31. I think Liverpool will win the this year.
a. determination b. presentation c. opportunity d. championship
32. He won the and became a member of the local council.
a. vote b. average c. lecture d. Paralympic
33. Sometimes, is what encourages a person to prove he is not less than ordinary people.
a. quote b. disability c. role model d. councillor
34. Take this job, Omar. It is a/an that is rarely available.
a. determination b. presentation c. opportunity d. championship

3 Definitions

35. A is a member of a council.
a. counsellor b. councillor c. challenge d. role model

36. A/An is a good idea about what you should do, write, say, etc., especially one which you get suddenly.
a. inspiration b. value c. challenge d. role model
37. means confident and able to do things by yourself in your own way, without needing help or advice from other people.
a. Specific b. Independent c. Extreme d. Impressive
38. To is to do two different activities at the same time.
a. combine b. overcome c. treat d. evaluate
39. Something that is means making you admire it because it is very good, large, important, etc.
a. specific b. independent c. extreme d. impressive
40. A/An is something that tests strength, skill, or ability, especially in a way that is interesting.
a. inspiration b. value c. challenge d. role model
41. means relating to the work of managing a company or organisation.
a. Administrative b. Independent c. Impressive d. Ugly
42. A is something that people may have as part of their character, for example courage or intelligence.
a. counsellor b. councillor c. challenge d. quality
43. To is to give a piece of information that is written down somewhere.
a. combine b. overcome c. quote d. evaluate

Part II Vocabulary Study

تنبويه ساعد معلمك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مُسبقاً بشكل جيد.

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

achieve	an important position يُحقق مكانة هامة	make	... a success يجعل ... ناجحاً
	set goals يُحقق الأهداف الموضوعة		a successful student يجعل الطالب ناجح
	success يُحقق نجاح		their own choices يختاروا
become	free يُصبح متاحاً	overcome	a challenge يكسب التحدي
catch	a disease يُصاب بعرض	play	the drums يُطبل - يدق الطبل
change	people's mind يُغيّر رأي الناس	set	goals يحدد أهداف

do	a sport يُمارس رياضة the housework يقوم بالأعمال المنزلية well يؤدي جيداً	take	a break يأخذ استراحة care of يرعى / يعتني بـ notes يُدوّن ملاحظات
give	a presentation يقدم عرض تقديمي	treat	... with respect يعامل ... باحترام
have	... in common بينهم ... مشتركة	win	the vote يفوز في اقتراع (انتخابات)

Mini Test 1 Collocations

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- His hard work stands behind the important position he has
a. done b. achieved c. treated d. made
- I have to work hard to achieve the goals I've for myself.
a. caught b. taken c. achieved d. set
- The qualities we in common make us a matching couple.
a. change b. give c. have d. win
- It is better for children to let them their own choices.
a. do b. overcome c. become d. make
- Be careful, otherwise, you'll diseases.
a. catch b. win c. achieve d. set
- The most sociable student the class vote.
a. became b. gave c. played d. won
- Fortunately, I well in the final exam.
a. did b. had c. treated d. made
- Here's a pen and a notebook in case you need to take
a. a break b. care of c. notes d. out
- I am to a presentation at the next meeting.
a. change b. give c. set d. win

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
achieve (v)	يُنجز - يَحقّق
impressive(adj)	مُبهر
independent(adj)	مُسْتَقِل
inspiration(n)	إلهام
overcome (v)	يتغلب على
	reach / realise / fulfil / carry out
	admirable
	self-reliant
	motivation
	defeat / beat / conquer

3 Antonyms متضادات

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)
achieve (v)	fail/miss
impressive (adj)	unimpressive/ ordinary
independent (adj)	dependent
success (n)	failure

Mini Test 2 Synonyms & Antonyms

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- "You need to overcome your fear of heights." The verb 'overcome' in this context is a synonym of
a. reach b. conquer c. fail d. mess
- When one is a success, this means they're not
a. a triumph b. winners c. successful d. a failure
- "I've achieved nearly all my goals." The verb 'achieved' here is an antonym of
a. failed b. realised c. reached d. b & c
- "He's made an impressive achievement." The adjective 'impressive' here can be replaced by
a. admired b. admirable c. ordinary d. usual

4 Derivatives المشتقات

Verb	Noun	Adjective
achieve يُنجِز - يحقق	achievement إنجاز	achievable يمكن تحقيقه
administrate / administer يدير	administration الإدارة	administrative إداري (خاص بالإدارة)
challenge يتحدّى	challenge تحديّ	challenging يمثل أو يشكل تحدي - صعب التحقيق
combine يجمع بين - يربط	combination مزيج - خليط - توليفة - المزج - الخلط	combined مترابط - ممتزج
impress يُبهر - يثير إعجاب	impression انطباع - تأثير - أثر	impressive شديد التأثير
	independence استقلالية	independent مُستقل
inspire يُلهِم	inspiration إلهام	inspiring مُلهِم
succeed ينجح	success النجاح	successful مُشجع / مُحفّز ناجح

Mini Test 3 Derivatives

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Mohammed Salah is a source of to so many young people.
a. inspires b. inspired c. inspiration d. b & c
- Mohammed Salah so many young people.
a. inspires b. inspiring c. inspiration d. b & c
- Mohammed Salah is to so many young people.
a. inspire b. inspiring c. inspirations d. b & c
- She is a
a. succeeds b. success c. successful d. successfully
- She is
a. succeeds b. success c. successful d. successfully
- She has achieved her goal
a. succeeds b. success c. successful d. successfully
- The performance of the team all fans.
a. impressed b. impression c. impressive d. impress
- The performance of the team gave a good to all fans.
a. impressed b. impression c. impressive d. impress
- The performance of the team was to all fans.
a. impressed b. impression c. impressive d. impress
- Good is good behaviour.
a. treats b. treat c. treated d. treatment
- A child needs to with others to improve his/her communication skills.
a. combines b. combine c. combination d. combined
- A child needs with others to improve his/her communication skills.
a. combines b. combine c. combination d. combined
- After years of his work as a councillor, he developed his valuable skills.
a. administrate b. administrative c. counsellor d. administer

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

average person الشخص العادي	learning disability صعوبة التعلّم
be a mother to تكون أمّاً لـ	see no good reason why لا يجد مبرراً قوياً لـ
be an inspiration to يُمثّل إلهاماً لـ	signposting language اللغة الدلالية
be likely to من المرجح أن	signposting words and phrases المفردات والعبارات الدلالية

different to/from
enthusiastic about
in commonمختلف عن
مُتحمّس لـ
مُشترك

town councillor

World Para Powerlifting Championship

عضو مجلس المدينة

بطولة العالم لألعاب القوة للنرى الهمم

6 Synonymous idioms تعبيرات مترادفة

aged fifteen = at the age of fifteen
بالغ من العمر خمسة عشر عامًاdevelop an interest in = become more
interested in
يزداد شغفه بهhardly ever = almost no
قلما (قليلاً ما)on their own = alone/without help
بمفردهمcome to the conclusion that
يستنتج أن - يخلص إلى

= concludes that

in terms of = in relation to
من حيثtry your best = spare no effort
= do everything you can

تبذل قصارى جهدك

7 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

combine ... with
grow up
move on toيجمع بين ... و ...
يكبر - يتعرّج
ينتقل إلىresult in
write downيؤدي إلى
يُلوّن/يُسجّل

Mini Test 4 Expressions, Prepositions & Idioms

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- He is a/an person, neither very tall nor extremely short.
a. certain b. certainly c. average d. averagely
- "Smoking results in several health problems." The phrasal 'results in' in this utterance can be replaced by '.....'.
a. leads to b. comes from c. results from d. brings to
- Which of the following is used to mean 'without help'?
a. of their own b. on their own
c. helplessly d. on the other hand
- Many people can combine family care success at work.
a. from b. at c. with d. about
- "He sees the new plan in terms of what problems it might lead to." The expression 'in terms of' here can be replaced by '.....'.
a. due to b. because of c. as a result of d. in relation to

- That is all about this point. Let's move the next one.
a. on to b. away from c. result in d. on down
- I find no good reason she has refused to marry him.
a. for b. of c. why d. what
- My grandmother died last year, ninety-two.
a. aged b. at the age of c. when she is d. a & b
- The two sisters have several things common.
a. at b. in c. about d. from
- When you take notes, this means you write some notes
a. up b. down c. to d. from

8 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

Down syndrome

Down Syndrome or Down's Syndrome is a genetic disorder caused by the presence of all or part of a third copy of chromosome 21. It is usually associated with physical growth delays, mild to moderate intellectual disability, and characteristic facial features.

متلازمة أو تناذر داون هي متلازمة وراثية تنتج عن تغير في الكروموسومات؛ حيث توجد نسخة إضافية من كروموسوم ٢١ أو جزء منه في الخلايا مما يسبب تغيراً في المورثات، وتتسم الحالة بوجود تغييرات كبيرة أو صغيرة في بنية الجسم، ويصاحب المتلازمة غالباً ضعف في القدرات الذهنية والنمو البدني، ويمتاز بوجهية مميزة.

powerlifting / weightlifting

- powerlifting (n)** رياضة القوة (اسم غير معدود)
Powerlifting is a strength sport that consists of three attempts at maximal weight on three lifts: squat, bench press, and deadlift.
- رياضة القوة هي إحدى أنواع رياضات رفع الأثقال، وتتألف من ثلاثة أقسام وهي: بنش برس، القرفصاء، الرفعة الميتة.
- weightlifting (n)** رفع الأثقال (اسم غير معدود)
- Weightlifting is the sport of lifting specially shaped pieces of metal that weigh an exact amount.
- رفع الأثقال هي رياضة رفع قطع معدنية ذات أشكال خاصة ذات وزن مُحدّد.

success / successful

- be successful = be a success** نجاح
- His first novel was successful.
= His first novel was a success.

councillor / counsellor

• councillor / counselor

- The councillors tried to solve the problem.

عضو مجلس

• counsellor (n)

- It is a good idea to talk to a marriage counsellor before you get married.

مستشار / مُرشد

9 Master your Key Vocabulary كل ما يخص المفردات الرئيسية

challenge

• challenge (d) (v)

- I can't challenge him at maths. He is much better than me.

يتحدى

• challenge (n)

- Winning the final match was a challenge, but it was our team's day.

تَحَدِّي

• challenging (adj)

- He doesn't like routine, so he looks for a challenging job.

يُمَثِّل تحديًا (به قدر من الإثارة مع الصعوبة)

• unchallenged (adj)

- My grandfather's opinions are always unchallenged.

مقبول - متعارف عليه - مُتَّفَق عليه

• unchallengeable (adj)

- I have unchallengeable belief in the importance of hard work.

مُطَلَق / راسخ / ثابت / غير قابل للنقاش

لاحظ استخدم الصفة (challenged) بمعنى (مُعاق):

- visually challenged مُعاق بصريًا - physically challenged مُعاق بدنيًا
- mentally challenged مُعاق ذهنيًا
- Wheelchairs are used by those who are physically challenged.

impressive

• impress (with/by) (v)

- Some teenagers buy very expensive clothes to impress other people.
- She has impressed us with her intelligence.

يُبهر / يُثير إعجاب

• impress (on) (v)

- My grandfather impressed on me love of reading.

يُرسِّخ في الذهن

• impressive (adj)

- Mr Ayman gave an impressive presentation.

عادي ≠ مُبهر / مثير للإعجاب

• impressively (adv)

- El-Moasser's exercises are impressively professional.

بشكل مُبهر

• impression (n) انطباع

- My grandfather left a great impression on me.

• impression (n) محاكاة / تقليد = imitation

- This singer does a great impression of Um Kulthoum.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- make/give/create/leave an impression يترك انطباع
- get an impression يتولد لديه انطباع
- first impression counts الانطباع الأول يذوق

independent

• depend (on / upon) = rely (v)

يعتمد (علي)

- Children completely depend on their parents.

• dependants / dependents (n)

عيال / مَوعِلين (عالة علي غيرهم)

- Think of your dependents before leaving the job.

• independent (of) (adj) مستقل بذاته ≠ dependent

- I have an independent business.

• independent (of) (adj)

مُعتمد علي نفسه - مستقل في حياته وقراراته

- He got a good job and now he is independent of his family.

• independent (adj)

مستقل - غير مُحتل

- Egypt is an independent country.

• independence (from) (on) (علي) ≠ dependence (on) استقلال (عن)

- Most African countries gained independence from European occupation الاحتلال الأوروبي

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- grant independence يمنح الاستقلال
- get / gain / achieve / win independence يحصل علي الاستقلال
- full / complete independence استقلال تام
- economic / political independence استقلال اقتصادي / سياسي
- Independence Day عيد الاستقلال
- struggle for independence يناضل من اجل الاستقلال

inspiration

• inspire (... to) (v)

يُحفِّز / يُشجع

- The fans in the stadium inspired the team to play better.

• **inspire (v)**
- His low voice **inspires** great respect.

• **inspire (v)**

- Poets are usually **inspired** by nature, the night, the moon, etc.

• **inspired (adj)**

- Ahmed Shawki was an **inspired** poet.

• **inspiring (adj)**

- Poets usually find nature **inspiring**.

• **inspirational (adj)**

- Dr Zewail was an **inspirational** scientist.

• **inspiration (adj)**

- Nature is the source of **inspiration** to most poets.

- be an inspiration to

- The rising morning sun represents an **inspiration** to me.

- under the inspiration of

- Many parents encouraged their sons to play football under the **inspiration** of Mohammed Salah.

- get/take/draw inspiration from

- provide inspiration for

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

يكون مصدر إلهام لـ

بالهام من

يقتدي بـ / يستلهم من

يلهم / يمثل إلهاماً لـ

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

تنويه: التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Being independent your parents does not mean not looking after them.

a. from b. for c. of d. about

2. Love of hard work has been on us by our parents and teachers.

a. treated b. impressed c. overcome d. paraphrased

3. I trust my elder brother. I find his advice

a. inspire b. inspired
c. challengeable d. unchallengeable

4. Samir Ghanim used to a good impression of other actors.

a. do b. make c. combine d. impress

5. Egypt gained independence British occupation in 1956.

a. from b. for c. of d. about

Answer & Explanation

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	c	التعبير (independent of) يعني (مستقل عن)
2.	b	الفعل (impressed) هنا يعني (رَسَخَ في الذَّهْن)
3.	d	الصفة (unchallengeable) تعني (مُطْلَق/غير قابل للنقاش)
4.	a	التعبير (do an impression of) يعني (يُقْلِد/يُحاكي)
5.	a	التعبير (independence from) يعني (استقلال عن)

Part III

Reading



Tapescript
نصوص
استماع الوحدة

1 Reading Texts

Overcoming challenges

(SB page 2)

Rehab Ahmed enjoyed watching **powerlifting**⁽¹⁾ on television while she was **growing up**,⁽²⁾ but she **rarely**⁽³⁾ did any sport herself. After she completed her studies, she met the Egyptian powerlifting team's **coach**⁽⁴⁾ at a gym and soon developed a strong **interest**⁽⁵⁾ in the sport.



Rehab is disabled, but she hasn't let this stop her **lifting**⁽⁶⁾ weights. In fact, her **disability**⁽⁷⁾ has probably been the least **significant**⁽⁸⁾ **challenge**⁽⁹⁾ that she's had to **overcome**.⁽¹⁰⁾ At first, Rehab wasn't sure if she could successfully **combine**⁽¹¹⁾ powerlifting with being a mother to her young daughter. Powerlifting is also seen as a **male sport**⁽¹²⁾ and there aren't many **role models**⁽¹³⁾ for **female**⁽¹⁴⁾ powerlifters.

Rehab has now become an **inspiration**⁽¹⁵⁾ to other young women **due to**⁽¹⁶⁾ her **achievements**,⁽¹⁷⁾ which have included winning gold at the 2019 World Para Powerlifting **Championships**⁽¹⁸⁾ and **silver**⁽¹⁹⁾ at the 2016 and 2020 **Paralympics**.⁽²⁰⁾

Check Vocabulary

- (1) رياضة القوة / رفع الأثقال
- (2) يكبر / يترعرع
- (3) نادراً
- (4) مُدَرَّب
- (5) اهتمام
- (6) يرفع
- (7) إعاقة
- (8) كبير/ملحوظ
- (9) تحدي
- (10) يتغلب على
- (11) يربط - يجمع/يضم
- (12) رياضة ذكور
- (13) مثل أعلى/قدوة
- (14) أنثي
- (15) إلهام
- (16) بسبب
- (17) إنجازات
- (18) بطولة
- (19) ميدالية فضية
- (20) الألعاب الأولمبية لذوي الهمم

Angela Bachiller comes from Valladolid⁽¹⁾ in Spain. She was born with Down's Syndrome,⁽²⁾ which usually results in⁽³⁾ people having a learning disability⁽⁴⁾ and not being as tall as the average⁽⁵⁾ person. However, Angela's family has never treated⁽⁶⁾ her any differently because of this. They saw no good reason why Angela shouldn't grow up⁽⁷⁾ with the values⁽⁸⁾ of the importance⁽⁹⁾ of hard work, trying your best⁽¹⁰⁾ and trying to help other people.



After working as an administrative⁽¹¹⁾ assistant⁽¹²⁾ at the town hall in Valladolid for two and a half years, a position as a town councillor⁽¹³⁾ became free. Angela won the vote⁽¹⁴⁾ and since 2013 she has performed⁽¹⁵⁾ the role of town councillor in the same way as another person doing that job. Her strong character and determination⁽¹⁶⁾ not to be treated differently have helped her to change people's minds about people with Down's Syndrome and accept⁽¹⁷⁾ her as someone who can do a responsible job.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) بلد الوليد
- (2) متلازمة داون
- (3) يؤدي إلى
- (4) صعوبة/إعاقة
- (5) متوسط/عادي
- (6) يُعامل
- (7) يكبر - يتربّع
- (8) قيم
- (9) أهمية
- (10) تبدل قصاري جهك
- (11) إداري
- (12) مُساعد
- (13) عضو مجلس
- (14) تصويت/اقتراع
- (15) يؤدي
- (16) إصرار
- (17) يقبل

(WB page 3)

Check Vocabulary

- (1) مُستقل
- (2) بالغ/راشد
- (3) يختار

Scientists have been studying what makes a successful student for many years. Now, they have published a report on their results.

Firstly, how many times have you done the housework? You may be surprised to know that students who have helped with the housework are often more successful workers when they become independent⁽¹⁾ adults.⁽²⁾ These students' work is something we all have to do to help each other. So, of parents who have been planning what time they do everything, they are likely to be less independent. Students who can make their own choices⁽³⁾ and plans will be more successful.



Students who are able to solve problems with others or on their own⁽⁴⁾ are also more likely to achieve success⁽⁵⁾ in later life. The most successful students are often those who enjoy a challenge.

If a student has failed at a task,⁽⁶⁾ he doesn't worry, but sees it as an opportunity. Students should always set goals⁽⁷⁾ for the future. So, has this article inspired you to become a better student?

- (4) بمفردهم
- (5) يحقق النجاح
- (6) مهمة/لتكليف
- (7) يحدد / يضع هدف

Part IV Language

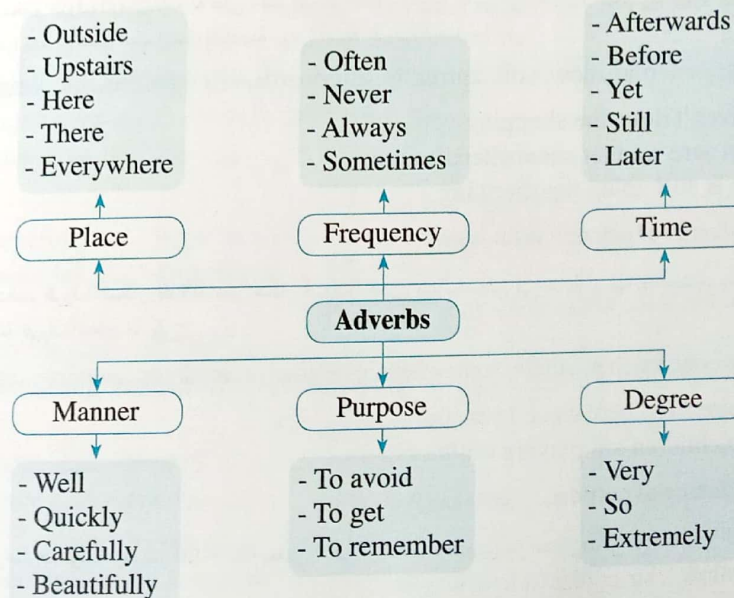
تم شرح الصفات في الوحدة الثانية من صفحة (١٣٨) وحتى صفحة (١٤٤). وسيتم الاكتفاء هنا بشرح ظروف الكيفية لكن التدريبات ستكون شاملة على الصفات والظروف.

تلوية

ما هو الظرف/الحال ؟ What is an adverb ?

- It is a word that expresses frequency, time, place, purpose, degree or manner.

- الظرف هو كلمة تعبر عن التكرار أو الزمان أو المكان أو الغرض أو الدرجة أو الطريقة (الكيفية). ويمكن تلخيص الظروف في الخريطة الذهنية التالية:



وفيما يلي شرح مبسط لأنواع الظروف :

1 Adverbs of frequency : ظروف التكرار

تُستخدم ظروف التكرار للدلالة على درجة تكرار الحدث، وتستخدم ظروف التكرار التالية قبل جميع الأفعال ما عدا (be) فتأتي بعده:

أحياناً sometimes – غالباً often / frequently – عادة usually – دائماً always – أبدأ never – نادراً rarely/seldom – بين الحين والآخر occasionally

وأحياناً تأتي بعض هذه الظروف في بداية أو نهاية الجملة :

Mr Nasser **always** arrives at work on time.
Mr Nasser **is always** at work on time.

Sometimes, Yara prepares the family lunch.
Yara prepares the family lunch **sometimes**.
وتأتي ظروف التكرار التالية غالباً في بداية أو نهاية الجملة :

once - مرة / twice - مرتين - three times - four times (an hour / a day / a week / a month / a year ...etc.)
every (morning / day / week / year...)
I get up early **every morning**. = **Every morning**, I get up early.

2 Adverbs of time : ظروف الزمان

تُستخدم ظروف الزمان للدلالة على وقت حدوث الفعل، وغالباً تأتي في بداية أو نهاية الجملة وقد تأتي أيضاً بعد الأفعال المساعدة والناقصة، ومن أمثلة ظروف الزمان ما يلي:

today, yesterday, now, still, currently, afterwards, after, before, yet ... etc.

I haven't done the shopping **yet**.

I am sure we met somewhere **before**.

She is **still** doing the shopping.

3 Adverbs of place : ظروف المكان

تُستخدم ظروف المكان للدلالة على مكان حدوث الفعل، وغالباً تأتي في بداية أو نهاية الجملة، ومن أمثلة ظروف الزمان ما يلي:

inside, outside, here, there, somewhere, everywhere, outdoors, indoors ... etc.

I have lived **here** since I was born.

The children are playing **outdoors**.

4 Adverbs of purpose : ظروف الغرض

وهي عبارات ظرفية تبدأ بـ (to + inf.) بمعنى (لكي) وتستخدم للتعبير عن الغرض ونأتي في البداية أو النهاية :

I follow a strict diet **to lose weight**.

To overcome a challenge, you need to work hard.

5 Adverbs of degree : ظروف الدرجة

تُستخدم ظروف الدرجة لتحديد درجة الصفة، ومن أمثلة ظروف الدرجة ما يلي :

quite/rather - إلى حد ما
so - إلى حد كبير
very - extremely - للغاية
completely - utterly - تماماً
absolutely - كلياً
etc.

The weather is **very** hot today. - She is **completely** exhausted.

تنويه : راجع استخدام ظروف الدرجة مع الصفات القوية والصفات العادية في الوحدة الثانية من كتاب المعاصر.

6 Adverbs of manner : ظروف الكيفية (الطريقة)

تُستخدم ظروف الكيفية لوصف كيفية حدوث الفعل وهي تمثل إجابة للسؤال بـ (how) :

A: **How** did Sama write ? B: She wrote **clearly**.

A: **How** does he walk ? B: He walks **quickly**.

يأتي ظرف الكيفية بعد الفعل أو بعد المفعول:

A tortoise **moves slowly**.

Rodayna **spoke** to me **quietly**.

How to change an adjective into an adverb of manner :

طريقة تحويل الصفة إلى ظرف كيفية

1 بصفة عامة يتم تكوين ظرف الكيفية بإضافة (ly) إلى الصفة :

- impressive - بشكل مُبهر - impressively
- weak - بضعف - weakly
- significant - بشكل ملحوظ - significantly
- quiet - بهدوء - quietly

2 وتُضاف (ly) حتى وإن كانت الصفة منتهية بحرف (l) :

- hopeful - من المُنتظر - hopefully
- beautiful - بطريقة جميلة - beautifully

3 الصفة المنتهية بـ (le) يتم حذف حرف (e) وإضافة (y) :

- terrible - بشكل فظيع - terribly
- sensible - بعقلانية - sensibly

4 الصفة المنتهية بـ (y) مسبوقة بحرف ساكن يتحول إلى (ily) :

- happy - بسعادة - happily
- crazy - مجنون - crazily

5 الصفة المنتهية بـ (ly) تتحول إلى ظرف باستخدام (in a way) :

- friendly - بودٍ / بحميمية - in a friendly way
- cowardly - بجبن - in a cowardly way

1 هناك ظروف غير منتظمة مثل:

- fast - بسرعة
- late - متأخر

- good - جيد
- hard - جاد
- early - مبكر

Clear up the confusion : لاحظ الفرق

1 hard / hardly

صلب - صعب - شاق (صفة)

• hard (adj)

- This rock is too hard to be broken easily.
- Last year's exam was really hard.
- He got tired of the hard work in that factory.

بجد - بقوة (ظرف)

• hard (adv)

- My father has worked hard to provide good life for our family.
- You must hit the rock hard to break it.

• hardly ... (any / at all) (adv)

- I have eaten hardly anything today.
- She hardly meets her old friends at all.

بالكاد / قلماً

• hardly ever = almost never

- She hardly ever goes out = she almost never goes out.
- He hardly speaks spanish, does he ?

بالكاد / قلماً (تدل علي النفي)

2 late / lately

• late - later - latest (adj)

- تستخدم (late) كصفة (adjective) بمعنى (متأخر) - أي أنها تأتي قبل الاسم أو بعد الأفعال التقريرية:
- I am late for school.
- The head teacher punished the late students.

تستخدم (late) كصفة (adjective) بمعنى (أواخر/قرب النهاية) - وتأتي قبل الاسم فقط:

- She is in her late forties.

• late - later - (no superlative) (adv)

- تستخدم (late) كظرف (adverb) بمعنى (متأخراً):
- I am late for school.

تستخدم (later) كظرف بمعنى (فيما بعد):

- I will call you later.

تستخدم (lately) كظرف (adverb) بمعنى (مؤخراً/حديثاً):

- I have visited my aunt lately. (= recently)

لاحظ الفرق بين (later) و (latter):

• later (adv) = after some time

- I met her two years later. (= after two years)

• later (adj) لاحق - تالي

- We will discuss this problem in a later meeting.

• latter (n) الآخر - الثاني

- I have two daughters: Rodayna and Sama. The latter is younger.
- We will announce the result of the competition in the latter part of the program.

3 most / most of / mostly

تستخدم (most/most of) كصفة (adjective) بمعنى (غالبية/معظم/جُل):

- Most students like Mr Nasser. (= more than 50% of the students)
- Most of my friends go to the same school. (= more than 50% of my friends)

تستخدم (most) كظرف (adverb) بمعنى (الأكثر):

- Amira is the most intelligent student in class.
- I play tennis and handball, but I like football most/the most.

تستخدم (mostly) كظرف (adverb) بمعنى (أساساً/عامّة/عادةً):

- We mostly play football, but sometimes we play table tennis.

4 good / well

كلمة (good) صفة بينما كلمة (well) ظرف:

Adjective / adverb	Comparative	Superlative
good(adj)	جيد - صالح - مفيد	better أفضل
well(adj)	جيد - صالح - مفيد	better بشكل أفضل
		best الأفضل

تستخدم (good) كصفة (adjective) بمعنى (جيد/صالح/طيب):

- Mr Taha is a good man.
- His good presentation impressed us all.

تستخدم (well) كظرف (adverb) بمعنى (جيداً/بشكل جيد):

- She did well in the final exam.

تستخدم (well) كصفة (adjective) بمعنى (بصحة جيدة/على ما يرام):

- A: How are you? B: Very well, thanks.

يمكن استخدام (good) كاسم (noun) بمعنى الخير:

- Exercise does me good.

Important notes on adverbs

- ... verb + adverb / adjective + noun
 - She is a good speaker. / She speaks well.
 - Amir is a quick runner. / Amir runs quickly.
 - Chess is an indoor game. / Chess is played indoors.

- بعد أداة الاستفهام (how) نستخدم صفة لوصف اسم ونستخدم ظرف لوصف فعل :
 - How good is his behaviour?
 - How well does he behave?

- يمكن مقارنة الظروف مثل الصفات الطويلة باستخدام :
 more / less + adv. ظرف + than
 - Sama writes more carefully than Ahmed.
 - I drive less quickly than Moataz.

ثاني ظروف الشك / الاحتمال او التكرار قبل الفعل وليس بعده والعكس مع (be) :
 usually – probably – possibly – definitely

- It is possible that he will visit us. = - He will possibly visit us.

هناك ظروف يمكن أن تُستخدم لتغيير معنى الجملة بالكامل وتُسمى (Sentence Adverbs).
 وغالباً تستخدم في بداية الجملة مثل:

لسوء الحظ، / Luckily, - Unfortunately, / Unluckily, - لحسن الحظ،
 من المدهش، Surprisingly, - من المثير للاهتمام، Interestingly, - من الغريب، Strangely,

- Luckily, I found my lost keys.
 - Strangely, he agreed to help us.

Notes for application

- 1 ... verb + adverb = ... adjective + in / at ... + (inf. + ing)
 - She speaks well. = She is good at speaking.
 2 ... adverb = in + adj. + way / manner.
 - His behaviour was friendly. = He behaved in a friendly way.

3 It is + adj. صفة = adverb ظرف

- It is strange that she refused the offer.
 = Strangely, she refused the offer.

4 ... be + adverb ظرف + adj. صفة = have + adj. صفة + noun
 - I am extremely ill. = I have an extreme illness.

5 Subject + never / rarely / hardly / no sooner ... + verb
 = Never / Rarely / Hardly / No sooner / Little + فعل مساعد + subj. + verb ...
 - Mai never went shopping.
 = Rarely did Mai go the shopping.

General Exercise On Language

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting Started

- They are on the beach now. They are playing
 a. outdoor b. outdoors c. indoors d. b & c
- Football is an game.
 a. outdoor b. outdoors c. indoors d. indoor
- Rodayna has handwriting.
 a. a well b. well c. will d. good
- Rodayna writes
 a. a well b. well c. will d. a good
- Compared to nobody, I run
 a. fast b. fastly c. faster d. the fastest
- Omar runs than me.
 a. fast b. fastly c. faster d. the fastest
- Of all my friends who run quickly, Omar runs
 a. fast b. fastly c. faster d. the fastest
- By nature, Mr Ayman works
 a. hard b. harder c. the hardest d. hardly
- By nature, Mr Ayman is a worker.
 a. hard b. harder c. the hardest d. hardly
- By nature, Mr Ayman works than me.
 a. hard b. harder c. the hardest d. hardly

11. Of all the thirty hard workers in the office, Mr Ayman works
a. hard b. harder c. the hardest d. hardly
12. By nature, Mr Ayman wastes any time at all.
a. hard b. harder c. the hardest d. hardly
13. She became enthusiastic about her new sport very
a. hard b. hardly c. quicker d. quickly
14. Her achievements are for other women who are interested in powerlifting.
a. inspire b. inspired c. inspiring d. inspiringly
15. Other women who are interested in powerlifting look by her achievements.
a. inspire b. inspired c. inspiring d. inspiringly
16. She didn't receive treatment from her family because she had Down's Syndrome.
a. normal b. normally c. normalise d. normalised
17. She was not treated by her family because she had Down's Syndrome.
a. normal b. normally c. normalise d. normalised
18. Angela is able to do her current job in a perfectly way.
a. difference b. differ c. different d. differently
19. Angela is able to do her current job
a. difference b. differ c. different d. differently
20. He caught a disease called polio and since then he has not been able to use all of his muscles in a way.
a. good b. well c. better d. best
21. He caught a disease called polio and since then he has not been able to use all of his muscles very
a. good b. well c. better d. best
22. He wanted his family to feel proud of him.
a. reality b. real c. really d. b & c
23. He wanted his family to take pride in him.
a. reality b. real c. really d. b & c
24. Since that time, he has been successful.
a. extreme b. extremes c. extremity d. extremely

25. Since that time, he has achieved success.
a. extreme b. extremes c. extremity d. extremely
 26. He has achieved his goal.
a. certain b. certainly c. uncertain d. certainty
 27. She was in her talk.
a. impress b. impressed c. impressive d. impressively
 28. She talked
a. impress b. impressed c. impressive d. impressively
 29. I lunch outdoors.
a. have rarely b. rarely have c. am rarely d. rarely am
 30. I out for lunch.
a. have rarely b. rarely have c. am rarely d. rarely am
 31. Which of the following is/are correct?
a. I go to school everyday. b. I go to school every day.
c. Every day, I go to school. d. b & c
- 2 Special Cases**
32. How did you do at the exam?
a. will b. well c. good d. a good
 33. How are you at maths?
a. will b. well c. good d. a good
 34. Which of the following is correct?
a. She walked towards the spider slowly.
b. She walked slowly towards the spider.
c. Slowly, she walked towards the spider.
d. a, b & c
 35. I will call you today.
a. later b. latter c. lately d. a & c
 36. I haven't gone for walks since I have been really busy.
a. later b. latter c. lately d. a & c
 37. I have two cars. One is a BMW and the is a Mercedes.
a. later b. latter c. lately d. a & c
 38. "She is late for school." The word 'late' here is a/an
a. adjective b. adverb c. comparative d. superlative
 39. "She is in her late twenties." The word 'late' here is a/an
a. adjective b. adverb c. comparative d. superlative

40. "I'll take a later bus." The word 'later' here is a/an
a. adjective b. adverb c. comparative d. superlative
41. "She arrived at school very late." The word 'late' here is a/an
a. adjective b. adverb c. comparative d. superlative
42. "Lately, Sama has been very busy." The word 'lately' here is a/an
a. adjective b. adverb c. comparative d. superlative
43. "Ahmed has left his office early this evening." The word 'early' here is a/an
a. adjective b. adverb c. comparative d. superlative
44. "The train is five minutes early." The word 'early' here is a/an
a. adjective b. adverb c. comparative d. superlative
45. "She has left early to catch the train." In this sentence, the clause 'to catch the train' is an adverbial clause of
a. frequency b. manner c. degree d. purpose
46. "The weather is so hot today." The word 'so' here is a/an
a. adjective b. conjunction c. adverb of degree d. pronoun
47. Sama is playing outdoors." The word 'outdoors' is an adverb of
a. time b. place c. frequency d. manner
48. "She is still having lunch." The word 'still' here is an adverb of
a. time b. place c. frequency d. manner

3 Check your understanding

49. "She almost has no free time." This means
a. She has some free time b. She hardly has any free time
c. She has very little hard time d. She has enough free time
50. "He does his best at work." What does this mean?
a. He works hard. b. He hardly works.
c. He works hardly. d. He has to work hard.
51. "I like football more than any other sport." This means
a. of all sports, I like football most
b. of all sports, I like football the most
c. a & b
d. of all sports, I like football the least
52. "She is a good speaker." This means
a. She is good at speaking b. She speaks good
c. She speaks well d. a & c

53. "How hard does he work?" Which of the following questions gives the same meaning?
a. How hard is he at work? b. How hardly is he at work?
c. How hardly does he work? d. a & b
54. "It is possible that he comes to work late." This means that
a. He possibly is late for work.
b. He is possibly late for work.
c. It is impossible that he early is for work.
d. He is impossibly early for work.
55. "Mai has a severe illness." This means that Mai
a. is severe illness. b. is severely ill.
c. has severely ill. d. has severe ill

Advanced Exercise on Language

تنويه: التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Which of the following is not correct?
a. I rarely go to bed late. b. Rarely I go to bed late.
c. I sometimes go to bed late. d. Sometimes I go to bed late,
2. I talked to her, but it did not do any
a. well b. good c. better d. best
3. I rarely come to school late, ?
a. do I b. don't I c. am I d. aren't I
4. Hardly has visited us this week. All our close friends have had a busy week.
a. everyone b. none c. anyone d. b & c

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	b	- عندما تأتي الظروف الدالة على النفي مثل (rarely) في بداية الجملة فإن الفعل المساعد يتقدم على الفاعل، وتكون الصيغة الصحيحة كما يلي: - Rarely do I go to bed late.
2.	b	- كلمة (good) هنا اسم بمعنى (الخير)
3.	a	- الظرف (rarely) يدل على النفي لذا يكون السؤال المذيل مثبتاً
4.	c	- تُستخدم (any) وليس (no) بعد الظرف (hardly)

Part I

Vocabulary & Definitions

• اختبر مدى إتقانك للمفردات الرئيسية في كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية.
• المفردات اللغوية باللون الأحمر هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية.

تنويه

1 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

acting(n)	التمثيل	level(n)	مُسْتَوًى
aid(ed) (n/v)	مُساعدَة - يساعد	lift(ed) (v)	يرفع
attached(adj)	مُرْفَق	list(n)	قائمة
attend(ed) (v)	يَحْضُر	organise(d) (v)	يُنْظِم
audience(n)	الجمهور (الستمعين أو القراء)	party(n)	حفلة - حزب - فوج
award(ed) (n/v)	جائزة - يمنح جائزة	pause(d) (v/n)	يتوقف - وقفة
category(n)	تصنيف	perform(ed) (v)	يؤدي
ceremony(n)	حفلة	picnic(n)	طعام التزهة
certificate(n)	شهادة	picnic(n)	تزهة خلوية
compare(d) (v)	يقارن	picnic(ked) (v)	يتنزه
competition(n)	مسابقة	presentation(n)	عرض تقديمي
complicated (adj)	مُعَقَّد / مُرَكَّب	profit(ed) (n/v)	ربح - يربح / يستفيد
creativity(n)	الإبداع	R.S.V.P form	استمارة الرد
degree(n)	شهادة جامعية	rhetorical (adj)	بلاغي
diagram(n)	رسم بياني	right(n)	حق
elegant(adj)	أنيق - كَيِّس	short notice(n)	رسالة موجزة
enjoyable(adj)	ممتع	significantly (adv)	بشكل ملحوظ
feedback(n)	التغذية الراجعة	swan(n)	بجعة
graduate(d) (n/v)	خريج - يتخرج	talk(n)	حديث / خطبة
graduation(n)	التخرج	technique(n)	تقنية / أسلوب
head teacher(n)	مدير المدرسة	trust(ed) (n/v)	الثقة - يثق به
include(d) (v)	يتضمن / يشتمل على	visual (adj)	بصري - مرئي
indicate(d) (v)	يوضح / يشير إلى	winner(n)	فائز
invitation(n)	دعوة		

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key & Important vocabulary

- The refugees اللاجئين need urgent
a. audience b. diagram c. feedback d. aid
- Parents of students are invited to the graduation
a. creativity b. certificate c. ceremony d. category
- Most of my friends my brother's wedding.
a. attended b. indicated c. organised d. paused
- Flash cards, videos and diagrams are all aids teachers now use.
a. rhetorical b. visual c. elegant d. complicated
- After, young men join the army for military service.
a. picnic b. talk c. graduate d. graduation
- A joins the army for military service.
a. picnic b. talk c. graduate d. graduation
- I got my university in 1998.
a. technique b. profit c. short notice d. degree
- It was not easy for me to give a presentation to a/an I did not know for the first time.
a. audience b. diagram c. feedback d. aid
- I look forward to getting my General Secondary Education this year.
a. Creativity b. Certificate c. Ceremony d. Category
- During your presentation, you may need to for a few seconds after saying something that you want the audience to remember.
a. attend b. indicate c. organise d. pause
- Mr Baleigh was dressed in a/an black suit.
a. rhetorical b. visual c. elegant d. complicated
- Giving a to a foreign audience needs good preparation.
a. picnic b. talk c. graduate d. graduation
- She made much from selling clothes.
a. technique b. profit c. short notice d. degree
- Sometimes, it is difficult to provide without making someone angry.
a. audience b. diagram c. feedback d. aid

15. is what makes you different.
a. Creativity b. Certificate c. Ceremony d. Category
16. Your bad marks in physics that you need to work harder to be better at it.
a. attends b. indicates c. organises d. pauses
17. Using language in a presentation makes it difficult for your audience to get your points easily.
a. rhetorical b. visual c. elegant d. complicated
18. I've gone on a with my close friends.
a. picnic b. talk c. graduate d. graduation
19. It's a bit, but can you come tomorrow?
a. technique b. profit c. short notice d. degree
20. A/An is one of the visuals a presenter can employ.
a. audience b. diagram c. feedback d. aid
21. People are different. This makes it difficult to put them into
a. creativities b. certificates c. ceremonies d. categories
22. Sociable students are better at picnics.
a. lifting b. indicating c. organising d. pausing
23. In a presentation, a/an question is a question you don't expect to get an answer to.
a. rhetorical b. visual c. elegant d. complicated
24. "My mother made the picnic and put it in big bag." The word 'picnic' here can be replaced by
a. trip b. outdoor meal c. visit d. journey
25. Asking rhetorical questions is a used in giving presentations.
a. technique b. profit c. short notice d. degree

Part II Vocabulary Study

تلميح: تساعد قوائمك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مسبقاً بشكل جيد.

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

do	some research	يقوم باجراء بحث	organise	a picnic	يُنظّم نزهة خلوية
make	notes	يُبدى ملاحظات	tell	a story	يحكي قصة

Mini Test 1 Collocations

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I do not believe the stories he us about his generosity. I know he is a miser.
a. does b. makes c. organises d. tells
2. We are discussing the findings of the research my team have
a. done b. made c. organised d. told
3. Amir is good at picnics.
a. doing b. taking c. organizing d. telling
4. I need to look at the notes I at the meeting.
a. did b. made c. organised d. told

2 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات ومصطلحات

at a young age	في سن صغير	related to	مرتبط/متعلق بـ
at midday	في منتصف النهار	rhetorical question	الاستفهام البلاغي / سؤال لمجرد التأثير الخطابي
attached to	مُرفق مع - متصل بـ	short notice	إشعار عاجل
children's rights to an education	حقوق الأطفال في التعليم	sporting achievements	إنجازات رياضية
Creativity Award	جائزة الإبداع	sporting club	نادي رياضي
get a degree in	يحصل على شهادة جامعية في	sports people	الرياضيون
make it clear	يجعل من الواضح	United Nations	الأمم المتحدة
R.S.V.P. form	استمارة الرد	visual aids	الوسائل البصرية المساعدة

3 Synonymous Expressions تعبيرات مترادفة

make notes on = write down	the first ever... = the first... to + inf.
notes about	أول من ... على الإطلاق
be proud of = take pride in	the year to come = next year
	العالم المقبل
	young people = youth
	الشباب

4 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

compare ... with	يقارن ... بـ	walk in	يدخل
dream of/about	يحلم بـ	walk into	يدخل إلى
give out	يوزع		

Mini Test 2 Expressions, Prepositions & Idioms

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- "I'm proud of being Egyptian." This means I being Egyptian.
a. dream of b. take pride in c. ashamed of d. am proud in
- It is not always right to compare a child other children in public.
a. with b. about c. for d. from
- We agreed to meet midday.
a. on b. of c. with d. at
- Each child has the right good education.
a. for b. about c. to d. off
- Mr Mohammed has it clear that he will never argue over football.
a. made b. got c. did d. took
- "Salah is the first Egyptian footballer to win the golden boot in the Premier League." This means Salah
a. was the first player ever to win it.
b. is the first footballer ever to win it.
c. is the first Egyptian ever to win it.
d. hardly won it at all.
- These are the prizes we are giving to toppers.
a. a way b. out c. up d. in
- "Teenagers still need some guidance." The word 'Teenagers' can be replaced by '.....'.
a. Young men b. Young boys c. Young d. Young people
- The applicants' personal photos are attached their application forms.
a. at b. up c. to d. of
- She unlocked the door and walked
a. into b. in c. with d. to
- I am going to join university
a. in the past b. last year
c. in 2020 d. in the year to come

5 Clear the Confusion

لاحظ الفرق

R.S.V.P. form

الإختصار (R.S.V.P.) هو الإختصار لعبارة فرنسية تعني (إذا سمحت)، وهي تستخدم في الرسائل الخاصة بالدعوة: R.S.V.P. = répondez, s'il vous plaît = Please Reply

walk in - walk into

- walk in**
يدخل (لا يأتي بعدها المفعول)
- She opened the door and walked in.
- walk into**
يدخل إلى (لا بد أن يأتي بعدها المفعول)
- She opened the door and walked into her room.

... to come

- ... to come = next ... = the following ...** القادم/التالي ...
- the year to come = next year = the following year
- the days to come = the next days = the following days

be proud of/to - take pride in

- be proud of (something / someone)**
فخور بـ
- Her parents are very proud of her.
- be proud to do something**
فخور أن
- I am proud to receive this award.
- take / have pride in**
يفتخر بـ
- She takes / has pride in her respectable family.

Mini Test 3 Clear the Confusion

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Next week means the week
a. next b. the following c. the next d. to come
- I opened the gate and carefully walked
a. in b. into c. of d. a & b
- I opened the gate and carefully walked the garden.
a. out b. into c. of d. a & b
- I'm proud my success.
a. to b. in c. of d. from

5. I'm proud be a success.
a. to b. in c. of d. from
6. I take pride my success.
a. to b. in c. of d. from

Part V Reading

Reading Texts

A presentation

Hi everyone. Thank for coming to my presentation⁽¹⁾ today. I'm going to tell you about life and achievements of Fatma Said. Have you heard this name before?

She is one of the world's best opera singers. She was singing lessons at the Cairo Opera House when she was just fourteen. The first time I heard Fatma I was just fourteen. I want to be an opera singer too! But it is not easy when she was younger, she worked very hard and in other countries. She got a degree⁽²⁾ in music from the University in Germany. Then, in 2014, she became the first ever to sing at the famous opera house in Milan, Italy. That is like football at the world's most famous stadium.

She has also done some amazing⁽³⁾ things, for example, she has sung at the rights⁽⁴⁾ to an education⁽⁵⁾ for the United Nations⁽⁶⁾ and in Egypt's Creativity⁽⁷⁾ Award,⁽⁸⁾ a very important prize. Look at this poster,⁽⁹⁾ you can see a list⁽¹⁰⁾ of her awards. These competitions⁽¹²⁾ she has won in Ireland, Turkey and Germany. This brings me to the end of my presentation. Does anyone have any questions?



(WB page 4)

Check Vocabulary

- (1) عرض تقديمي
(2) شهادة جامعية
(3) رائع/مذهل
(4) حقوق
(5) التعليم
(6) الأمم المتحدة
(7) الإبداع
(8) جائزة
(9) ملصق
(10) قائمة
(11) يتضمن/يشتمل على
(12) مسابقة

Two Invitations to Dina

(58 page 11)

Hi Dina,

We're organising⁽¹⁾ a surprise 50th birthday party⁽²⁾ for Aunt Soha on Saturday evening. I know it's a bit short notice,⁽³⁾ but do you think you can make it? The plan is that we all meet at her favourite restaurant at 6.45. Then Aunt Soha walks in with Uncle Sami at 7.00 and finds us all there!

Let me know by tomorrow evening if you can come. Hope to see you there!

Cousin Reem

Check Vocabulary

- (1) يُنظَّم
(2) حفل
(3) رسالة موجزة

Dear Dina Osman,

It is our pleasure to invite you to the awards ceremony⁽¹⁾ for young sports people in our area. The evening will begin with a dinner at the Sporting Club⁽²⁾ and after that, prizes for sporting achievements over the last year will be given out⁽³⁾ to the winners.⁽⁴⁾

We trust that this will be a very enjoyable⁽⁵⁾ evening where we can celebrate your sporting achievements and, we hope, inspire you to continue to perform⁽⁶⁾ at such a high level⁽⁷⁾ over the year to come.

Please use the attached⁽⁸⁾ RSVP form⁽⁹⁾ to indicate⁽¹⁰⁾ whether or not you can attend⁽¹¹⁾ and send it to Mrs Noha El Taweel at the club office by 14th June.

Yours sincerely,

Magdy El Sayed

Check Vocabulary

- (1) حفل
(2) نادي رياضي
(3) يوزع
(4) فائزون
(5) ممتع
(6) يؤدي
(7) مستوى
(8) مرفق
(9) استمارة الرد
(10) يوضح/يشير إلى
(11) يحضر

Hi Ali,

We're organising a picnic⁽¹⁾ in the park for my cousins who are visiting from Australia. It's tomorrow evening. It's a bit short notice, but do you think you can come?

The plan is that we meet at our house at midday.⁽²⁾ Then we can prepare⁽³⁾ a picnic⁽⁴⁾ and take it to the park. Let me know by this evening if you can make it. Hope to see you soon!

Best wishes,

Nabil



(WB page 5)

Check Vocabulary

- (1) نزهة خلوية
(2) في منتصف النهار
(3) يُعَدُّ/يُجهَّز
(4) طعام النزهة

Dear Mr and Mrs Amir,

It is our pleasure to invite you to your daughter's graduation⁽¹⁾ ceremony on 12 July. The day will begin at the university hall, when the certificates⁽²⁾ will be given out to the graduates.⁽³⁾ We will then move to the university restaurant for an evening meal for the parents.

We trust⁽⁴⁾ that this will be a very enjoyable day where we can celebrate your daughter's achievements with the other parents and young people⁽⁵⁾ at the university.

Please use the attached RSVP form to indicate whether you can attend and send it to the university office by 1 July.

Yours sincerely,
Mrs Magda



Check
Vocabulary

- (1) التخرج
- (2) شهادات
- (3) خريجين
- (4) يثق
- (5) الشباب

Part IV Language

Present Perfect simple : active and passive
المضارع التام البسيط : المبنى للمعلوم والمبنى للمجهول

Active

I / You / We / They + have ('ve) + P.P. ...
He / She / It + has ('s) + P.P. ...

- I have watched a film.
- Omar has bought some CDs.

Passive

Object + have / has + been + P.P.

- A film has been watched (by me).
- Some CDs have been brought (by Omar).

Uses of the Present Perfect simple

استخدامات المضارع التام البسيط

- 1 التعبير عن أحداث أو مواقف غير منتهية (بدأت في الماضي ولم تنتهي حتى الآن):
- I've studied English since 2013. (I still study English at present)

2 التعبير عن مواقف حدثت في الماضي دون ذكر وقت حدوثها ، وهذا يشتمل على:
أ. التعبير عن الخبرات و التجارب السابقة :

- She has worked in this school for years.
- I've never played squash.
- ب. التعبير عما أنجزه أو حققه الفاعل (حتى الآن):
- My daughter has learned to speak English. (She can speak English now)
- ج. أحداث منتظرة أو متوقعة:

- The train hasn't arrived at the station yet.
- 2 التعبير عن أحداث أو مواقف في الماضي و لها أثر على الحاضر (جملة الأثر تكون في المضارع):
- I've eaten a lot of food, so I feel very full.
- 4 التعبير عن أحداث أو مواقف قابلة للتكرار (يمكن استخدام تعبيرات زمنية مثل):
this morning / this week / this month / today / in the last year

- I have drunk two cups of coffee today. (I can drink more cups of coffee today)
- 5 التعبير عن المستقبل بعد الروابط الزمنية (يمكن استخدام المضارع البسيط لنفس الغرض):
- After my father has left (leaves) home, I'll ask mum to give me more money.

1 لاحظ ما يلي جيداً :

- have / has been to ذهب وعاد
- have / has gone to ذهب ولم يعد بعد
- I've been to Paris three times. I want to go there again.
- Ahmed has gone to the club. You can join him there now.

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

1 لاحظ استخدام الظروف التالية مع المضارع التام:

حتى الآن yet / مؤخراً lately / مؤخراً recently / بالفعل already / تراً just

- The manager has just left the office.
- We have visited some friends lately / recently.
- Ahmed hasn't done his homework yet. (في النفي والإستفهام)

2 يأتي بعد (for) المدة التي استغرقها حدوث الفعل:

for + لحظة a moment / a while / two seconds / three minutes /
عقد half an hour / five days / six months / ten years / a decade /
مدة طويلة ages / قرنين two centuries / a long time / a short time / the last /
لمدة طويلة as long as I can remember / long

- I've had this mobile for 10 years.
- He's been here for 6 months.

١ يأتي بعد (since) تعبير زمني يدل على توقيت بداية حدوث الفعل:

since منذ (six o'clock / Monday / 26th September / March / summer / 2013 / yesterday / last month / then موت / death / ميلادها / her birth / رحيله / his departure / وصول arrival etc.)

- I've lived in this flat since 2015.
- He's been here since May.
- Rodayna has lived in this town since her birth.
- She has not slept since her departure.

٢ في حال وجود جملة بعد (since) يكون زمنها ماضى بسيط / مضارع تام:

- I haven't eaten anything since I left (have felt) home this morning.

٣ يمكن استخدام مدة زمنية بعد (since) بشرط استخدام (ago) بعد المدة زمنية:

since + a period of time + ago
- We've started this project since 10 years ago.

٤ تذكر أن (since) تستخدم أحياناً بمعنى (because):
- He is tired since he has been working all day.

٥ لاحظ أن:

- يمكن استخدام الصيغة التالية للسؤال عن وقت بداية الحدث:

Since when + have / has + Subj. + ناعل + p.p. ?

- Since when have you lived in Aswan, Omar ? (عمر ما زال يعيش فى أسوان)

- يمكن استخدام الصيغة التالية للسؤال عن المدة التى استغرقها الحدث:

- For how long + have / has + Subj. + ناعل + p.p. ?

= How long + have / has + Subj. + ناعل + p.p. for ?

- For how long have you lived in Aswan, Omar ? (عمر لا يزال يعيش فى أسوان)

- How long have you lived in Aswan for, Omar ? (عمر لا يزال يعيش فى أسوان)

- ولاحظ أن:

How long ago + did + Subj. + ناعل + inf. ?

How long ago did you live in Aswan, Omar ? (عمر لم يعد يعيش فى أسوان)

The difference between the present perfect and the past simple الفرق بين المضارع التام والماضى البسيط

المضارع التام Present Perfect	الماضى البسيط Past Simple
١. الاهتمام بنتيجة الحدث. - They have lost their money. (أصبحوا مفلسين)	١. الاهتمام بالحدث نفسه. - They lost their money.
٢. حدث من فترة قصيرة للغاية. - He has just arrived.	٢. حدث تم من فترة معينة. - He arrived two hours ago.
٣. حدث قد يعدل. - I haven't seen Mohammed Salah. (محمد صلاح مازال حياً و قد تراه)	٣. حدث يستحيل تعديله. - I didn't see president Sadat. (لأن السادات توفى)
٤. حدث تم فى فترة لم تنتهى بعد. - It hasn't rained this morning. (لم ينتهى الصباح بعد وقد تمطر)	٤. حدث تم فى فترة وانتهت. - It didn't rain this morning. (انتهى الصباح)
٥. حدث أو عادة مستمرة. - He has always been fit. (استمر على حاله ولم يتغير)	٥. حدث أو عادة غير مستمرة. - He was always fit. (هو كان ولكن الآن أصبح غير لائق بدنياً)
٦. زمن غير محدد فى الماضى. - He has travelled to America.	٦. زمن محدد فى الماضى. - He travelled to America yesterday.

Extra Notes ملاحظات إضافية

First Experience

* لاحظ استخدام الأساليب التالية للتعبير عن المرور بموقف أو تجربة لأول مرة:

Subj. + have/has + never + P.P. ... before (now).

- Ahmed has never visited Paris before (now).

This is the first time + subj. + have / has + (ever) + P.P. ...

- This is the first time Ahmed has (ever) visited Paris.

This is the first time + for + ضمير مفعول / فاعل + to + inf. ...

- This is the first time for Ahmed to visit Paris.

A different Experience

لاحظ استخدام الأساليب التالية لتمييز موقف أو تجربة عن مواقف سابقة :

- This is the cleverest student I have ever seen.
- That is the most delicious food we have ever eaten.

اسم + صفة + (a / an) + such + P.P. ... + never + have/has + Subj. +

- I have never seen such a clever student.
- We have never eaten such delicious food.

اسم + like + (a / an) + صفة + P.P. ... + never + have/has + Subj. +

- I have never seen a clever student like this (one).
- We have never eaten delicious food like that.

اسم + as + صفة + as + P.P. ... + never + have/has + Subj. +

- I have never seen a student as clever as this (one).
- We have never eaten food as delicious as that.

اسم + than + صفة مقارنة + (a / an) + P.P. ... + never + have/has + Subj. +

- I have never seen a student cleverer than this (one).
- We have never eaten food more delicious than that.

Last Experience

لاحظ استخدام الأساليب التالية للتعبير عن آخر حدوث للموقف أو التجربة:

Subj. + haven't / hasn't + P.P. ... + since / for ...

- Zamzam hasn't gone out since Monday.

تعبير زمني ماضي + in / on / at + تصريف ثان + last + Subj. +

- Zamzam last went shopping on Monday.

تعبير زمني ماضي + was + in / on / at + تصريف ثان + the last time + Subj. +

- The last time Zamzam went shopping was on Monday.

جملة ماضي بسيط + since + P.P. ... + haven't / hasn't + Subj. +

- Ahmed hasn't met his grandmother since he was in Assuit.

جملة ماضي بسيط + when + past simple + تصريف ثان + Subj. + last +
= Ahmed last met his grandmother when he was in Assuit.

Starting point / duration

* لاحظ استخدام الأساليب التالية للتعبير عن وقت بداية الحدث أو المدة التي استغرقها:

Subject + have / has + P.P. ... + for + period

- Mohammed has lived in Aswan for 21 years.

Subject + have / has + P.P. ... + since + a point in time

- Mohammed has lived in Aswan since 1999.

Subject + started / began + (to + inf. / gerund). + period + ago

- Mohammed started to live (living) in Aswan 21 years ago.

جملة ماضي بسيط + since + period + It is +

- It is 21 years since Mohammed started to live in Aswan.

المضارع التام المستمر The Present Perfect Continuous

Form

I / You / We / They + have ('ve) + been + (inf. + ing) ...

- I have been waiting for half an hour.

He / She / It + has ('s) + been + (inf. + ing) ...

- Rokaya has been studying English for two years.

استخدامات المضارع التام المستمر Uses of the present perfect continuous

① حدث بدأ في الماضي وامتد حتى الوقت الحاضر غالباً مع for / since, (لاحظ أن المضارع التام يمكن أن يُستخدم لنفس الغرض):

- Ayman and Ashraf have been talking for the last two hours.
- Radwa hasn't been working for that company for long.
- Has Mr Mohammed been teaching at this school for a long time?
- What have the children been doing for the last few minutes?

② في حال عدم وجود (for / since) يكون المضارع التام المستمر أكثر عمومية ليعني في الآونة الأخيرة:

- Recently, he has been feeling unwell.
- Sara has been watching too much television lately.
- Hassan has been feeling a little worried about his job.
- Lisa has not been doing exercise.

The difference between the present perfect simple and continuous

الفرق بين المضارع التام البسيط والمضارع التام المستمر

يستخدم المضارع التام البسيط للدلالة على حدث تم وله أثر أو نتيجة في المضارع (الأثر أو النتيجة نتجت علي اكتمال أو تمام الحدث):

- He's **had** his meal, so he **is** full.
- Rokaya **has done** the housework, so she **can watch** TV now.

لكن يُستخدم المضارع التام المستمر للدلالة على حدث له أثر أو نتيجة في المضارع (الأثر أو النتيجة نتجت عن الحدث وليس تامه):

- I've **been having** meal so there **are** plates, spoons and cups all over the table.
- Rokaya **has been doing** the housework, so she **looks** very tired.

يستخدم المضارع التام فقط وليس المضارع التام المستمر عند ذكر العدد أو الكم، ومن الكلمات الدالة على ذلك:

two / three / many / a few / few / several / a lot of / lots of / all / plenty of ...+ مفعول جمع

- He **has been drinking** three cups of tea this evening. (X)
- He **has drunk** three cups of tea this evening. (✓)
- He **has been drinking** at least a litre of tea this evening. (X)
- He **has drunk** at least a litre of tea this evening. (✓)
- I **have been meeting** many customers recently. (X)
- I **have met** many customers recently. (✓)

يستخدم المضارع التام فقط وليس المضارع التام المستمر مع الأفعال اللحظية أو الأفعال التفريرية (أفعال الإدراك والمشاعر والحواس والتملك... الخ):

- A fast car **has been crashing** into a rock by the road. (X)
- A fast car **has crashed** into a rock by the road. (✓)
- We **have been owning** this flat for 15 years. (X)
- We **have owned** this flat for 15 years. (✓)
- She **has been knowing** these friends for a year. (X)
- She **has known** these friends for a year. (✓)

Exercise On Language

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1 Getting Started

1. My sister at university for three years. She comes home every weekend.
a. is b. has been c. is being d. had been
2. I started my job, I have met important people from all over the world.
a. For b. Since c. Until d. When
3. His style of painting over the years.
a. have changed b. changing c. has changed d. is changed
4. Naguib Mahfouz's books into many languages.
a. have translated b. had translated c. were translating d. have been translated
5. It's a month Hind last visited her uncle.
a. for b. since c. of d. to
6. Dr Barakat is funny. He has always to his clinic by scooter.
a. come b. been coming c. came d. comes
7. Dr Barakat is funny. He always to his clinic by scooter.
a. come b. been coming c. came d. comes
8. He on that project for two years, and not finished.
a. worked b. am working c. has been working d. has worked
9. The forest fires for three weeks now. We need a lot of rain to put them out.
a. has burnt b. have been burning c. has been burning d. have burnt
10. The forest fires for three weeks. Now there are no trees.
a. has burnt b. have been burning c. has been burning d. have burnt
11. I haven't seen him we were together.
a. when b. since c. for d. ago
12. I have a car since 2018.
a. had b. been having c. having d. had been

13. She's three letters this afternoon.
a. written b. been writing c. wrote d. writing
14. They're angry. They for us for ages.
a. had been waiting b. waited c. have waited d. have been waiting
15. They were angry. They for us for ages.
a. had been waiting b. waited c. have waited d. have been waiting
16. He was in hospital because he an accident.
a. has had b. has been having c. had had d. has not had
17. He's in hospital because he an accident.
a. has had b. has been having c. had had d. has not had
18. I've this page four times and I still don't understand it all.
a. reading b. not read c. been reading d. read
19. I'm dead tired. I for ten hours now.
a. had worked b. 've been working c. 've worked d. had been working
20. I was dead tired. I for ten hours.
a. had worked b. 've been working c. 've worked d. had been working
21. Nawal's younger sister has studied the past tense, but she hasn't studied the present perfect
a. just b. yet c. already d. never
22. We haven't travelled by train years.
a. for b. since c. on d. recently
23. I haven't seen the new adventure film
a. just b. yet c. already d. never
24. Ahmed London. He is going to return to Cairo next week.
a. has gone b. has been c. has gone to d. has been to
25. Karim has been really good at English he went to England on holiday last summer.
a. when b. for c. although d. since

2 Special Cases

26. I four collections of short stories by M. Shedid.
a. has been reading b. have been reading c. have read d. has read

27. For the last three days, I a collections of short stories by M. Shedid and I am really enjoying it.
a. has been reading b. have been reading c. have read d. has read
28. How long ? - I wish it would stop.
a. has it rained b. has it been raining c. will it be raining d. was it raining
29. Omar in a band since 2011. Now, he is its master violinist.
a. plays b. has played c. has been playing d. is playing
30. Look! Someone that window.
a. have broken b. has broken c. has been breaking d. hasn't broken
31. I Mr A. Hassan for years.
a. know b. 've been known c. 've known d. have been knowing
32. I my grandparents many times this year.
a. have visited b. was visiting c. have been visiting d. have been visited
33. have you been studying English?
a. How long b. How long ago c. How much d. When
34. did you start studying English?
a. How long b. How long ago c. How much d. When
35. You your room for more than an hour. When on earth will you finish?
a. cleaned b. have been cleaning c. are cleaning d. have cleaned
36. The presenter for two hours. I wish he'd stop.
a. talked b. has been talking c. has talked d. is talking
37. The flat is now ready to be furnished. I it.
a. paint b. had painted c. have painted d. have been painting
38. to this club before?
a. Have you been b. Have you been going c. Have you been gone d. Do you go

39. She in Liverpool all her life.
a. lived b. has been living c. has lived d. b & c
40. I letters all day. I wonder when I will finish.
a. typed b. have been typing
c. have been typed d. have typed
41. I ten letters today.
a. typed b. have been typing
c. have been typed d. have typed
42. It for two hours. Now the sky is clear.
a. rained b. has been raining c. is raining d. has rained
43. She about herself non-stop all evening. I wish she would stop.
a. is talking b. has been talked c. has been talking d. has talked
44. It's the first time I the skateboard.
a. see b. have been seeing c. saw d. have seen
45. I my friend for ages.
a. didn't see b. haven't seen
c. haven't been seeing d. am not seeing
46. I on this essay all evening. I am still to write the conclusion.
a. worked b. 've been working c. was working d. 've worked
47. I six cups of coffee today.
a. were drinking b. have drunk
c. have been drinking d. had drunk
48. Splendid! Has Sama done all the washing-up ?
a. yet b. ever c. already d. since
49. Great news! You the competition.
a. 've won b. have been winning c. haven't won d. are winning
50. Ali his wife since he was a child.
a. has known b. has been knowing c. has been known d. was known

3 Check your understanding

51. "It's more than 40 years since I travelled abroad." This means that
a. I haven't ever travelled abroad.
b. I have travelled abroad forty years ago.
c. I last travelled abroad forty years ago.
d. I have travelled abroad for forty years.

52. This is the sixth email
a. I have sent today. b. I have been sending today.
c. a & b d. I had sent today.
53. I started to know my neighbour Omar when we moved into this flat 10 years ago.
a. I have been knowing my neighbour Omar since 2012.
b. I have known my neighbour Omar for 2012.
c. I have been known my neighbour Omar since 2012.
d. I have known my neighbour Omar since 2012.
54. I was on the ground just after the finishing line out of breath;
a. I have run 10 kilometres. b. I have been running 10 kilometres.
c. I had been running 10 kilometres. d. I had run 10 kilometres.
55. I am on the ground just after the finishing line out of breath;
a. I have run 10 kilometres.
b. I have been running 10 kilometres.
c. I had been running 10 kilometres.
d. I had run 10 kilometres.
56.
a. I have been drinking four liters of water today.
b. I had been drinking four liters of water today.
c. I have drunk four liters of water today.
d. I had drunk four liters of water today.
57. now.
a. He hasn't been watching a match for two months
b. He hadn't been watching a match for two months
c. He hadn't watched a match for two months
d. He hasn't watched a match for two months
58. I
a. haven't seen my cousin since last October.
b. didn't see my cousin for last October.
c. a & b
d. haven't been seeing my cousin since last October.

Part I

Vocabulary & Definitions

هذا الجزء خاص بالمفردات والتعبيرات الرئيسية للقصة، لقراءة نص القصة المقررة وللمزيد من المفردات اللغوية والتدريبات نهاية الكتاب.

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

adore (d) (v)	يعشق - يحب ... بشدة	influence (d) (v-n)	تأثير - يؤثر علي
annoyed(adj)	متضايق - مززعج	jealous(adj)	غَيُور - حاسد
call(ed) on(phr.v)	يزور	keep away from	يبقي بعيداً عن
client(n)	عميل/زبون	leave it to me	دع الأمر لي
dismiss (ed) (v)	يفصل من العمل	property(n)	مُتاع
elegant(adj)	أنيق	recover (ed) (v)	يسترد وعيه
gatekeeper(n)	بوابة - حارس عقار	unpleasant(adj)	غير سار
gloomy(adj)	كئيب	wealthy(adj)	ثري
guilty(adj)	مُذنب	whisper (ed) (v/n)	همسة - بهس

2 Definitions تعريفات

لابد من قراءة التعريفات التالية جيداً. فهي موضع امتحان.

adore (d) (v)	يعشق - يحب ... بشدة	to love someone or something very much
call(ed) on(phr.v)	يزور	to visit someone for a short time
client(n)	عميل/زبون	someone who pays a person for a service or advice
dismiss (ed) (v)	يفصل من العمل	to make someone leave their job
elegant(adj)	أنيق	having an attractive and graceful appearance
gatekeeper(n)	بوابة - حارس عقار	a person whose job is to guard an entrance
influence (d) (v)	يؤثر علي	to have an effect on the way someone behaves
jealous(adj)	غَيُور - حاسد	feeling unhappy because someone has something that you wish you had
keep away from	يبقي بعيداً عن	to avoid going to or seeing

recover (ed) (v)
يشفي - يسترد وعيه

whisper (ed) (v/n)
بهس - همسة

to get better from an illness or injury
to say something very quietly

• Understand

Exercise On Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The bride looked very in her long white dress.
a. guilty b. gloomy c. jealous d. elegant
- Nadia is of her cousin because she's just got an iPhone.
a. guilty b. gloomy c. jealous d. elegant
- It was such a shock when we won the competition. I needed a few minutes to
a. influence b. recover c. adore d. dismiss
- The job of a is to open and close a gate, to decide who can enter the property.
a. relative b. client c. gatekeeper d. whisper
- I absolutely my aunt. She's one of my favourite people.
a. influence b. recover c. adore d. dismiss
- Don't worry about anything at all. Just
a. keep away from b. make a picnic for c. take pride in d. leave it to me
- You don't have to, no one can hear us.
a. whisper b. recover c. adore d. dismiss
- We were warned to that part of the city at night.
a. keep away from b. make a picnic for c. take pride in d. leave it to me
- Hana is a of mine. She comes to my clinic every three months to check her teeth.
a. relative b. client c. gatekeeper d. whisper
- We're planning to Amir from his position because he isn't doing a very good job.
a. influence b. recover c. adore d. dismiss
- I'm going to decide for myself which job I want to do and I won't let anyone else me.
a. influence b. recover c. adore d. dismiss

المهارات الخاصة بالوحدة تم شرحها متبوعة بالتدريبات في ملحق (Master your skills) كل وحدة علي حدة.

تدوية

الترجمة Translation

1 Choose the best Arabic translation :

1. You don't have to be a genius or a visionary or even a college graduate to be successful. You just need a framework and a dream

عليك أن تكون عبقرًا أو صاحب رؤية أو حتى خريجًا جامعيًا لتكون ناجحًا، أنت فقط بحاجة إلى إطار عمل وحلم.
ليس عليك أن تكون عبقرًا أو مرئيًا أو حتى خريجًا جامعيًا لتكون ناجحًا، أنت فقط بحاجة إلى إطار عمل وحلم.
ليس عليك أن تكون عبقرًا أو صاحب رؤية أو حتى خريجًا جامعيًا لتكون ناجحًا، أنت فقط بحاجة إلى إطار عمل وحلم.
ليس عليك أن تكون عبقرًا أو صاحب رؤية أو حتى خريجًا جامعيًا لتكون ناجحًا، أنت فقط بحاجة إلى إطار عمل وحلم.

2. Success isn't about how much money you make. It's about the difference you make in people's lives.

النجاح لا يتعلق بكمية الأموال التي تجنيها، إنه عن الفرق الذي تحدثه في حياة الناس.
النجاح لا يتعلق بكمية الأموال التي تجنيها، بل يتعلق الأمر بالفرق الذي تحدثه في حياة الناس.
النجاح لا يتعلق بعدد الأموال التي تجنيها، يتعلق الأمر بالفرق الذي تحدثه في حياة الناس.
النجاح لا يتعلق بكمية الأموال التي تجنيها، كما يتعلق الأمر بالفرق الذي تحدثه في حياة الناس.

3. There are two types of people who will tell you that you cannot make a difference: those who are afraid to try and those who are afraid you will succeed.

هناك نوعان من الأشخاص الذين سيقولون لك أنه لا يمكنك صنع الاختلاف: أولئك الذين يخشون المحاولة وأولئك الذين يخشون أنك لن تنجح.
هناك نوعان من الأشخاص الذين سيقولون لك أنه لا يمكنك صنع شيء، مختلف: أولئك الذين يخشون المحاولة وأولئك الذين يحبون أنك ستنجح.
هناك نوعان من الأشخاص الذين سيقولون لك أنه لا يمكنك إحداث الفارق: أولئك الذين يخشون المحاولة وأولئك الذين يخشون أنك ستنجح.
هناك نوعان من الأشخاص الذين سيقولون لك أنه يمكنك إحداث الفارق: أولئك الذين لا يخشون المحاولة وأولئك الذين يخشون أنك ستنجح..

4. The real test is whether you let failure harden or shame you into inaction, or whether you learn from it; whether you choose to persevere.

أ. الاختبار الحقيقي هو ما إذا كنت تركت الفشل يقوى أو يخجلك إلى التراجع، أو ما إذا كنت تتعلم منه. سواء اخترت المثابرة.
ب. إن الاختبار الحقيقي هو هل ستترك الفشل يشتد أو يخجلك إلى التراجع، أو ما إذا كنت تتعلم منه. سواء اخترت المثابرة.
ج. إن الاختبار الحقيقي هو هل ستترك الفشل يشتد أو يخجلك لتتقاعس، أو ما إذا كنت تتعلم منه. اخترت المثابرة.
د. إن الاختبار الحقيقي هو هل ستترك الفشل يشتد أو يخجلك لتتقاعس، أو ما إذا كنت تتعلم منه. وسختار المثابرة.

2 Choose the best English translation :

1. لم تكن الإعاقة الجسدية أبدًا عقبة في طريق النجاح، فكم من معاقين حققوا ما لم يحققه الأصحاء.

a. Physical disability has never been an obstacle in the way of success, for how many disabled people have achieved what the healthy have not.
b. Physical disability has never been an obstacle in the way of success. There are so many disabled people have achieved what the healthy have not.
c. Physical disability has never been an obstacle in the way of success. There are so many disabled people that have achieved what the healthy has not.
d. Physician disability has never been an obstacle in the way of success. There are so many disabled people who have achieved what the healthy have not.

2. لا توجد كلمة «مستحيل» في قاموس مفردات الإنسان الناجح، فالمستحيل يصبح ممكنًا بالتفكير والعمل الجاد.

a. There is no word "impossible" in the vocabulary of a successful person, the impossible becomes possible by thinking and hard work.
b. There is no "impossible" in the vocabulary dictionary of a successful person, the impossible become possible by thanking and hard work.
c. The word "impossible" does not belong to the vocabulary of a successful person. What is impossible becomes possible by thinking and hard work.
d. The word "impossible" does not belong to the vocabulary of a successful person. What is possible becomes impossible by thinking and hard work.

شخصيتها القوية وإصرارها على ألا تُعامل بشكل مختلف ساعدها على تغيير رأي الناس في الذين يعانون من متلازمة داون.

- Her strong character and determination not to be treated differently have helped her to change people's minds about people with Down's Syndrome.
 - Her strong character and discrimination not to be treated differently have helped her to change people's minds about people with Down's Syndrome.
 - Her strong character and determination not to treat differently have helped her to change people's minds about people with Down's Syndrome.
 - Her strong character and determination not to be treated differently have helped her to change the people of Down's Syndrome minds.
- لا تشغل بإظهار أخطاء غيرك، بل اجتهد ليكون لك عملك الخاص الذي يندر به الخطأ.
- Do not preoccupy with showing the mistakes of others, but strive to have your own work, in which mistakes are rare.
 - Do not be preoccupied with showing the mistakes of others, but strive to have your own work, in which mistakes are rare.
 - Do not be preoccupied with showing the mistakes of another, but strive to have your own work, in which mistakes are rare.
 - Do not be preoccupied with showing the mistakes of others, but drive to have your own work, in which mistakes are not rare.

MASTER YOUR SKILLS

اتقن المهارات اللغوية



في اللغة الانجليزية

امنح نفسك لمن يستحق

Understand

Apply

Create

تلويح
يمكنك حل
الاختبار وتصويبه
إلكترونياً



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- It is a great feeling when you a challenge.
a. change b. achieve c. overcome d. treat
- Helping others during hard times is something of great
a. value b. powerlifting c. polio d. Syndrome
- On, I drink three coffees a day.
a. vote b. average c. lecture d. Paralympic
- I enjoy reading which are extracted from the works of great writers.
a. quotes b. disabilities c. role models d. councillors
- To is to behave towards someone or something in a particular way.
a. overcome b. combine c. treat d. evaluate
- We notes to remember important information.
a. do b. achieve c. treat d. make
- I've achieved nearly all my goals." The verb 'achieved' here is a synonym of
a. failed b. realised c. reached d. b&c
- You '.....' when you do everything you can.
a. do your best b. spare no effort c. try again d. a & b
- Angela's parents encouraged her to work and this helped her to achieve an important position at work.
a. hard b. hardly c. hardy d. b & c
-, no one was hurt in the accident.
a. Luck b. Luckily c. Unluckily d. Unlucky
- Everybody looked by her talk.
a. impress b. impressed c. impressive d. impressively
- She had ever done any sport before she started doing powerlifting.
a. hard b. hardly c. quick d. quickly
- Ouch! I my finger!
a. don't cut b. will cut c. have been cutting d. 've cut

- Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

More importantly, if 16 year-olds are old enough to engage in other adult activities, then they are old enough to vote. In many states, 16 year-olds can work, get a driver's licence, and engage in many other adult activities that make them mature enough to vote. If, at 16, a young person is old enough to manage the responsibilities of work and school, then it is clear that they are responsible enough to make informed decisions about politics and politicians.

But the most important reason why the voting age should be lowered to 16 is that it will decrease apathy **الاجالة** and cynicism **اللبية** while stimulating a lifelong interest in political participation. Many young people feel as though their opinion doesn't matter. By the time they reach voting age, they are often disenchanted with politics and cynical about the entire political process.

If the voting age was lowered to 16, young people would know that their opinion does count. They would be inspired to exercise their right to vote not just as young adults but throughout their lives. The long-term results—a much higher percentage of interested voters and better voter turnout—will benefit our entire nation.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

- Choose the correct answer.
17. The best title for this passage is
a. A legal right for youth
b. Impossible task
c. Voting disadvantages
d. Decreasing voting
 18. We can infer that the word "engage" means
a. exclude
b. involve
c. disappear
d. include
 19. The last paragraph deals with lowering the voting age.
a. the reasons for
b. the demerits of
c. the benefits of
d. an argument against
 20. If the United States lowered the voting age, most countries all over the world will that.
a. imitate
b. ignore
c. neglect
d. avoid
 21. Lowering the age of voting will increase the youth's in political life.
a. cynicism
b. apathy
c. isolation
d. interest
 22. Lowering the voting age to 16 years in many countries.
a. has been applied
b. is being totally refused
c. has become a law
d. is still being discussed
 23. The writer thinks that young people should vote
a. after finishing university
b. before having a job
c. at the age of 16
d. at the age of 18
 24. When the youth are able to vote, they will have their personalities.
a. dependent
b. independent
c. tolerant
d. impatient

Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Food addiction, mindless eating, living to eat; they're all related. It is a desire to consume foods that are not necessarily the healthiest choices or the best quantities, or at times when our bodies don't really need fuel. Do you like eating or you would like to follow a diet? Some people like eating food to be healthy and strong as it was believed that being overweight was healthy, but nowadays most people disagree with this viewpoint.

On the other hand, many people are fighting the battle to reduce weight, studies are being performed concerning appetite and how it is controlled by both emotional and biochemical factors. Some of the conclusions of these studies may give us the ability to understand how to deal with weight problems. For example, when several people were asked about their eating habits in times of stress, 54% said they reacted to stressful situations by eating.

Further investigations of both humans and animals indicated that it is not food which relieves tension, but rather the act of chewing. A test showed that extremely fat people have a high sense of taste, and love more flavoured food than thin people. When deprived of the variety of tastes, extremely fat people are not satisfied and consequently eat more to fulfil this need.

Exercise has been recommended as an important part of weight-loss programmes. However, it has been found out that mild exercise is a way of losing weight because using the stairs instead of the lift is better in the long run than taking on a severe programme such as running slowly. Many people find it difficult to continue over long periods of time, it also increases appetite.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

25. The main idea of the passage is that
 a. We eat to live not live to eat
 b. We live to eat not eat to live
 c. People eat to meet their hunger only
 d. People eat to consume their rotten food
26. We can understand from the passage that the word "consume" means
 a. expire b. produce c. eat d. import
27. people think that eating too much is healthy.
 a. More b. Few c. Many d. Little
28. What do you think relieves people in eating too much?
 a. Food flavours b. Food times c. Chewing food d. Food digestion
29. We can have a good diet by
 a. eating the healthiest food with any quantities.
 b. eating very little healthy food.
 c. eating the healthiest choices with large quantities.
 d. eating suitable quantities of healthy food.

30. The writer thinks that exercise is better for weight loss.
 a. violent b. extreme c. exhausting d. moderate
31. Stress is a / an reason for eating too much.
 a. mental b. emotional c. bodily d. physical
32. The sentence that summarises the last paragraph is that
 a. doing exercise is beneficial to losing weight
 b. doing exercise is discouraged in losing weight
 c. fat people can control their appetite than thin people
 d. it's likely to eat less food when there's no flavors

Choose the best Arabic translation :

33. The Egyptian scientist Ahmed Zewail was awarded the Nobel Prize for his discovery

of the femtosecond, the smallest unit of time, in October, 1999.

- أ. تم منح العالم المصري أحمد زويل جائزة نوبل لاستكشافه الفمتو ثانية ، أصغر وحدة للزمن ، في أكتوبر ١٩٩٩ .
 ب. تم إعطاء العالم المصري أحمد زويل جائزة نوبل لإدراكه الفمتو ثانية ، أصغر وحدة للزمن ، في أكتوبر ١٩٩٩ .
 ج. تم مكافأة العالم المصري أحمد زويل جائزة نوبل لاختراعه الفمتو ثانية ، أصغر وحدة للزمن ، في أكتوبر ١٩٩٩ .
 د. تم منح العالم المصري أحمد زويل جائزة نوبل لاكتشافه الفمتو ثانية ، أصغر وحدة للزمن ، في أكتوبر ١٩٩٩ .

34. Reading newspapers is a must for many people. Thirst for knowledge urges many people to read them.

- أ. تعتبر قراءة الصحف شيء واجب لدى كثيرًا من الناس ، فالعطش للمعرفة يحسبهم على قراءتها .
 ب. تمثل قراءة الجرائد أهمية لدى كثيرًا من الناس ، فالعطش للمعرفة يحسبهم على قراءتها .
 ج. إن قراءة الصحف شيء ضروري لدى كثيرًا من الناس ، فالعطش للمعرفة يحثهم على قراءتها .
 د. لقد أصبحت قراءة الصحف ضرورة لدى كثيرًا من الناس ، فالعطش للمعرفة حثهم على قراءتها .

Choose the best English translation :

٣٥. إستخدام المخصبات الزراعية والمواد الكيميائية يزيد من كمية المحاصيل ولكنه غير صحي وأحيانًا ضار.

- a. The use of agricultural fertilisers and chemicals increased the amount of the crops, but it had been unhealthy and it is sometimes painful.
 b. The use of agricultural fertilisers and chemicals increases the amount of the crops, but it is unhealthy and it is sometimes harmful.
 c. The use of agricultural fertilisers and chemicals decreases the quantity of the crops, but it has been healthy and it is sometimes harmful.
 d. The use of agricultural fertilisers and chemicals increases the amount of the crops, but it was healthy and it is sometimes harmless.

Answers of Test on unit 7

اسم الطالب (رباعياً) :

تعليمات: ظلل الدائرة المقابلة تمامًا للإجابة الصحيحة. إذا ظللت الدائرة أمام الإجابة الخطأ، اشطب عليها بشكل واضح ثم ظلل الدائرة المقابلة للإجابة الصحيحة.

- | | |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| 1. (a) (b) (c) (d) | 21. (a) (b) (c) (d) |
| 2. (a) (b) (c) (d) | 22. (a) (b) (c) (d) |
| 3. (a) (b) (c) (d) | 23. (a) (b) (c) (d) |
| 4. (a) (b) (c) (d) | 24. (a) (b) (c) (d) |
| 5. (a) (b) (c) (d) | 25. (a) (b) (c) (d) |
| 6. (a) (b) (c) (d) | 26. (a) (b) (c) (d) |
| 7. (a) (b) (c) (d) | 27. (a) (b) (c) (d) |
| 8. (a) (b) (c) (d) | 28. (a) (b) (c) (d) |
| 9. (a) (b) (c) (d) | 29. (a) (b) (c) (d) |
| 10. (a) (b) (c) (d) | 30. (a) (b) (c) (d) |
| 11. (a) (b) (c) (d) | 31. (a) (b) (c) (d) |
| 12. (a) (b) (c) (d) | 32. (a) (b) (c) (d) |
| 13. (a) (b) (c) (d) | 33. (a) (b) (c) (d) |
| 14. (a) (b) (c) (d) | 34. (a) (b) (c) (d) |
| 15. (a) (b) (c) (d) | 35. (a) (b) (c) (d) |
| 16. (a) (b) (c) (d) | 36. (a) (b) (c) (d) |
| 17. (a) (b) (c) (d) | 37. (a) (b) (c) (d) |
| 18. (a) (b) (c) (d) | 38. (a) (b) (c) (d) |
| 19. (a) (b) (c) (d) | 39. (a) (b) (c) (d) |
| 20. (a) (b) (c) (d) | 40. (a) (b) (c) (d) |



Part I

Vocabulary

• اختبر مدى اتقانك للمفردات الرئيسية في كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية.
• المفردات اللغوية باللون الأحمر هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية.

تنويه

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

apply(ied) (v)	يُطَبَّق - يُتَقَدَّم بطلب ل -	human being	إنسان/ كائن بشري
be charged	مُتَّهَم - مَشْحُون - مُكَلَّف	human resources	قسم الموارد البشرية
be in charge(of)	مُسْتَوَل (عن)	intern(n)	مُتَدَرِّب مهني
disaster(n)	كارثة/ مصيبة	internship(n)	التدريب المهني - الزمالة
candidate(n)	مُرَشَّح (الوظيفة/ منصب)		- الامتياز
colossal(adj)	جَاسِم - هائل	part-time(adj)	بدوام جزئي/ لبعض الوقت
curriculum vitae	السيرة الذاتية	resources(n)	موارد
(CV) (n)		measure(n)	معيار - إجراء - مقياس
full-time(adj)	بدوام كامل	in charge(adj)	مُسْتَوَل

2 Important Vocabulary

achievable(adj)	مُمْكِنُ إِنْجَازُهُ	measure(d) (v)	يُقَيِّس
act(ed) (v)	يَتَصَرَّف	measures(n)	إجراءات - معايير
advanced(adj)	متقدم/ عالي	participate(d) (v)	يُشَارِك
award(ed) (v/n)	يُمنَح - منحة	point(n)	فكرة - نقطة
base(d) (v/n)	يُؤَسِّس - يَبْنِي - قاعدة	position(n)	وظيفة - مكانة
basically(adv)	بشكل أساسي	practise(d) (v)	يُمَارَس
colleague(n)	زميل عمل	process(n)	عملية
consider(ed) (v)	يُفَكِّر فِي	productivity(n)	الإنتاجية
contact details	معلومات التواصل	professionally(adv)	باحتراافية / بمهنية
contact information	معلومات التواصل	profile(n)	ملف شخصي - وضع
create(d) (v)	يُنشِئ - يَخْلُق - يبتكر	proper (adj)	مناسب
destroy(ed) (v)	يُدْمَر	qualification(n)	مُؤَهِّل
develop(ed) (v)	يُطَوَّر	research(ed) (v/n)	يُجْرِي أبحاث على - بحث
digital(adj)	رقمي	self-management(n)	إدارة الذات
economics(n)	(علم) الاقتصاد	service(n)	خدمة
employer(n)	صاحب عمل	skill(n)	مهارة

evaluate(d) (v)
excellence(n)
excerpt(n)
fluently(adv)
grade(n)
lack(ed) (v/n)
management(n)
marketing(n)

يقيم
التفكير - الكفاءة
مقتطف/اقتباس
بطاقة
تقدير - مرتبة - مرحلة - صف
ينقصه - نقص
إدارة
التسويق

skilled(adj)
skilful(adj)
strategy(n)
throughout(adv)
volunteer(ed) (n/v)
waitress(n)
want(n)

مُدَرَّب/حاصل على
تدريب
ماهر
إستراتيجية - خطة شاملة
في كل أنحاء
منطوق - يتطوع
نادلة (جرسونة)
الحاجة/الرغبة

3 Definitions تعريفات

apply(ied) (v) يتقدم بطلب لـ	to make a formal request, usually written, for something such as a job, a place at a university, or permission إذن to do something
be in charge مستول	to be responsible for or have responsibility for
disaster(n) كارثة/مصيبة	a big problem or accident
candidate(n) مرشح (الوظيفة)	a person who is interested in getting a specific job
colossal(adj) جسيم - هائل	very large
curriculum vitae (CV) (n) السيرة الذاتية	a summary of a person's education, experience and skills
full-time(adj) بندوام كامل	describes a job someone does for the whole of the working week
human being إنسان	a human/a person
human resources قسم الموارد البشرية	the department /قسم/ديوان that finds people to work and organises training at a company
in charge(adj) مستول	being responsible for
intern(n) مُتدرب مهني	a person who is working at a company for a short time to get work experience
internship(n) التدريب المهني	when someone works for a company to get work experience
measure(n) مقياس - إجراء - مقياس	ways of procedures an action, especially an official one, that is intended to deal with a particular problem
part-time(adj) بندوام جزئي/لبعض الوقت	describes a job someone only does for some of the working week

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

- The human discusses adding some members to the staff of the company.
a. resources b. process c. measures d. beings
- Of all, Omar was chosen to get the job.
a. waitresses b. candidates c. internships d. profiles
- It was a/an for him to lose all his money.
a. internship b. excellence c. excerpt d. calamity
- I was in a/an danger when the snake entered my room throw the window overlooking the garden.
a. colossal b. achievable c. advanced d. trifling
- I have to for full membership of the club to take part in the vote.
a. evaluate b. apply c. trace d. lack
- Each candidate is kindly asked to send their by email.
a. productivity b. management c. economics d. curriculum vitae
- When you are responsible for something, you are it.
a. in charge of b. charged with c. applied d. traced
- I'm just a/an here, not an employee or an applicant.
a. waitress b. candidate c. intern d. profile
- When I was a student at university, I found a/an job as an assistant in a bookshop for Thursdays and Saturdays.
a. full-time b. part-time c. achievable d. digital
- It is great that a university student gets a summer to prepare themselves for the labour market.
a. internship b. excellence c. excerpt d. calamity
- You have to take the needed to keep yourself safe.
a. disasters b. excellences c. experts d. measures
- It is the first time for me to be of the office.
a. achievable b. part-time c. in charge d. digital

13. When you are responsible for a crime, you are it.
a. in charge of b. charged with c. applied d. traced
14. Human are different, in appearance as well as in personality.
a. resources b. processes c. measures d. beings

2 Important vocabulary

15. I was careful to make notes of everything the lecture.
a. throughout b. basically c. professionally d. fluently
16. Sama is being for her wedding dress.
a. acted b. participated c. measured d. volunteered
17. I do this job temporarily مؤقتاً for of something better.
a. marketing b. details c. strategy d. want
18. The traffic police are taking some strict to reduce road accidents.
a. resources b. process c. measures d. beings
19. I paid a professional designer to design my webpage
a. waitress b. candidate c. intern d. profile
20. This of the performance impressed us all.
a. internship b. excellence c. excerpt d. calamity
21. These exercises are prepared for average students, not for the level.
a. colossal b. achievable c. advanced d. trifling
22. The committee اللجنة needs to how well the new plan works.
a. evaluate b. apply c. lift d. lack
23. She studied at university and now she works as an accountant in an international bank.
a. productivity b. management c. economics d. curriculum vitae
24. This is a/an watch.
a. full-time b. part-time c. achievable d. digital
25. In a CV, contact and contact information mean the same.
a. marketing b. details c. strategy d. want
26. He is no criminal. It is clear that he in self-defence.
a. acted b. traced c. measured d. volunteered
27. She is an engineer, but she preferred to work in the field of teaching disabled children.
a. throughout b. basically c. friendly d. fluently

28. This famous actress started her work life as a/an in a pizza restaurant.
a. waitress b. candidate c. intern d. profile
29. of the scientist's speech appeared in all newspapers.
a. Internships b. Excellences c. Excerpts d. Calamities
30. When a goal is it can be reached.
a. colossal b. achievable c. advanced d. trifling
31. The team really a talented play maker. Do you think Ammar can do well in this position?
a. evaluates b. applies c. traces d. lacks
32. Self- is a good quality in a job candidate.
a. productivity b. management c. economics d. curriculum vitae
33. All businesses now pay too much care to digital
a. marketing b. process c. calamity d. want
34. A kind gentleman to help the child cross the road.
a. lacked b. participated c. measured d. volunteered
35. I am a manager to a big staff, so I have to behave
a. throughout b. basically c. professionally d. fluently
36. The of economic reform إصلاح needs all citizens to be patient and hard working.
a. resources b. process c. measures d. beings
37. Your decreases if you are overworked or under stress.
a. productivity b. management c. economics d. curriculum vitae
38. We need a new for combating pollution.
a. marketing b. details c. strategy d. want
39. Those who in public service are positive citizens.
a. trace b. participate c. measure d. value

3 Definitions

40. A/An is an action, especially an official one, that is intended to deal with a particular problem.
a. human resource b. measure c. curriculum vitae d. internship
41. A/An job is one someone only does for some of the working week.
a. trifling b. colossal c. full-time d. part-time
42. means ways or procedures.
a. Measures b. Resources c. Sources d. Internships

43. The department finds people to work and organises training at a company.
a. human resources b. calamity c. curriculum vitae d. internship
44. A/An is a person who is interested in getting a specific job.
a. human resource b. human being c. intern d. candidate
45. A/An is a person who is working at a company for a short time to get work experience.
a. human resource b. human being c. intern d. candidate
46. A/An is big problems or accidents.
a. human resources b. disaster c. curriculum vitae d. internship
47. A/An is a summary of a person's education, experience and skills.
a. human resource b. calamity c. curriculum vitae d. internship
48. Something that is is very large.
a. trifling b. colossal c. full-time d. part-time
49. A/An is when someone works for a company to get work experience.
a. human resources b. calamity c. curriculum vitae d. internship
50. A/An job is one someone does for the whole of the working week.
a. trifling b. colossal c. full-time d. part-time
51. A/An means a person.
a. human resource b. human being c. intern d. candidate
52. To means to be responsible for or have responsibility for.
a. be charged b. trace c. be in charge d. apply

Part II Vocabulary Study

ساعد مُعلمك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مُسبقاً بشكل جيد.

تنويه

Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

cept	the challenge	يقبل التحدي	go	wrong	يتعطل
ild	websites	ينشئ موقع إلكتروني		achievable plans	
gn	websites	يصمم موقع إلكتروني	make	وضع خطط من الممكن إنجازها	
op	a social media strategy	يطور استراتيجية وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي		links between	يربط بين
				videos	يسجل فيديو

do	an internship	يقضي فترة تدريب مهني	play	the violin	يعزف على الكمان
	feedback on	يقدم بعض الملاحظات عن	set	goals	يحدد أهداف
give	presentations	يقوم بعروض تقديمية	take	photographs	يلتقط صور
	talks	يلقي خطابات	work	part-time	يعمل بدوام جزئي

Mini Test 1 Collocations

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- I was very nervous when I my first talk.
a. went b. gave c. played d. received
- As a university student, you can only part-time.
a. work b. build c. make d. do
- The task seems impossible, but I the challenge.
a. make b. set c. accept d. give
- My PC stopped because something wrong with the power supply.
a. went b. gave c. played d. received
- The internship I had gave me a lot of experience.
a. worked b. built c. made d. done
- The goals for this child does not suit his abilities.
a. make b. set c. accept d. give
- Rodayna can some musical instruments like the violin.
a. go b. give c. play d. receive
- Few are those programmers who can user-friendly websites.
a. work b. build c. take d. do

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
be in charge	مُسئول عن
be charged with	مُتَّهَم بـ
disaster	كارثة / مصيبة
colossal	جسيم - هائل
human being	إنسان / كائن بشري
trifling(adj)	تافه
	be responsible / have responsibility for
	be accused of
	calamity / catastrophe
	very large / massive / gigantic
	man/person
	unimportant/valueless

3 Antonyms متضادات

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)
be charged	متهم
be charged	مكلف - مدفوع
be charged	متدفع
colossal (adj)	هائل
trifling (adj)	تافه
	be innocent
	be empty/dead
	be free
	tiny/minute/little
	important/valuable

Mini Test 2 Synonyms & Antonyms

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- "He was charged with disturbing the authorities." The word 'charged' in this sentence is a synonym of
a. innocent b. accused c. filled d. fined
- "I want to know who is in charge here." In this sentence, 'in charge' can be replaced by
a. colossal b. fined c. full d. responsible
- "Don't pay much attention to trifling details." The word 'trifling' here is an antonym of
a. important b. valuable c. a & b d. valueless
- "Buying all these toys is a colossal waste of money." The adjective 'colossal' here gives the same meaning as
a. very large b. minute c. tiny d. average
- "Human being" is to as calamity is to disaster.
a. woman b. prison c. person d. beast

4 Derivatives المشتقات

Verb	Noun	Adjective
ply	application/app	applied
	application	applicable
	applicant	
	calamity	calamitous
	colossus	colossal
	intern	internal
	internship	

Mini Test 3 Derivatives

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Salah is a football
a. calamitous b. colossus c. colossal d. colossally
- Salah is a talented footballer.
a. calamitous b. colossus c. colossal d. colossally
- Salah has a talent as a footballer.
a. calamitous b. colosseum c. colossal d. colossally
- This solution is only here. Don't try it anywhere else.
a. applied b. application c. apply d. applicable
- I studied physics at university.
a. applied b. application c. apply d. applicable
- I intend to the same method of teaching for teaching grammar.
a. applied b. application c. apply d. applicable
- Some troublemakers were during the football tournament.
a. interned b. interns c. internship d. internal
- There are 15 in our company.
a. interned b. interns c. internship d. internal
- Fifteen students are doing in our company.
a. interned b. interns c. internship d. internal
- It will be a real if it does not rain this year too.
a. calamity b. calamitous c. colossus d. colossal

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a waste of time	مضاعة للوقت	in a certain way	بطريقة محددة
advanced level	مستوى متقدم	interests and hobbies	الاهتمامات والهوايات
Business Studies	دراسات الأعمال	the Egyptian public	الجمهور المصري
by post	بالبريد	old people's home	دار مسنين
colossal calamities	كوارث حسيمة	or rather	أو بالأحرى
customer service	خدمة العملاء	part-time	جزئي (البعض الوقت)
fire brigade	إدارة المطفائي	popular with	مشهور لدى
firefighter	رجل إطفاء	proper measures	معايير مناسبة
from ... down to	من ... وصولاً إلى	social media posts	منشورات وسائل التواصل
high school	مدرسة ثانوية	sure about	متأكد من
		work experience	خبرة العمل

6 Synonymous expressions تعبيرات مترادفة

digital marketing = online marketing التسويق الرقمي	in contact with = have regular communication with يتواصل مع
have responsibility for = be responsible for = be in charge of مسئول عن	take on difficult tasks = agree to do difficult tasks يقوم بالمهام الصعبة

7 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

apply for carry out come up find out hear of	يتقدم بطلب لـ يُنفذ / يقوم بـ يظهر - يحدث يعرف / يكتشف يعرف / يسمع بـ	look for participate in take on trace ... to work as	يبحث عن يشارك في يأخذ يتتبع إلى - نسب ... لـ يعمل كـ
--	---	--	--

Mini Test 4 Expressions, Prepositions & Idioms

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- When someone a task, he agrees to do it.
a. traces ... to b. finds out c. takes on d. looks for
- "I am in charge of this survey." This means I for it.
a. am responsible b. have responsibility
c. have reasons d. a & b
- When you have regular communication with someone, you are them.
a. in contact b. in contact with
c. disconnected from d. updated to
- I'd like very much to participate the public service workshop.
a. in b. with c. to d. as
- I go to school in my car, my father's car.
a. but b. or rather c. however d. although
- He succeeded in carrying the task before the deadline.
a. of b. onto c. out d. down
- I have never heard of this writer before. This means I him before now.
a. listened to b. didn't listen to c. knew d. didn't know

- From the city centre the ring road, the bus stopped seven times.
a. down b. down to c. on d. for
- marketing means selling goods and services online.
a. Digital b. Traditional c. Partner d. Offline
- When we say that something has come up, we mean it has suddenly
a. occurred b. reached c. arrived d. b & c
- My son traced his low marks the headache he had in the exam room.
a. of b. in c. to d. into

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

be in charge / be charged

- be in charge
- I want to know who is in charge in this office.
مسئول (بدون مفعول بعدها)
- be in charge of
- I want to know who is in charge of this office.
مسئول عن (+ مفعول بعدها)
- be charged with
- The terrorist was charged with deliberate murder.
مُتهم بـ
- be charged
- My mobile is charged.
مشحون

human being - human resources

- human being (human beings)
- I respect all human beings.
إنسان / شخص (بشر / أشخاص)
- human resources (HR)
- My uncle is the head of the human resources in this company.
قسم الموارد البشرية (وهو قسم في الشركة يختص بالتوظيف والتدريب ومساعدة العاملين)
- لاحظ أن مصطلح (human resources) غالبًا يتبعه فعل جمع، لكن الفعل المفرد صحيح ويمكن استخدامه في الإنجليزية البريطانية فقط :
- Human resources are responsible for retraining the staff.
(British & American)
- Human resources is responsible for retraining the staff.
(British)

app - application

- application = app (n)
- Google store is full of applications. (✓)
= Google store is full of apps (✓)

تطبيق / تطبيقات

- application (n)
- The application of this theory in real life is impossible. (✓)
- The app of this theory in real life is impossible. (X)

التطبيق / التطبيق

- application (n)
- Sorry, but your application was rejected. تم رفضه

طلب التنازل / العضوية ...

applicant - candidate

- applicant (n)
• candidate (n) for
- There are only three candidates out of fifty applicants for the job.

مقدم بطلب ل (وظيفة / عضوية نادي / مؤسسة دراسية ...)
من بين المتقدمين للحصول على (الوظيفة / العضوية ...)

grade - rank

- grade
- My son is in grade two.
- grade
- Your grades are very good. I'm proud of you.
- rank
- My father held the rank of a colonel in the army.

صف دراسي

تقدير / درجة امتحان أو شهادة

رتبة - مكانة اجتماعية

degree - certificate

- degree
- The temperature dropped to seven degrees Celsius.
- degree
- Draw an angle of 45 degrees.
- degree
- This film has a high degree of violence.
- degree
- He has a degree in law from Cairo University.
- certificate
- This is my birth certificate.
- degree certificate
- There is a copy of my degree certificate in my CV.

درجة حرارة

زاوية الزاوية

مستوى

بطل دراسي (جامعي)

شهادة رسمية - شهادة

شهادة الموظف الدراسي

Mini Test 5 Clear the Confusion

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- I sent my _____ as an email attachment.
a. app b. application c. apply d. a & b
- This _____ is free on Google Store.
a. app b. application c. apply d. a & b
- The manager is abroad on business, so currently I am _____
a. in charge b. charged c. in charge of d. charged with
- The manager is abroad on business, so currently I am _____
a. in charge b. charged c. in charge of d. charged with
- He is _____ the bank robbery.
a. in charge b. charged c. in charge of d. charged with
- You are very clever, Rodayna. Your _____ are excellent.
a. ranks b. grades c. appointments d. conferences
- If you are married, include your marriage _____ in your file.
a. degree b. certificate c. CV d. qualification
- The weather forecast says the temperature is going to be 70 _____ tomorrow.
a. degrees b. certificates c. metres d. miles

8 Master your Key Vocabulary كل ما يخص المفردات

apply

- apply (v)
- I applied for this job because I need work badly.
- apply for
- Mai applied for the job of a secretary.
- apply to
- I'll apply to the club.
- apply in writing
- It is better if you apply in writing.

يتقدم بطلب (التنازل / انضمام)

لا حظ أن :

يتقدم بطلب (بأني بعدها اسم الشيء - الذي تقدم للحصول عليه)

يتقدم بطلب (بأني بعدها اسم الشخص أو الجهة الذي تقدم إليه)

يتقدم بطلب مكتوب

يُطبق على - يُسَرى على

• **apply (to) (v)**
- The discount doesn't apply to summer clothes.
- This plan seems impossible to apply.

يطبقني - عطني

• **applied (adj)**
- I studied applied maths in secondary two.

مُطبق لـ - يُطبق على

• **applicable to (adj)**
- The rules are applicable only to old members.

يُطبق - يطالب (الوظيفة / جامعة / نادي ...)

• **applicant (n)**
- As an applicant, I have to prepare a good CV.

disaster

• **disaster (n)** كارثة / مصيبة = **calamity**

- Coronavirus pandemic was a calamity for workers in the tourist industry.

• **calamitous (adj)** كارثي = **disastrous**

- Coronavirus pandemic had a calamitous effect on the tourist industry.

take ... on

• **take on** (تخضع) / يتخلى

يُوظف / يتخلى - يتخلى

- Our company intends to take on 200 workers next year.

= Our company intends to take 200 workers on next year.

- Egypt took on Uruguay in the first round of the World Cup 2018.

• **take + on = take on** (تخضع) / يتخلى بالقيام بعمل مؤقت

- I advise you not to take on much work.

- Mr Nasser has taken on the post of the manager.

• **take over = take control = become responsible**

تولى المسؤولية / يتحكم

- When his father retired, he took over as a manager.

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I do this job temporarily for

a. marketing

b. details

c. strategy

d. want

2. He was one of 30 for the manager's job.

a. applicable

b. applies

c. applicants

d. appliances

3. The best of coffee are very expensive.

a. degree

b. grades

c. licences

d. customers

4. A: Does the pay rise to me, sir? B: Sure. All workers will get it.

a. contact

b. abbreviate

c. achieve

d. apply

No. Answer & Explanation

1.	d	المتعبير (for want of something) يعني (لا شيء) لا أجد شيئاً أفضل للقيام به
2.	c	الكلمة (applicants) هي الاختيار المناسب بمعنى المرشحين للوظيفة
3.	b	كلمة (grade) هنا تعني (صنف)
4.	d	الفعل (apply) هنا يعني (يسرى على)

Part III**Reading**

Tapscript
لنصوص
استمع الوحدة

1 Reading Texts**Emma Day**

(58 page 17)

1. Contact information 25 Oak Lane, Manchester,
M1 3AL 07159 135 118

emma.day@gmail.com

I am currently looking for an internship in digital marketing in the Manchester area.

2. September 2013 - July 2021.

Bridgetown High School, Manchester

3 Advanced level qualifications at grade A in Business Studies, Economics and English

4 Awarded the school prize for excellence in Economics in my final year

3. March 2020 - Present

Social media assistant, Manchester Evening News (part-time)

• Designing social media posts for news stories

• Working with colleagues to develop a social media strategy for the newspaper

• Participating in a project to research social media habits with colleagues from other countries



4. January 2019 – December 2019

Waitress, Clive's Café (part-time)

- Worked as part of a team
- Developed customer service skills
- 5. • Able to design and build websites
- Skilled photographer
- Able to give presentations to large audiences
- 6. • Playing the violin in the school orchestra
- Volunteer in an old people's home at the weekend
- Taking photographs and making videos

Advice about internship

(WB page 9)

Hello and welcome. Today I'm going to be giving advice about **internships**.⁽¹⁾ First,

I'll talk about what most companies will expect from you. After that, I'll give advice about how best to put yourself

in a **position**⁽²⁾ where you might be offered a job. My final **point**⁽³⁾ will be what to do when your internship finishes.

To start with, remember to always **act**⁽⁴⁾ **professionally**.⁽⁵⁾

If you hope to get a **full-time**⁽⁶⁾ job at the company where you will be an intern, **find out**⁽⁷⁾ what kinds of skills you will need for the job. If you **lack**⁽⁸⁾ any of these skills, try

to **improve**.⁽⁹⁾ For example, if the job wants someone who can **give presentations**,⁽¹⁰⁾ see if you can **practise**⁽¹¹⁾ this by **giving talks**⁽¹²⁾ to your team.

Watch people at the company, too. Who is successful and why? Ask them how they got their jobs and try to learn from them. Don't be afraid to ask questions, and don't be afraid to **take on**⁽¹³⁾ challenges. If something **difficult comes up**,⁽¹⁴⁾ **accept the challenge**.⁽¹⁵⁾ **employees**⁽¹⁶⁾ will like this. Finally, after your internship has finished, try to stay in **contact with**⁽¹⁷⁾ important people at the company.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) التدريب المهني
- (2) وظيفة - مكانة
- (3) فكرة
- (4) يتصرف
- (5) باحترافية / بمهنية
- (6) دوام كامل
- (7) يعرف / يكتشف
- (8) يفتقر / ينقصه
- (9) يتحسن
- (10) يؤم بعروض تقديمية
- (11) يمارس
- (12) يلقى خطاب
- (13) يقبل
- (14) يظهر - يحدث
- (15) يقبل التحدي
- (16) موظفين
- (17) على تواصل مع



Being in charge

(SB page 9)

From the most **colossal**⁽¹⁾ **disasters**⁽²⁾, down to⁽³⁾ the smallest accidents, results are often poor because someone **in charge**⁽⁴⁾ was not "in charge" or didn't know how to be in charge. To be "in charge" is certainly not only to **carry out**⁽⁵⁾ the **proper**⁽⁶⁾ **measures**⁽⁷⁾ yourself but to see that everyone else does so too.

Notes on Nursing : What it is and what it is not (1859)
(Florence Nightingale)

Check Vocabulary

- (1) جسيم
- (2) كوارث / مصائب
- (3) وصولاً إلى
- (4) مسئول
- (5) ينفذ / يقوم بـ
- (6) مناسب
- (7) إجراءات - معايير

Part IV

Language

Passive forms : present, future and infinitive

صيغة المبنى للمجهول فى : المضارع - المستقبل - الصيغ المصدرية

★ الأفعال اللازمة (التي لا تأخذ مفعول) لا تستخدم فى المبنى للمجهول، ومن أمثلة هذه الأفعال :
- go - depend - seem يبدو - look يبدو - fall يسقط - happen / occur يحدث

- My mobile **fell** to the ground. (Not: was fallen)
- A car accident **has happened** in front of the school. (Not: has been happened)

★ الفعل المتعدي هو الذى يأخذ مفعول أو أكثر ويمكن استخدامه فى المعلوم والمجهول :

- Mum **cooks** lunch. (معلوم)
- Lunch **is cooked** by mum. (مجهول)

1 Present Simple المضارع البسيط

Form	Active معلوم	Passive مجهول
Affirm. الإثبات	- I / You / We / They + inf. ... - He / She / It + (inf. + s / es / ies) ... - Sama studies English. - Rabbits eat carrots. - Ahmed supports me. يَدْعُمَنِي	Obj. + am / is / are + p.p... - English is studied (by Sama). - Carrots are eaten (by rabbits). - I am supported (by Ahmed).
Neg. النفي	- I / You / We / They + don't + inf. ... - He / She / It + doesn't + inf. ... - Sama doesn't study English. - Rabbits don't eat rocks. - Ahmed doesn't support me.	Obj. + am not / isn't / aren't + p.p. ... - English isn't studied (by Sama). - Rocks aren't eaten (by rabbits). - I am not supported (by Ahmed).

Yes/No Q. السؤال بـ (هل)	Do / Does + subj. + inf. ...? - Does Sama study English? - Do Rabbits eat carrots? - Does Ahmed support you?	Am / Is / Are + obj. + p.p. ...? - Is English studied (by Sama)? - Are carrots eaten (by rabbits)? - Are you supported (by Ahmed)?
'Wh' Q. السؤال المبتدأ باستفهام	Q.W. + أداة استفهام + do / does + subj. + inf. ...? - What does Sama study? - What do Rabbits eat? - Who supports you?	Q.W. + am / is / are + obj. + p.p. + ...? - What is studied by Sama? - What are carrots eaten by? - Who are you supported by?

Mini Test 1 Apply

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Most students at public schools.
a. teach b. teaches c. teaching d. are taught
- We most students at public schools.
a. teach b. teaches c. teaching d. have taught
- you with your school homework?
a. Do you help b. Does he help c. Are you helped d. Is he helped
- with your school homework?
a. Do you help b. Does he help c. Are you helped d. Is he helped
- Who ?
a. does the baby look after b. looks after the baby
c. is the baby looked after by d. b & c

2 Present continuous المضارع المستمر

Form	Active معلوم	Passive مجهول
Affirm إيجابيات	- Subj. + am / is / are + (inf.+ing) ... - I am watching TV. - They are planting trees. - Yara is visiting me.	Obj. + مفعول + am / is / are + being + p.p. ... - TV is being watched (by me). - Trees are being planted (by them). - I am being visited (by Yara).

Neg. النفى	- Subj. + am not / isn't / aren't + (inf.+ing) ... - I am not watching TV. - They aren't planting trees. - Yara isn't visiting me.	Obj. + am not / isn't / aren't + being + p.p. ... - TV isn't being watched (by me). - Trees aren't being planted (by them). - I am not being visited (by Yara).
Yes / No Q. السؤال بـ (هل)	Am / Is / Are + subj. + (inf.+ing) ...? - Are you watching TV? - Are they planting trees? - Is Yara visiting you?	Am / Is / Are + obj. + being + p.p. ...? - Is TV being watched (by you)? - Are trees being planted (by you)? - Are you being visited (by Yara)?
'Wh' Q. السؤال المبتدأ باستفهام	Q. W. + am / is / are + subj. + (inf.+ing) ...? - What are you doing? - What are they planting? - Who is visiting you?	Q. W. + am / is / are + obj. + being + p.p. ...? - What is being done (by you)? - What are being planted (by them)? - Who are you being visited by?

Mini Test 2 Apply

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- These birds right now.
a. are feeding b. are being fed c. feed d. are fed
- We these birds right now.
a. are feeding b. are being fed c. feed d. are fed
- how to make a cake?
a. You teach Sama b. You are teaching Sama
c. Are you teaching Sama d. Is Sama teach
- how to make a cake?
a. You teaching Sama b. You teaching Sama
c. Is Sama being teaching d. Is Sama being taught
- When ?
a. are you delivering the report b. you are delivering the report
c. is the report being delivering d. is the report delivering

3 Modals & Semi Modals الأفعال الناقصة وشبه الناقصة

can, could, shall, should, will, would, may, might, must	
Form	Active معلوم
Simple modals الأفعال الناقصة البسيطة	Subj. + M.V. + inf. ... - Karim will buy a tablet. - I won't study history. - Can Rody ride a bike? - Where should I park the car?
	Obj. + M.V. + be + p.p. ... - A tablet will be bought (by Karim). - History won't be studied (by me). - Can a bike be ridden (by Rody)? - Where should the car be parked (by me)?
Perfect modals الأفعال الناقصة التامة	Subj. + M.V. + have + p.p. ... - I will have finished the report. - She must have lost the keys. - Should I have cleaned the house? - What would you have done ?
	Obj. + M.V. + have + been + p.p. ... - The report will have been finished (by me). - The keys must have been lost . - Should the house have been cleaned (by me)? - What would have been done (by you)?

الأفعال شبه الناقصة (semi-modals) هي :

used to, ought to, have to, has to, had to, will have to, have got to, has got to, need to / needn't, dare (to), daren't.

- Rodayna **needs to** write some paragraphs. (معلوم)
- Some paragraphs **need to be written** (by Rodayna). (مجهول)
- I **have got to** fix this door. (معلوم)
- This door **has got to be fixed** (by me). (مجهول)

تعبيرات ناقصة أخرى (semi-modals) مثل :

be to, be able to, be allowed to, be about to, be bound to, be going to, be likely to, be obliged to, be supposed to.

- Tom **is about to** buy a mobile. (معلوم)
- A mobile **is about to be bought** (by Tom). (مجهول)
- She **is to** leave this bad job. (معلوم)
- This bad job **is to be left** (by her). (مجهول)

Mini Test 3

Apply

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Basant hard.
a. should be studied b. should study
c. should have been studied d. b& c
- The patient must again.
a. examine b. have examined c. be examined d. be examining
- The operation must at once.
a. be done b. do c. have done d. been done
- He might I haven't seen him after his quarrel شجار with the manager.
a. fire b. be firing c. have fired d. have been fired
- You needn't any medicine. You are all right.
a. to give b. be giving c. be given d. have given
- He is likely to for the job. He is the best applicant.
a. to choose b. be chosen c. be choosing d. to have chosen

4 الصيغة المصدرية في المبني للمجهول Passive infinitive

يمكن تحويل الأفعال التي يأتي بعدها (to + inf.) إلى المبني للمجهول باستخدام (to + be + p.p.) :

- to + inf. = to be + p.p.

- Rokaya wants Mr Ashraf **to explain** the lesson again. (معلوم)
- Rokaya wants the lesson **to be explained** again (by Mr Ashraf). (مجهول)
- I expect Omar **to tell** me the truth. (معلوم)
- I expect **to be told** the truth (by Omar). (مجهول)
- I'd like Nada **to wear** a long dress. (معلوم)
- I'd like a long dress **to be worn** (by Nada). (مجهول)

تتحول الأفعال التي يأتي بعدها (inf. + ing) إلى المبني للمجهول باستخدام (being + p.p.) :

- Lamia **doesn't like** mum **shouting** at her.
- Lamia **doesn't like** **being shouted** at (by mum).
- I **avoid meeting** evil people.
- I **avoid being met** (by evil people).

Mini Test 4

Apply

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- I'd like you this point for me.
a. to explain b. to be explained c. be explaining d. having explained
- I'd like this point for me.
a. to explain b. to be explained c. be explaining d. having explained
- I remember to Paris when I was ten.
a. to take b. taking c. having taken d. being taken
- I remember my father me to Paris when I was ten.
a. to take b. taking c. having taken d. being taken

5 Special Cases حالات خاصة

ⓐ لاحظ أن :

by + agent الفاعل

- The baby is fed by mum.

with + instrument الأداة أو الوسيلة

- The baby is fed with a little spoon.

ⓑ الفعل (have) لا يبنى للمجهول ويحول إلى ما يساويه في المعنى مثل :

Have = own, possess, suffer, eat, buy, spend, take.....

- We have lunch at three o'clock.
- Lunch is had at three o'clock. (X)
- Lunch is eaten at three o'clock. (✓)
- He has his summer holiday in Alex.
- His summer holiday is had in Alex. (X)
- His summer holiday is spent in Alex. (✓)

Ⓒ لاحظ أن الفعل المتعدي لمفعولين يُبنى للمجهول بطريقتين :

- He sends me emails. (معلوم)
- Emails are sent to me. (مجهول)
- I am sent emails (by him). (مجهول)

- وفي هذه الحالة يستخدم حرف الجر for مع أفعال معينة مثل :

buy / build / book / find / order / make / leave / save / get / keep / call / cut / fetch ...

- He buys his mother presents.

- Presents are bought for his mother (by him).

(معلوم)
(مجهول)

- كما يستخدم حرف الجر to مع أفعال معينة مثل :

give / bring / lend / offer / pass / read / sell / show / write / hand / owe / pay / tell ...

- He sells us fresh vegetables.

(معلوم)

- Fresh vegetables are sold to us (by him).

(مجهول)

Mini Test 5

Apply

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- He was hit on the head a stick.
a. from b. by c. with d. to
- This large villa by my uncle.
a. had b. is having c. is owned d. owned
- A single room has been booked me.
a. for b. to c. with d. from
- The ball was passed me by the play maker.
a. for b. to c. with d. from

Notes for advanced level

ملاحظات للمتفوقين

ⓐ لاحظ :

Adj. + that + جملة

= Adj. + Prep. + حرف جر + being + P.P.

- He is afraid that the dogs chase him. (معلوم)
- He is afraid of being chased by the dogs. (مجهول)

ⓑ لاحظ أفعال الإدراك التالية وطريقة بنائها للمجهول :

Subj. + see, watch, notice, hear, feel + obj. + inf. / (inf. + ing) (معلوم)

- I see him cross (crossing) the street every day.

Obj. + be + seen, watched, noticed, heard, felt + (to + inf.) / (inf. + ing) (مجهول)

- He is seen to cross (crossing) the street every day.

Ⓒ يمكن استخدام (get) بدلا من (be) مع بعض الأفعال مثل :

get arrested / get killed / get married / get divorced / get caught / تطلق عليه

- The police arrest criminals. (معلوم)
- Criminals are arrested by the police. (مجهول)
- = Criminals get arrested by the police. (مجهول)

المبالغة يتحول الفعل (let) للمجهول باستخدام (مصدر (be allowed to + inf. :
 - My father lets us go out at weekends. (معلوم)
 - We are allowed to go out at weekends. (مجهول)
 ... لكن إذا كان الفاعل هو نفسه المفعول بعد الفعل (let) نستخدم ضمير منعكس ثم (be + P.P.) :
 - He never lets others trick him. (معلوم)
 - He never lets himself be tricked (by others). (مجهول)

General Exercise On Language



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

I Getting Started

- Elderly people cruelly.
 a. should have treated b. should be treating
 c. shouldn't treat d. shouldn't be treated
- Doctors to do their best in case of emergency.
 a. are asking b. are asked c. have asked d. asked
- Generally speaking, I film reviews because I like to be open-minded when I go to the cinema.
 a. am not read b. don't read
 c. haven't read d. haven't been reading
- I think you your energy by sweeping up those leaves. Stop it!
 The wind will blow more down.
 a. wasted b. are being wasted
 c. are wasting d. were wasting
- In the future, every new book as an e-book.
 a. will publish b. was published
 c. will be published d. will have published
- We don't know when earthquakes happen. They predicted.
 a. were b. have been c. had been d. can't be
- Important laws by the Parliament lately.
 a. have been passed b. has been passed
 c. was passed d. are passed
- It that an accident took place on the Ring Road.
 a. reported b. reports
 c. had reported d. has been reported

- Since the bridge , it will help the traffic flow.
 a. completed b. is completing
 c. has been completed d. completes
- Many people vegetables in their gardens.
 a. growing b. are grown c. grow d. is grown
- In many countries, the wind to generate electricity.
 a. used b. use c. are used d. is used
- Fossil fuels from animals and plants that lived millions of years ago.
 a. come b. comes c. are coming d. were come
- The film only to the newcomers.
 a. shows b. is showing c. is shown d. shown
- In summer, more ice cream than in winter.
 a. is eaten b. is eating c. eat d. eats
- Much money every year on smoking.
 a. spends b. is spent c. spend d. are spent
- Fresh milk to homes every morning.
 a. is delivered b. is delivering c. deliver d. delivers
- These motorbikes in China. They are from the USA.
 a. don't make b. are made c. aren't made d. isn't made
- this building used any longer?
 a. Is b. Are c. Does d. Do
- A: How often the World Cup Finals held? B: Every four years.
 a. do b. are c. have d. has
- Cars from our street. The police arrested some thieves.
 a. often steal b. stole often
 c. were often stolen d. didn't often steal
- Our cat by my sister.
 a. usually is fed b. usually feeds
 c. is usually fed d. is usually feeding
- We that playing football now is a good idea.
 a. are not thinking b. aren't thought c. thinks d. don't think

II Special Cases

- He is said to five opponents last year.
 a. has beaten b. beating c. have beaten d. beats

24. Yehia Haqqi of as the father of the Egyptian modern short story and novel.
a. still is thinking b. still is thought
c. is still thought d. is still thinking
25. I don't like at.
a. people laughing b. having laughed
c. being laughed d. people laughed
26. Yesterday's accident is believed because of great speed.
a. to happen b. happened
c. to have happened d. happens
27. From the medical report, she to have suffered from amnesia.
a. believed b. is believed c. is believing d. believes
28. The play is suggested to because the leading actor is ill.
a. being cancelled b. cancel c. have cancelled d. be cancelled
29. Adham was angry because he to his friend's party.
a. didn't invite b. hasn't invited c. wasn't invited d. hadn't invited
30. The book well.
a. is to have revised b. is to be revised
c. is to revise d. is to be revising
31. She is really a good friend and she to send me a letter each month.
a. never failed b. never fails
c. is never failed d. had never failed
32. The lady of the murder is thought to be innocent.
a. suspects b. is suspected c. suspected d. was suspected
33. A: What are you doing now? B: I about a maths problem.
a. think b. am thinking c. am thought d. thinks
34. The Nubian Museum by most tourists.
a. is loving b. is being loved c. is loved d. loves
35. Insects, diseases or people usually trees, not old age.
a. has killed b. have been killed
c. kill d. are killed

36. Rodayna remembers to her friend's wedding party.
a. to be invited b. being invited c. inviting d. to invite
37. A transmitter was found in the bathroom.
a. hidden b. hiding c. hide d. hides

III Check your understanding

38. "Who looks after your garden?" Which choice gives the same meaning?
a. Who is looked after your garden?
b. Whom looks after your garden?
c. Who does your garden look after?
d. By whom is your garden looked after?
39. "I have a Toyota." This means
a. a Toyota is had by me. b. a Toyota is possessed by me.
c. a Toyota owns me. d. a & b
40. "I am always chosen to represent my school." This means
a. they always choose me to represent my school.
b. I am always choosing to represent my school.
c. I am always being chosen to represent my school.
d. My school is always chosen to represent me.
41. "Mai is helping me with the cooking." I mean to say that
a. I cook on my own.
b. I help Mai with the cooking.
c. I am being helped with the cooking by Mai.
d. I am helped with the cooking by Mai.
42. "Esraa will give me a hand with the housework." What does this mean?
a. I will be helped with the housework by Esraa.
b. Esraa will help me with the housework.
c. I will be given Esraa's hand.
d. a & b
43. "The police arrest terrorists." This means that
a. Terrorists were arrested by the police. b. Terrorists arrest by the police.
c. Terrorists get arrested by the police. d. b & c
44. "Never allow others to laugh at you." What does this mean?
a. Don't let others laugh at you at all. b. Don't let others laugh at you.
c. Never let yourself be laughed at. d. a, b & c

45. "I see this old man crossing the road every morning." This means

- a. I see this man by crossing the road.
- b. this man is seen crossing the road.
- c. this man sees me crossing the road.
- d. I cross the road every morning.

46. "I am worried that the manager will fire me." This means that

- a. I am worried about being fired by the manager.
- b. I am worried about firing the manager.
- c. I will be fired by the manager who is worried.
- d. a & b

47. "I expect that he will help me." What does this mean?

- a. He is expected to help me.
- b. I expect him to help me.
- c. I expect him to be helped by me.
- d. a & b

Advanced Exercise on Language

تنويه : التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- He never lets himself into such a trick.
a. fall b. falls c. be fallen d. to fall
- One should never allow oneself by their desires.
a. control b. to control c. be controlled d. to be controlled
- People are relieved whenever a criminal
a. has caught b. caught c. gets caught d. was being caught
- Whenever my son does something wrong, he become afraid
a. to punish b. to be punished c. of punishing d. of being punished
- The old man to cross the busy road.
a. has seen b. has been seen c. sees d. is being seen

No.	Answer & Explanation
1.	a. في المبنى للمعلوم، بعد الفعل (let) يأتي المفعول ثم (الفعل في المصدر) ولا يمكن استخدام (be fallen) لأن الفعل (fall) هنا فعل لازم لا يُبنى للمجهول.
2.	d. في المبنى للمجهول، بعد الفعل (allow) يأتي المفعول ثم (to + be + p.p.).
3.	c. السياق مبنى للمجهول، ولا يمكن استخدام (was being caught) لأن الحديث هنا عما هو معتاد وليس ما كان يحدث في وقت ما.
4.	d. في المبنى للمجهول، بعد حروف الجر نستخدم (being + p.p.)، وبعد الصفة (afraid) نستخدم حرف الجر (of).
5.	b. السياق مبنى للمجهول، ولا يمكن استخدام (is being seen) لأن الفعل (see) بمعنى (يرى) لا يستخدم في الأزمنة المستمرة.



Part I

Vocabulary & Definitions

• حفظ المفردات التالية جيدًا خاصة المفردات باللون الأحمر ومراجعتها مرة واحدة على الأقل كل شهر

تنويه

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

appropriate (adj)	ملائم	management(n)	إدارة
appropriately(adv)	بشكل ملائم	motivate(d) (v)	يُحفِّز - يُشجِّع
award(ed) (v/n)	يمنح - منحة	multinational(adj)	متعدد الجنسيات
basic (adj)	أساسي	national(adj)	قومي / وطني
career(n)	مهنة - الحياة العملية	organisational(adj)	تنظيمي - مؤسسي
charity(n)	جمعية خيرية	overlook(ed) (v)	تُطل علي - يتفاضى عن
cover(ed) (v)	يُغطي	pandemic(n)	جائحة
currently(adv)	حاليا	permanent(adj)	دائم
dress(ed) (v/n)	يرتدي - فستان	persuade(d) (v)	يُقنع
editorial(n)	افتتاحية	profile(n)	ملف التعريف / الملف الشخصي
excellence(n)	التَمَيُّز	protective (adj)	واقائي - وقائي
expense(n)	تكلفة	residential(adj)	سكني
experience(n)	خبرة	reward(ed) (n/v)	مكافأة - يكافئ
follow-up(n)	متابعة - تكميل	role-play(ed) (v)	يمثل أدوار
foreign(adj)	أجنبي	seatbelt(n)	حزام الأمان
graduate(d) (v/n)	يتخرج - خريج	several(adj)	عديد / كثير
impress(ed) (v)	يُبهِّر	smartly(adv)	بأناقة - بذكاء
impressed(adj)	مُبهِّر	sort(n)	نوع
impression(n)	انطباع	start-up(adj/n)	مبدئي - انطلاقة / بداية
international(adj)	دولي	team player(n)	شخص يجيد العمل في فريق
interviewer(n)	مُحاوِر / مدير الحوار	topic(n)	موضوع
journalism(n)	الصحافة	volunteer(ed) (v)	يتطوع
landing(n)	الهبوط	youth(n)	شباب
long-term (adj)	بعيد المدى		
manage(d) (v)	يدير - يتحكم		

2 Definitions تعريفات

appropriate (adj) ملائم	to be correct or suitable for a particular time, situation, or purpose
editorial (n) افتتاحية	a piece of writing in a newspaper that gives the editor's opinion about something, rather than reporting facts
follow-up (n) متابعة - تكميل	something that is done to make sure that earlier actions have been successful or effective
impression (n) انطباع	the opinion or feeling you have about someone or something because of the way they seem
long-term (adj) بعيد المدى	continuing for a long period of time, or relating to what will happen in the distant future
organisational (adj) تنظيمي - مؤسسي	relating to the way an organization and its activities are planned and arranged
pandemic (n) جائحة	a disease that affects people over a very large area or the whole world
permanent (adj) دائم	continuing to exist for a long time or for all the time in the future
residential (adj) سكني	a residential part of a town consists of private houses, with no offices or factories
start-up (adj/n) مبدئي - انطلاقة/بداية	connected with starting a new business
team player (n) شخص يجيد العمل في فريق	someone who works well as a member of a team, especially in business

Exercises On Vocabulary

• Understand

- ★ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

- At weekends, I at a charity that help old people.
a. impress b. volunteer c. persuade d. graduate
- My audience all looked by the presentation I was giving.
a. permanent b. long-term c. impressed d. appropriate

- It is necessary to be dressed for a job interview.
a. appropriately b. nationally c. smartly d. a & c
- People earn money to pay for their living
a. editorials b. expenses c. excellences d. impressions
- It is the duty of us all to those who help the community
a. award b. cover c. overlook d. reward
- I was my secondary school certificate in 1994.
a. awarded b. covered c. motivated d. rewarded
- It was lack of which made it difficult for me to get the job.
a. profile b. pandemic c. experience d. follow-up
- A/An organisation or company belongs to several countries.
a. multinational b. organisational c. residential d. basic
- Your fluency will the interviewer, I am sure.
a. impress b. volunteer c. follow-up d. graduate
- Try to use words when you complain. Be polite even when you are angry.
a. permanent b. long-term c. impressed d. appropriate
- I never forget to have a look at the of the newspaper.
a. editorial b. expense c. excellence d. impression
- If you students, that makes them willing to do better.
a. award b. cover c. motivate d. overlook
- Coronavirus has made a lot of difference in most fields.
a. profile b. pandemic c. experiences d. follow-up
- A beginner starts by learning the skills of the career.
a. multinational b. organisational c. residential d. basic
- To be a good member of a work group, you need to be a good
a. team player b. interviewer c. career d. journalism
- I don't have much experience as I have only this year.
a. impressed b. volunteered c. persuaded d. graduated
- The accident has left a/an effect on him. He can't walk without a stick in his hand.
a. permanent b. protective c. impressed d. appropriate
- Your target should be at your career.
a. editorial b. expense c. excellence d. impression

19. When I was a beginner as a journalist, I used to local news stories.
a. award b. cover c. motivate d. reward
20. I am looking forward to a good in my new job.
a. file b. pandemic c. start-up d. follow-up
21. Factories must not be built near areas. People living there will be badly affected.
a. multinational b. organisational c. residential d. basic
22. I did very well while answering the 's questions.
a. team player b. interviewer c. career d. journalism
23. His good presentation of his points everybody with his opinions.
a. rewarded b. volunteered c. persuaded d. graduated
24. As a student, I have a/an goal. I want to take medicine as a profession.
a. appropriate b. long-term c. impressed d. organisational
25. I think I have given a good at the job interview.
a. editorial b. expense c. excellence d. impression
26. The successful advertisement raised the company's
a. profile b. pandemic c. experience d. follow-up
27. There is going to be a/an change with the coming of the new management.
a. multinational b. organisational c. residential d. based
28. News requires being quite nosy.
a. team player b. interviewer c. journalist d. journalism
29. This type of sunscreen provides a/an layer طبقة that protects your skin from harmful rays.
a. permanent b. protective c. impressed d. organisational
30. You need some treatment after you leave hospital.
a. profile b. pandemic c. experience d. follow-up
- 2 Definitions**
31. means correct or suitable for a particular time, situation, or purpose.
a. Organisational b. Permanent c. Residential d. Appropriate

32. A/An is something that is done to make sure that earlier actions have been successful or effective.
a. follow-up b. start-up c. impression d. editorial
33. A/An is connected with beginning a new business.
a. follow-up b. start-up c. impression d. editorial
34. A is someone who works well as a member of a work group, especially in business.
a. journalist b. journalism c. player d. team player
35. describes a part of a town consists of private houses, with no offices or factories.
a. Organisational b. Permanent c. Residential d. Appropriate
36. The adjective means continuing to exist for a long time or for all the time in the future.
a. organisational b. permanent c. residential d. appropriate
37. A/An is a disease that affects people over a very large area or the whole world.
a. editorial b. start-up c. impression d. pandemic
38. The adjective means relating to the way an organization and its activities are planned and arranged.
a. organisational b. permanent c. residential d. appropriate
39. means continuing for a long period of time, or relating to what will happen in the distant future.
a. Organisational b. Long-term c. Residential d. Appropriate
40. A/An is the opinion or feeling you have about someone or something because of the way they seem.
a. follow-up b. start-up c. impression d. editorial

Part II Vocabulary Study

تتوييه ساعد فعلكم على الارتقاء بمستواكم عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مسبقاً بشكل جيد.

1 Verbal Collocations متلذزمات لفظية

achieve	career goals	يحقق أهداف مهنية	give	an answer to	يجيب على
award	a prize	يمنح ... جائزة	give	feedback	يقدم ملاحظات
be	a team player	يجيد العمل ضمن فريق		training	يدرّب

cover	news stories	يقوم بتغطية الأخبار	give	work	يوظف
develop	a start-up idea	يطور فكرة مبدئية	make	a list	يكتب قائمة
dress	smartly	يرتدى الملابس بطريقة أنيقة	offer	a permanent job	يبرّض وظيفة بدوام كامل
have	a successful career	تكون لديه حياة مهنية ناجحة	role-play	a job interview	يمثل أدوار مقابلة شخصية
keep	going	يستمر في التقدم			
move	abroad	يسافر للخارج			

Mini Test 1 Collocations

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- All companies now regular training to their employees.
a. keep b. do c. give d. make
- a team player is necessary for working in groups.
a. Awarding b. Achieving c. Role-playing d. Being
- I was interviewed by the journalist who the news stories in our area.
a. moves b. covers c. achieves d. develops
- going, Rokaya. You're doing a great job.
a. Keep b. Offer c. Give d. Make
- Two students a job interview. The student who played the applicant was great.
a. awarded b. achieved c. role-played d. rewarded
- As a team member, Ayman is good at start-up ideas.
a. role-playing b. covering c. moving d. developing
- The permanent job I've been is really a good chance.
a. kept b. offered c. done d. made
- Prizes are to those who make a difference.
a. awarded b. achieved c. role-played d. done
- Everyone hopes to their career goals.
a. give b. offer c. achieve d. make
- The good impression Leen has in the interview helped her get the job.
a. moved b. offered c. done d. made

2 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a long-term goal	هدف بعيد المدى	make/give a good impression on	يترك انطباعاً لدى
basic training	تدريب أساسي	organisational skills	مهارات تنظيمية
clearly communicated ideas	الأفكار التي يتم توصيلها بوضوح	professional profile	ملف التعريف المهني
coronavirus pandemic	جائحة كورونا	project management	إدارة المشروعات
impressed with	سعيد به	project manager	مدير مشروعات
look for an internship	يبحث عن فرصة تدريب مهني	protective boots	أحذية واقية
		travel expenses	تكاليف السفر
		work on websites	يعمل في المواقع الإلكترونية

3 Synonymous expressions تعبيرات مترادفة

help me to an international role	team player
= help me get an international role	= someone who does well at teamwork
يساعدني في الحصول على دور دولي	شخص يجيد العمل الجماعي
take part in = participate in	يشارك في

4 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

bring/take back	يعيد - يستعيد	reward ... by	يكافئ ... به
divide ... into	يقسم ... إلى	succeed in	ينجح في
graduate from	يتخرج من	take off	تقلع (الطائرة) - ينزع
impress ... with	يبهر ... به	work on	يعمل على
look for	يبحث عن		

Mini Test 2 Expressions, Prepositions & Idioms

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- The plane off at 5:35.
a. takes b. sits c. gives d. lands
- "I participate in all activities at school." We can replace the verb 'participate' with '.....'.
a. divide ... into b. work on c. take part d. take place
- Rodayna succeeded her set goal.
a. achieving b. to achieving c. to achieve d. in achieving

4. A job applicant has to prepare an impressive professional
 a. goal b. profile c. suit d. video
5. My language skills helped me a better position with a higher salary.
 a. to get b. get c. a & b d. getting
6. He made a good impression the interview.
 a. on b. in c. of d. out
7. He made a good impression the interviewer.
 a. on b. in c. of d. out
8. I want you to the book back to the library.
 a. take b. bring c. go d. a & b

5 Clear the Confusion لاحظ الفرق

reward - award - a ward

- reward (n/v) مكافأة - يكافئ شخص
 - I got a reward for coming first.
 = I was rewarded for coming first.
- award (n/v) بركة - يمنح (جائزة أو شهادة)
 - Dr Zewail got an award for his great discovery.
 = Dr Zewail was awarded a prize for his great discovery.
- a ward منبر (حجرة كبيرة)
 - There is a ward on the first floor for patients with heart problems.

experience - experienced - expert

- experience (n) الخبرة (اسم لا يُعد)
 - I gained a lot of experience from my work abroad.
- experience / experiences (n) تجربة أو مواقف حياتية (اسم يُعد)
 - Difficult situations are experiences that are very helpful.
- experienced (adj) ذو خبرة - مُحَنَّك (صفة)
 - Taha Hussein was an experienced writer.
- expert (adj) (n) خبير (صفة / اسم)
 - Mr Ashraf is an expert writer.
 - Moustafa is an expert in the field of press. الصحافة

graduate + (of / from - in - as)

- a graduate / graduates (n) + of + مدرسة / كلية / اسم جامعة خريج من
 - I am a graduate of Minia University.
- Mr Ashraf and his wife are graduates of Ain Shams University.
- graduate (v) + from + مدرسة / كلية / اسم جامعة يتخرج من
 - I graduated from Minia University.
- graduate (v) + in + التخصص يتخرج بشهادة في
 - My wife graduated in engineering in 2005.
- graduate (v) + as + مهنة يتخرج كـ
 - My wife graduated as an engineer in 2005.

Mini Test 3 Clear the Confusion

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- He graduated a teacher from Assuit University.
 a. from b. of c. in d. as
- Esraa and her husband are graduates Cairo University.
 a. from b. of c. in d. as
- I expected Ali to get for his great achievement.
 a. a reward b. an award c. a ward d. a & b
- Mahfouz was the Nobel Prize.
 a. rewarded b. awarded c. warded d. a & b
- The team members were after winning the league.
 a. rewarded b. awarded c. warded d. a & b
- is the knowledge or skill that you gain from doing a job or activity.
 a. Experience b. Experiences c. An experience d. Experienced
- Twenty five years of work in the field has made him really
 a. experience b. experiences c. an experience d. experienced
- Visiting Paris is I will never forget.
 a. experience b. experiences c. an experience d. experienced
- Visiting Paris is one of the I will never forget.
 a. experience b. experiences c. an experience d. experienced

1 Reading Texts

Youssef El Badawey

I've recently graduated⁽¹⁾ from secondary school and I'm currently⁽²⁾ looking for an internship at a multinational⁽³⁾ company where I can learn more about international project management⁽⁴⁾.

My long-term⁽⁵⁾ goal is to have a successful career⁽⁶⁾ as a project manager where I work on⁽⁷⁾ projects with teams from many different countries. I've had some experience⁽⁸⁾ of working on and managing⁽⁹⁾ projects at school and I enjoyed the experience so much that I decided that this was the only career for me.

While I was at school, I was awarded⁽¹⁰⁾ a prize for excellence⁽¹¹⁾ in foreign⁽¹²⁾ languages. The fact that I'm able to speak several⁽¹³⁾ different languages will help me to succeed in an international role⁽¹⁴⁾. I also have very good organisational⁽¹⁵⁾ skills and I'm a great team player⁽¹⁶⁾, after spending seven years playing volleyball at school and playing for my school for five of those years.

420 connections



(SB page 2)

Check Vocabulary

- (1) يتخرج
- (2) حاليًا
- (3) متعددة الجنسيات
- (4) إدارة
- (5) بعيد المدى
- (6) مهنة
- (7) يعمل على
- (8) خبرة
- (9) يدير
- (10) يمنح
- (11) التميز
- (12) أجنبي
- (13) عديد / كثير
- (14) دور
- (15) تنظيمي
- (16) تلصص بجيد العمل في فريق

Azza Nakhla

07159125147

azzanakhla.day@gmail.com

I've recently finished secondary school. I'm currently looking for an internship at a website where I can learn more about writing online news stories.

My long-term goal is to have a successful career as a journalist where I can work on websites covering⁽¹⁾ national⁽²⁾ and international⁽³⁾ news. The fact that I'm able to write well will help me to succeed in journalism⁽⁴⁾. I enjoyed the experience so much that I decided that this was the best career for me.



(WB page 1)

Check Vocabulary

- (1) يغطي
- (2) لوطني / وطني
- (3) دولي
- (4) الصحافة

While I was at school, I was awarded a prize for a writing project. I have some experience of journalism after working on the school's online magazine. I also have very good communication skills and I'm a great team player, after spending five years as captain of the school basketball team. Finally, I also volunteer⁽⁵⁾ at a local charity⁽⁶⁾ which helps poor families in the area.

(5) يتطوع

(6) جمعية خيرية

Part IV

Language

Past passive and present perfect passive forms
صيغة المبتدأ للمجهول في الأزمنة الماضي وفي زمن المضارع التام

1 Past Simple الماضي البسيط

Form	Active معلوم	Passive مجهول
Affirm. الإثبات	Subj. + فعل + S.C. التصريف الثاني ... - Ali bought a tablet. - I ironed my shirts.	Obj. + مفعول + was / were + p.p. . - A tablet was bought (by Ali). - My shirts were ironed (by me).
Neg. النفي	Subj. + didn't + inf. المصدر ... - Ali didn't buy a tablet. - I didn't iron my shirts.	Obj. + wasn't / weren't + p.p. . - A tablet wasn't bought (by Ali). - My shirts weren't ironed (by me).
Yes / No Q. السؤال بـ (هل)	Did + subj. + inf. ...? - Did Ali buy a tablet? - Did you iron my shirts?	Was / Were + obj. + p.p. ... ? - Was a tablet bought (by Ali) ? - Were your shirts ironed (by you) ?
'Wh' Q. السؤال بأداة استفهام	Q.W. + did + subj. + inf. ...? - What did Ali buy ? - Who ironed your shirts ?	Q.W. + was / were + obj. + P.P. + ...? - What was bought (by Ali) ? - Who were your shirts ironed by ?

Mini Test 1



★ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The housework yesterday morning.
a. does b. is done c. did d. was done
2. Mum the housework yesterday.
a. does b. is done c. did d. was done

3. Esraa, ?
a. did the cooking do
c. was the cooking done
4. A: Where for holiday? B: To the countryside.
a. did you take b. you took c. were you taken d. a & c

2 Past continuous الماضي المستمر

Form	Active معلوم	Passive مجهول
Affirmative الإثبات	Subj. + was / were + (inf.+ing) ... - He was reading a story. - We were watering the plants.	Obj. + was / were + being + p.p. ... - A story was being read (by him). - The plants were being watered (by us).
Negative النفي	Subj. + wasn't / weren't + (inf. + ing) ... - He wasn't reading a story. - We weren't watering the plants.	Obj. + wasn't / weren't + being + p.p. ... - A story wasn't being read (by him). - The plants weren't being watered (by us).
Yes / No questions السؤال ب (هل)	Was / Were + subj. + (inf. + ing) ... ? - Was he reading a story ? - Were you watering the plants ?	Was / Were + obj. + being + p.p. ... ? - Was a story being read (by him) ? - Were the plants being watered (by you) ?
'Wh' questions السؤال بأداة استفهام	Q. W.+ was / were + subj. + (inf.+ing) ... ? - What was he reading ? - Who were watering the plants ?	Q. W.+ was / were + obj. + being + p.p. ... ? - What was being read (by him) ? - Who were the plants being watered by ?

Mini Test 2 Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Mr Omar in a medical centre at five yesterday.
a. is examining
c. was examining
b. is being examined
d. was being examined

2. A famous doctor Mr Omar in a medical centre at five yesterday.
a. is examining
c. was examining
b. is being examined
d. was being examined
3. for you when your plane landed?
a. Was anyone waiting
c. Were you waiting
b. Were you being waited
d. Did you wait
4. for when your plane landed?
a. Was anyone waiting
c. Were you waiting
b. Were you being waited
d. Did you wait
5. What in the office when I called? There was too much noise.
a. were you doing
c. was being done
b. were you done
d. a & c

3 Present perfect المضارع التام

Form	Active معلوم	Passive مجهول
Affirmative الإثبات	Subj. + have / has + p.p. ... - Leen has watered the flowers. - I have invited Omar.	Obj. + have / has + been + p.p. ... - The flowers have been watered (by Leen). - Omar has been invited (by me).
Negative النفي	Subj. + haven't / hasn't + p.p. ... - Leen hasn't watered the flowers. - I haven't invited Omar.	Obj. + haven't / hasn't + been + p.p. ... - The flowers haven't been watered (by Leen). - Omar hasn't been invited (by me).
Yes / No questions السؤال ب (هل)	Have / Has + subj. + p.p. ? - Has Leen watered the flowers ? - Have you invited Omar ?	Have / Has + obj. + been + p.p. ... ? - Have the flowers been watered (by Leen) ? - Has Omar been invited (by you) ?
'Wh' questions السؤال بأداة استفهام	Q. W.+ have / has + subj. + p.p. ? - What has Leen watered ? - Who have you invited ?	Q. W.+ have / has + obj. + been + p.p. ... ? - What has been watered (by Leen) ? - Who has been invited (by you) ?

Mini Test 3

Apply

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- When the last patient, we are going to take him home.
a. examine b. is examining
c. has examined d. has been examined
- When the doctor..... the last patient, we are going to take him home.
a. examine b. is examining
c. has examined d. has been examined
- collected yet?
a. Has he been b. Has he
c. Have the apples been d. a & c
- What happened at home since I left this morning?
a. have you b. has c. has been d. did you

4 Past perfect الماضي التام

Form	Active معلوم	Passive مجهول
Affirm. الإثبات	Subj. + had + p.p. ... - He had checked his email before turning off the computer.	Obj. + had + been+ p.p. ... - His email had been checked before turning off the computer.
Neg. النفي	Subj. + hadn't + p.p. ... - He hadn't checked his email before turning off the computer.	Obj. + hadn't + been+ p.p. ... - His email hadn't been checked before turning off the computer.
Yes / No Q. السؤال بـ (هل)	Had + subj. + p.p. ? - Had he checked his email before turning off the computer ?	Had + obj. + been+ p.p. ? - Had his email been checked before turning off the computer ?
'Wh' Q. السؤال بأداة استفهام	Q. W. + had + subj. + p.p. ? - What had he checked before turning off the computer ?	Q. W. + had + obj. + been + p.p. ? - What had been checked before turning off the computer ?

Work experience

Mini Test 4

Apply

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- When Ahmed asked to do the shopping, he reluctantly agreed.
a. had b. has c. had been d. has been
- When mum asked Ahmed to do the shopping, he reluctantly agreed.
a. had b. has c. had been d. has been
- to the secretary before she left?
a. Had the instructions reported
b. Had you reported the instructions
c. Had the instructions been reported
d. b & c
- How to school before your father bought your private car?
a. did you take b. had you been taken
c. had you taken d. were you taking

Important Notes

ملاحظات هامة

١ يتحول ضمير المفعول إلي ضمير فاعل عندما يوضع في بداية جملة المبني للمجهول :

Obj. pron. ضمائر الفاعل	I - we - you - he - she - it - they
Obj. pron. ضمائر المفعول	me - us - you - him - her - it - them

- Omar helped **me**. (معلوم) - **I** was helped by Omar. (مجهول)

٢ يتحول ضمير الفاعل إلي ضمير مفعول بعد (by) في جملة المبني للمجهول :

- **She** was preparing the family lunch. (معلوم)
- The family lunch was being prepared by **her**. (مجهول)

Notes for advanced level

ملاحظات للمتفوقين

١ لاحظ ما يلي :

- ... فعل مبني للمجهول في زمن بسيط أو تام + who / which / that + مفعول = Obj. + p.p.
- The scientist **who was awarded** the Noble Prize had made great discoveries.
 - = The scientist **awarded** the Noble Prize had made great discoveries.
 - The tower **which was built** at the corner cost millions of dollars.
 - The tower **built** at the corner cost millions of dollars.

- ... فعل مبني للمجهول في زمن مستمر + that / which / who + مفعول
 = Obj. مفعول + being + p.p.
 - The patient **who is being examined** right now is 102 years old.
 = The patient **being examined** right now is 102 years old.

- جملة رئيسية تبدأ بمفعول الجملة الثانوية + جملة ثانوية + After
 = Having been + p.p.
 = P.P. +

- After it had been serviced at the garage, my car worked very well.
 = **Having been serviced** at the garage, my car worked well.
 = **Serviced** at the garage, my car worked well.

لاحظ ما يلي :

Subj. + \rightarrow say / believe / think
 / expect / hope /
 complain / claim \rightarrow جملة رئيسية + (that)

- People **say** that Nada earns a lot of money.
 - We **have expected** that Tarik will buy a villa.
 - They **believed** that I had broken the window.

بنم بناء الصيغة السابقة للمجهول بثلاث طرق هي :

1. It + be \rightarrow said / believed /
 thought / expect /
 hoped / complained
 / claimed \rightarrow جملة رئيسية + (that)

- It **is said** that Nada earns a lot of money.
 - It **has been expected** that Tarik will buy a villa.
 - It **was believed** that I had broken the window.

2. فاعل الجملة
 الرئيسية + be \rightarrow said / believed /
 thought / expected /
 hoped / complained
 / claimed \rightarrow + to + inf. (مضارع / مستقبل)
 + to have + p.p. (ماضي)

- Nada **is said** to earn a lot of money.
 - Tarik **has been expected** to buy a villa.
 - I **was believed** to have broken the window.

3. مفعول الجملة
 الرئيسية + be \rightarrow said / believed
 / thought /
 expected / hoped
 / complained /
 claimed \rightarrow + to be + p.p. (مضارع / مستقبل)
 + to have been + p.p. (ماضي)

- A lot of money **is said to be earned** by Nada.
 - A villa **has been expected to be bought** by Tarik.
 - The window **was believed to have been broken** by me.

Mini Test 5

Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- was awarded a prize.
 a. I b. me c. my d. mine
- They awarded a prize.
 a. I b. me c. my d. mine
- The brave man was believed
 a. to honour b. to have honoured
 c. to be honouring d. to have been honoured
- It..... that Sama will come first.
 a. believes b. has believed c. is believed d. is believing
- Sama is believed come first.
 a. to b. to be c. to have d. a & c

General Exercise On Language

Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

I Getting Started

- This nice story..... by Taha Hussein.
 a. has written b. writes c. wrote d. was written
 (السودان ٢٠١١)
- Noha phoned me while the dinner
 a. was cooking b. cooked c. cooks d. was being cooked
 (دور أول قديم ٢٠١٥)
- After the house painted, we furnished it.
 a. had b. had been c. has been d. is
 (السودان ٢٠١٥)
- I don't know who the problem by.
 a. was solved b. solve c. solves d. was solving
 (دور ثان حديث ٢٠١٥)

5. The first heart transplant operation in Britain 20 years ago.
 a. was done b. was doing c. had been done d. had been doing (٢٠١٠ م. أولي حديث)
6. It that an accident took place on the Ring Road.
 a. reported b. reports c. had reported d. has been doing (٢٠١٦ م. أولي حديث)
7. The former newspaper boy to a new neighbourhood.
 a. had sent b. was sending c. was sent d. has sent (٢٠١٠ م. أولي حديث)
8. They report that two people in the explosion.
 a. were killed b. killed c. have killed d. are to kill (٢٠١٦ م. أولي حديث)
9. It that people have lived here for centuries.
 a. know b. known c. is known d. had known (٢٠١١ م. أولي حديث)
10. Before the rabbit, it had eaten half the carrots in the garden.
 a. was caught b. had caught c. was being caught d. caught (٢٠١٦ م. أولي حديث)
11. The Postman, by Yehia Haqqi, first prize in 1968.
 a. awarded b. was awarded c. was awarding d. is being awarded (٢٠١٦ م. أولي حديث)
12. The ring while she was washing the dishes.
 a. was lost b. lost c. is lost d. was losing (٢٠١٦ م. أولي حديث)
13. He as parliament member.
 a. elected b. was elected c. was being electing d. has elected (٢٠١٦ م. أولي حديث)
14. The old wallpaper off the wall when we arrived.
 a. will be tearing b. has tearing c. has torn d. was being torn (٢٠١٦ م. أولي حديث)
15. The article out loud to the class.
 a. has been read b. has read c. have read d. read (٢٠١٦ م. أولي حديث)
16. A plan to stop building on farmland up by last October.
 a. draws b. has drawn c. was drawing d. had been drawn (٢٠١٦ م. أولي حديث)
17. Salah in the match against Real Madrid.
 a. was hurt b. is being hurt c. hurt d. was being hurt (٢٠١٦ م. أولي حديث)
18. Because of health problems, red meat out from my diet.
 a. had cut b. cut c. has been cut d. have been cut (٢٠١٦ م. أولي حديث)
19. After the engine of my old car, I decided to sell it.
 a. repaired b. has been repaired c. was being repaired d. had been repaired (٢٠١٦ م. أولي حديث)

20. Our broken chairs to the workshop.
 a. took b. were taken c. were taking d. had taken (٢٠١٦ م. أولي حديث)

II Special Cases

21. Where taken to? To prison.
 a. the thieves were b. were the thieves c. the thieves have been d. have the thieves (٢٠٢٠ م. أولي حديث)
22. My brother doesn't let himself easily by his classmates.
 a. tease b. to be teased c. being teased d. be teased (٢٠٢٠ م. أولي حديث)
23. Having coldly, he got upset.
 a. to being met b. being met c. met d. been met (٢٠١٩ م. أولي حديث)
24. When we were young, every day Sally by mother to serve the tea.
 a. is chosen b. was chosen c. chose d. choose (٢٠١٧ م. أولي حديث)
25. Since the bridge, it will help the traffic flow.
 a. completed b. is completing c. has been completed d. completes (٢٠١٦ م. أولي حديث)
26. After the death of her husband, the poor woman was thought from amnesia.
 a. is suffered b. to have suffered c. suffer d. to be suffered (٢٠١٥ م. أولي حديث)
27. I about the accident before you mentioned it.
 a. did not tell b. is not telling c. have not told d. had not been told (٢٠١٥ م. أولي حديث)
28. Our cat over by a fast car.
 a. ran b. runs c. was run d. was running (٢٠١٥ م. أولي حديث)
29. I didn't know what on in the second room.
 a. was being gone b. was going c. had been gone d. has been gone (٢٠١٥ م. أولي حديث)
30. While, the interviewer asked me more than 50 questions.
 a. was interviewing b. interviewing me c. being interviewed d. I was interviewing (٢٠١٥ م. أولي حديث)
31. I waited impatiently as the road
 a. was being reopened b. was reopening c. had been reopened d. had reopened (٢٠١٥ م. أولي حديث)

32. before you were accepted for the job?
 a. Had you interviewed b. Had you been interviewed
 c. Were you interviewing d. Did you interview
33. Not all side effects of.
 a. were thinking b. be thought c. was thought d. were thought
34. I didn't know that you home?
 a. have arrived b. have been arrived
 c. had been arrived d. had arrived
35. they will arrive in time for dinner.
 a. They are expected b. It is expected that
 c. They can't be expected d. It is expecting
36. He to make a lot of money.
 a. has known b. is known c. knows d. is knowing
37. to have financial problems.
 a. It is reporting b. It reported c. They are reported d. It is reports
38. It that air travel will become more popular in the future.
 a. is thought b. was thought c. thought d. thinks
39. This film for more than thirty years.
 a. has known b. knew
 c. has been knowing d. has been known

III Check your understanding

40. "I had fish for lunch yesterday." What does this mean?
 a. Fish was had by me yesterday. b. Fish was eaten by me yesterday.
 c. Fish ate me yesterday. d. Fish had me yesterday.
41. "Who welcomed you at the airport?" What does this mean?
 a. Who you welcomed at the airport?
 b. Who did you welcome at the airport?
 c. Whom did you welcome at the airport?
 d. By whom were you welcomed at the airport?
42. "Menna was visiting Esraa at nine." This means
 a. Esraa was being visited by Menna at nine.
 b. Esraa was visiting Menna at nine.
 c. Esraa had been visited by Menna at nine.
 d. Esraa has been visited by Menna at nine.

43. "I haven't been told my exam results yet." This means
 a. I haven't told my exam results yet.
 b. I have never told my exam results yet.
 c. my exam results haven't been told to me yet.
 d. my exam results have been told to me yet.
44. "He called me after finishing the report." What does this mean?
 a. He had finished the report before he called me.
 b. The report had been finished before he called me.
 c. Having finished the report, he called me.
 d. a, b & c
45. "Rokaya has given me some popcorn." This means
 a. I was given some popcorn by Rokaya.
 b. I have been given some popcorn by Rokaya.
 c. Some popcorn has been given to me.
 d. b & c
46. "The car that the mechanic repaired was mine." What does this mean?
 a. The car repaired by the mechanic was mine.
 b. The car repairing by the mechanic was mine.
 c. The mechanic repaired the car was mine.
 d. The mechanic repairing the car was mine.
47. "I believed that Hasnaa ate too much." This means that
 a. it believed that Hasnaa ate too much.
 b. Hasnaa was believed to have eaten too much.
 c. Hasnaa believes that I ate too much.
 d. I was believed by Hasnaa to have eaten too much.

Advanced Exercise on Language

تنويه : التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The man right now has a severe headache.
 a. examines b. is examining
 c. being examined d. been examined
2. in the arm by a scorpion, I felt great pain.
 a. Stung b. Stinging c. Having stung d. Been stung
3. by most people, he was elected for a third time.
 a. Loved b. Being loved c. Loving d. a & b



Part I Key Vocabulary & Definitions

• هذا الجزء خاص بالمفردات والتعبيرات الرئيسية للقصة. لقراءة نص القصة المقررة وللمزيد من المفردات اللغوية والتدريبات نهاية الكتاب.

تنويه

1 Key Vocabulary, Idioms & Collocations

admirer(n)	مُعْجَب - مُعْزَم	extravagant(adj)	مُسْرِف / مُبْذِر - مُغَالِي
apart from	بِاسْتِثْنَاء	fortune(n)	حَظ - ثَرَوَة
arrogant(adj)	مَغْرُور - مَتَغَطِّس	gloomy(adj)	كُتِيب - مَتَشَائِم
astonished(adj)	مَذْهُول - شَدِيدِ الْإِنْدَهَاش	pay off(phr.v)	يَسِد (دِين)
benefactor(n)	فَاعِلُ خَيْر - صَاحِبُ إِحْسَان	rough(adj)	خَشِن / غَيْرُ مَصْقُول
dark(adj)	مُظْلِم - كُتِيب	sigh(ed) (v)	يَتَنَهَّد
debts(n)	دِيُون	uncertain(adj)	غَيْرُ مَتَأَكَّد - غَيْرُ مُؤَكَّد
elegant(adj)	أَنِيق - ذَكِي	unpleasant(adj)	غَيْرُ سَار - غَيْرُ وَدُود
except for	فِي مَا عِدا		

2 Definitions تعريفات

لابد من قراءة التعريفات التالية جيدًا، فهي موضع امتحان.

تنويه

admirer(n)	مُعْجَب - مُعْزَم	someone who likes a particular مُعَيَّن person
apart from	بِاسْتِثْنَاء	except for
arrogant(adj)	مَغْرُور - مَتَغَطِّس	describes someone who thinks they're better or more important than they really are
astonished(adj)	مَذْهُول - شَدِيدِ الْإِنْدَهَاش	extremely surprised
dark(adj)	مُظْلِم - كُتِيب	- if it is dark, there is little or no light - if you have dark feelings or thoughts, you are very sad or worried
elegant(adj)	ذَكِي	- pleasingly graceful and stylish in appearance or manner
extravagant(adj)	مُسْرِف / مُبْذِر - مُغَالِي	- it describes someone who spends too much money
funeral(n)	جَنَازَة	a religious ceremony مَراسِم for burying someone who has died

gloomy (adj)	كئيب - مشائم	sad because you think the situation will not improve
pay off (phr.v)	يسدّد (الدين)	to give someone the money you owe them
rough (adj)	خشن / غير مصقول	something that has an uneven surface, not smooth
sigh (ed) (v)	يتنهد	to breathe in and out making a loud sound
unpleasant (adj)	غير سار - غير ودي	- not pleasant or enjoyable - not kind or friendly

3 Verbal Collocations

become a member of a club	ينضم لنادي	offer someone a job
fall in love with	تُحِبُّ - يَحِبُّ	pay debts
make a fortune	يُكُون ثَرِيحاً	

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- He a fortune out of his successful businesses.
a. made b. did c. paid d. fell
- He reached a/an solution to the problem. That impressed us all.
a. arrogant b. extravagant c. elegant d. gloomy
- A generous volunteered to pay for the treatment of the poor old woman.
a. benefactor b. admirer c. funeral d. robber
- To is to breathe in and out making a loud sound.
a. make b. do c. pay off d. sigh
- Being makes him fall in debt.
a. arrogant b. extravagant c. elegant d. gloomy
- I am one of the of Salah as a footballer.
a. benefactors b. admirers c. funerals d. robbers
- To is to give someone the money you owe them.
a. make b. do c. pay off d. sigh
- people overestimate their abilities.
a. Arrogant b. Extravagant c. Elegant d. Gloomy

- Thousands of people attended the of the generous businessman.
a. benefactor b. admirer c. funeral d. robber
- Except your parents, no one likes to see you better than them.
a. by b. with c. on d. for

Part II

Skills

المهارات الخاصة بالوحدة تم شرحها متبوعة بالتدريبات في ملحق (Master your skills) كل وحدة علي حدة.

تنويه

Translation الترجمة

- ① Choose the best Arabic translation :

- All our dreams can come true one day if we have the courage to pursue them.

- يمكن أن تتحقق كل أحلامنا إذا كانت لدينا الشجاعة لمتابعها.
- يمكن أن تتحقق كل أحلامنا يوماً ما إذا كانت لدينا الشجاعة لمتابعها.
- يمكن أن تأتي كل أحلامنا حقاً يوماً ما إذا كانت لدينا الشجاعة لمتابعها.
- يمكن أن تتحقق كل أحلامنا في يوم واحد إذا كانت لدينا الشجاعة لمتابعها.

- Experience is not what happens to a man. It is what a man does with what happens to him.

- التجربة ليست ما يحدث للرجل، هذا ما يفعله الرجل مع ما يحدث له.
- التجربة ليست ما يحدث للإنسان، هذا ما يفعله الإنسان مع ما يحدث له.
- التجربة ليست ما يحدث للإنسان، بل هذا ما يفعله الإنسان مع ما يحدث له.
- التجربة ليست ما يحدث للإنسان، بل ما يفعله الإنسان تجاه ما يحدث له.

- Nothing in the world can take the place of persistence; nothing is more common than unsuccessful men with talent.

- لا شيء في العالم يمكن أن يحل محل المحافظة، لا شيء أكثر شيوعاً من الرجال الفاشلين ذوي الموهبة.
- لا شيء في العالم يمكن أن يحل محل المثابرة، فلا شيء أكثر شيوعاً من الرجال الفاشلين بلا الموهبة.
- لا شيء في العالم يمكن أن يحل محل المثابرة، فليس هناك أكثر من الأشخاص الفاشلين من ذوي الموهبة.
- لا شيء في العالم يمكن أن يحل محل المثابرة، فليس هناك أكثر من الأشخاص الفاشلين من غير ذوي الموهبة.

4. Our greatest weakness lies in giving up. The most certain way to succeed is always to try just one more time.

أكثر ضعفنا ينم في التخلي. الطريقة الأكثر تأكيداً للنجاح هي دائماً المحاولة مرة أخرى.
أكثر نقاط ضعفنا يكمن في العطاء، الطريقة الأكثر تأكيداً للنجاح هي دائماً المحاولة مرة أخرى.
أكثر نقاط ضعفنا يكمن في الاستسلام، فأكثر طريقة مؤكدة للنجاح هي دائماً المحاولة مرة أخرى.

② Choose the best English translation :

يتطلب سوق العمل في عصرنا هذا العديد من المهارات أهمها إتقان التعامل مع التكنولوجيا الحديثة وإتقان اللغات الأجنبية.

- The labour market in this time acquires many skills, the most important of which are proficiency in dealing with modern technology and proficiency in foreign languages.
- The labour market in our time requires many skills, the most important of that are proficiency in dealing with modern technology and proficiency in foreign languages.
- The labour market in our time requires many skills, the most important of which are deficiency in dealing with modern technology and proficiency in foreign languages.
- The labour market in our time requires a lot of skills, the most important of which are proficiency in dealing with modern technology and proficiency in foreign languages.

أعطى الملف الشخصي الخاص بك نبذة مختصرة عن أهم مؤهلاتك ومهاراتك وما يميزك عن الآخرين.

- Your profile gives a brave overview of your most important qualifications and skills and what sets you apart from others.
- Your profile gives a brief overview of your most important qualities and skills and what sets you apart from others.
- Your profile gives a brief overview of your most important qualifications, skills and what sets you apart from others.
- Your profile gives a brief overview of your most important qualifications, skills and what sits you a part from others.

٣. يجب أن تستعد جيداً للمقابلة الشخصية للحصول على وظيفة حتى تعطي أفضل انطباع ممكن مما يساعدك على الحصول على وظيفة.

- You should prepare well for the personal job interview in order to give the best possible impression, which will help you to get a job.
- You should prepare will for the personal job interview to give the best possible impression, which will help you getting a job.
- You should prepare well for the personal job interview in order to give the best impossible impression, which will help you to get a job.
- You should prepare well for the personal job interview in order to give the best possible printing, which will help you to get a job.

٤. من أهم المهارات التي يجب أن يتمتع بها المتقدم للوظيفة هي القدرة على التحدث أمام جمهور أو ما يُعرف بعمل العروض التقديمية.

- The most important skills that a job applicant must possess is the ability to speak in front of an audience, or what is known as making presentations.
- One of the most important skills that a job applicant must possess is the ability to speak in front of an audience, or what is known as making presentations.
- One of the most important skills that a job application must possess is the ability to speak in front of an audience or what is known as making presentations.
- One of the most important skills that a job applicant must possess is the ability to speak in front of an audience or what is known as doing presentations.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He has a/an job as a secretary. He goes to the office six days a week.
 a. full-time b. part-time c. achievable d. digital
2. It helps the presenter if he/she speaks
 a. throughout b. basically c. personally d. fluently
3. To means to make a formal request, usually written, for something such as a job, a place at a university, or permission to do something.
 a. be charged b. trace c. be in charge d. apply
4. It is necessary to links between cause and effect.
 a. work b. take c. make d. do
5. "Don't pay much attention to trifling details." The word 'trifling' here is a synonym of
 a. important b. valuable c. a & b d. valueless
6. It will be really if it does not rain this year too.
 a. calamity b. calamitous c. colossus d. colossal
7. I find teaching a worthwhile
 a. team player b. interviewer c. career d. journalism
8. A/An is a piece of writing in a newspaper that gives the editor's opinion about something, rather than reporting facts.
 a. follow-up b. start-up c. impression d. editorial
9. We exactly what to do in these situations.
 a. tell b. are going to tell c. are telling d. are told
10. Homework before you can watch TV.
 a. must be finish b. must be finished c. have to be finished d. have finished
11. The children to the park today.
 a. are taking b. have taken c. take d. are being taken
12. A lot of cars and buildings from our classroom window.
 a. can see b. can be seen c. are seeing d. are being seen
13. Could this maths problem?
 a. solve b. solving c. be solved d. have sold

14. Those toys in many shops near here.
 a. are sold b. sells c. will have sold d. is being sold
15. He where to park the car when he gets there.
 a. was told b. will tell c. will be told d. told
16. The quantity of energy from the sun on the time of day and the time of year.
 a. is depended b. depends c. is being depended d. needs to be depended

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

It's only thirty-six centimeters tall, but to fans throughout the world, it represents the highest achievement in football. Every four years, teams from all over the globe compete to take home the FIFA World Cup Trophy.

The original trophy was made by a French sculptor, Abel La Fleur, and was called the "Jules Rimet Cup," in honor of the founder of the World Cup tournament. After that, the name changed to the "World Cup." During World War II, the trophy was being kept hidden in a shoebox under the bed of Dr. Ottorino Barassi, the Italian vice-president of FIFA, to prevent it from falling into the hands of the Nazi army.

In 1966, the Cup was stolen during a public showing of the trophy prior to the World Cup tournament in England. Luckily, it was found a short time later. Four years later, Brazil earned permanent possession of the original trophy by winning its third World Cup title. Unfortunately, the trophy was stolen a second time in 1983 and was never recovered. The Brazilian Football Association had to have a duplicate trophy made.

After the first trophy became the possession of Brazil's football association, a new World Cup Trophy for FIFA was designed by an Italian artist, Silvio Gazzaniga, in 1974. This trophy cannot be won outright, but remains in the possession of FIFA. World Cup winners are awarded a replica of the trophy that is gold-plated, rather than solid gold like the real one which weighs almost five kilograms.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. Which of the following is the most suitable title for the passage?
 a. The World Cup Tournament b. The World Cup Trophy
 c. The World Cup Stars d. The World Cup Winners

18. It can be inferred from the passage that the World Cup winners have only a replica to
 a. honour them b. protect them
 c. protect the real one d. celebrate the real one
19. The World Cup was designed during its long history.
 a. once b. three times c. four times d. twice
20. Which of the following sentences summarizes the third paragraph?
 a. the cup was gold-plated b. the cup was designed
 c. the cup was made of gold d. the cup was stolen twice
21. was the founder of the World Cup tournament.
 a. Ottorino Barassi b. Jules Rimet c. Silvio Gazzaniga d. Abel La Fleur
22. By 2050, the trophy may be
 a. wooden b. digital c. golden d. silver
23. The gold-plated trophy is than the solid gold one.
 a. heavier b. lighter c. taller d. shorter
24. The writer thinks that the World Cup trophy is
 a. the interest of all people b. the product of football matches
 c. the public wish in sport d. the highest achievement in football

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Imagine swimming through refreshing ocean waves with a graceful prehistoric animal. Many people hope to do just this when they snorkel off the shores of the tropical islands where green sea turtles make their home.

The Hawaiian sea turtle is a symbol of peace and good luck to the Hawaiian people. Out of respect for this ancient creature, laws have been enacted to protect them. It is illegal to touch or harass **يزعج** them. Green sea turtles have smooth shells with shades of black, brown, gray, green, or yellow. The soft bottom shell is yellowish-white. So, why are they called green sea turtles? The largest of all hard-shelled sea turtles, green sea turtles feed exclusively on plants, such as seaweed and algae. Scientists believe their diet contributes to their green fat, for which they are named. They are the only herbivorous marine turtle.

Habitats of green sea turtles include nesting beaches, the open ocean, and coastal areas for feeding. Females return to the same beaches where they were born to lay their eggs. Hatchlings swim to offshore areas for feeding for several years. Once they reach a certain age, they return to coastal areas to live as adult sea turtles.

Green sea turtles are not overly fearful of people, although they can swim up to 35 miles per hour to escape perceived danger. They are endangered in many areas of the world due to the harvesting of eggs and adult turtles. Turtles also face the danger of becoming accidentally trapped in gillnets and other fishing gear. They are subject to a disease that causes tumors that interfere with the animals' swimming, vision, feeding, and ability to escape from predators. Ongoing research and legislation **تشريع** seek to ensure that green sea turtles will remain part of the tropical ecosystem for many years to come.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

25. What is the main idea of the second paragraph?
 a. Treat green sea turtles with respect
 b. Green sea turtles are endangered
 c. Details about the turtles' habitat
 d. The life cycle of a green sea turtle
26. Which of the following is **NOT** an example of a threat to green sea turtles?
 a. They can swim up to 35 miles per hour to escape perceived danger.
 b. People harvest turtle eggs and adult turtles in many areas.
 c. They can become trapped in gillnets and other fishing gear.
 d. They are subject to a disease that causes tumors.
27. The green turtles were given their name as
 a. their main food is plants seaweed and algae which contribute to their green fat.
 b. they live in plants as seaweed and algae.
 c. their leather's colour is green.
 d. they have green colour around their habitat.
28. The disease the green turtles suffer from causes
 a. gillnets b. rumors c. predators d. tumors
29. The last paragraph of the passage is
 a. an invitation for search to protect turtles
 b. an attack against the turtles protection
 c. an achievement for turtles protection
 d. an entertainment for turtles
30. Which pair of words from the text best describes the author's opinion of green sea turtles?
 a. tropical, endangered b. harass, escape
 c. fearful, prehistoric d. graceful, respected

31. The green sea turtles are
- smaller than all hard shelled sea creatures
 - the largest of all hard shelled sea creatures
 - less herbivorous than other marine turtles
 - as herbivorous as other marine turtles

32. How are green turtles protected?

- Laws have been made.
- Collecting them in special places.
- Stop people from snorkeling with them.
- Legislation isn't necessary.

A. Choose the best Arabic translation :

33. Foods that contain vitamins are often called protective foods because they protect us from many deadly diseases.

- الأطعمة التي تحتوى على فيتامينات غالباً ما تسمى أطعمة وقائية، لأنها تحمينا من كثير من الأمراض الفتالة.
- الأطعمة التي تتكون من فيتامينات عادةً ما تسمى أطعمة وقائية، لأنها تقينا من كثير من الأمراض المزمنة.
- الأطعمة التي قد تتضمن على فيتامينات أحياناً ما تسمى أطعمة وقائية، لأنها تقينا من كثير من الأمراض الفتالة.
- الأطعمة التي قد تحتوى على فيتامينات دائماً تسمى أطعمة وقائية، لأنها تحمينا من كثيراً من الأمراض المهلكة.

34. Choosing the right job is important for you because you need to enjoy your work and do it properly.

- إن اختيار الوظيفة الصحيحة مهم لك، لأنك قد تحتاج أن تستمتع بعملك وتؤديه بشكل مناسب.
- إن اختيار الوظيفة المناسبة مهم لك، لأنك تحتاج أن تستمتع بعملك وتؤديه بشكل مناسب.
- إن اختيار الوظيفة المتوفرة مهم لك، لأنك إنما تحتاج أن تستمتع بعملك وتؤديه بشكل واضح.
- إن اختيار الوظيفة الحقيقية مهم لك، لأنك تحتاج ألا تستمتع بعملك وتؤديه بشكل مناسب.

B. Choose the best English translation :

٣٤. قامت الحكومة فى الفترة الأخيرة ببناء العديد من المدن الجديدة كحل للكثير من المشكلات الاجتماعية.

- The government has built a lot of new cities recently as a solution to many social problems.
- The government was built a lot of new cities recently as a solution to many social problems.
- The government is building a lot of new cities recently as a solution to many social problems.
- The government was building a lot of new cities recently as a solution to many social problems.

٣٦. تعاني مجتمعاتنا من نقص وأحياناً غياب لبعض القيم والمبادئ، التى لطالما كانت موجودة فى تعاملاتنا وتربينا عليها.

- Our societies have suffered from the lack and sometimes the absence of some values and principles which have been used in our treatments and we were raised on them.
- Our societies suffer from the leak and sometimes the absence of some values and principles which have been used in our treatments and we were raised on them.
- Our societies suffer from the lack and sometimes the absence of some values and principles, which have been used in our treatments and we were raised on them.
- Our societies had suffered from the leak and sometimes the absence of some values and principles which have been used in our treatments and we were raised on them.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

37. Which paragraph is punctuated correctly?

- When you cut your skin, you bleed. Everyone knows that. If a person loses a great deal of blood, he will become ill and may die.
- When you cut your skin, you bleed. Everyone knows that. If a person loses a great deal of blood, He will become ill and may die.
- When you cut your skin you bleed. Everyone knows that. if a person loses a great deal of blood, he will become ill and may die.
- When you cut your skin, you bleed. Everyone knows that; If a person loses a great deal of blood, he will become ill and may die.

38. The introduction of an essay

- includes last minute ideas and thoughts relating to the previously discussed ideas.
- has a restatement of the thesis and thoughts for the future.
- is a recap of the whole essay.
- has the hook and the thesis.

39. Everybody at the school, including the teachers and is happy when summer holiday starts.

- students
- students;
- students,
- students:

40. What goes into the "From" field in an email ?

- your name
- your email address
- the name of the person that you are sending the email to
- the email address of the person that you are writing to

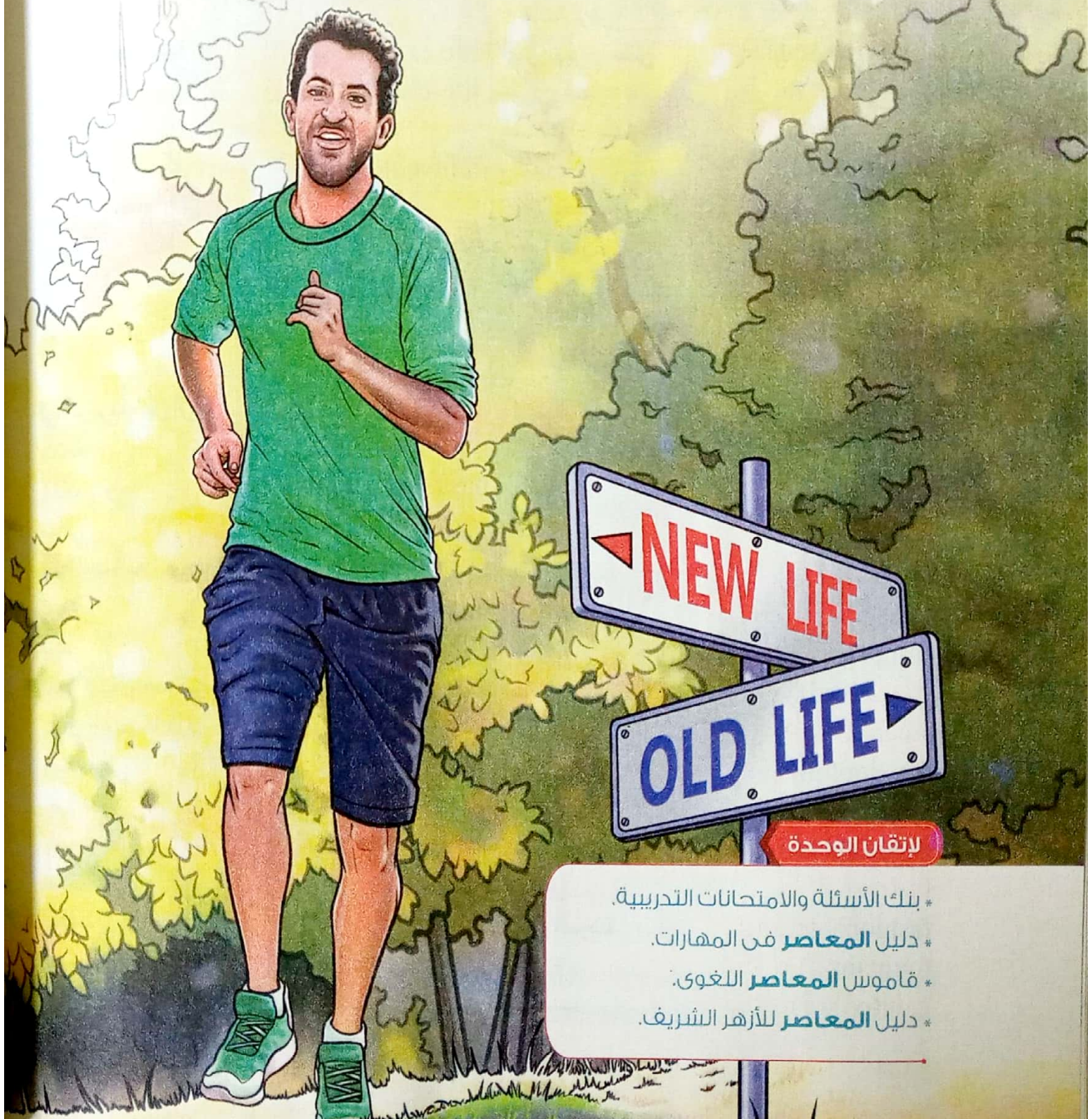
Starting again

SB pages 26 : 35 WB pages 14 : 19

Learning Outcomes :

- ✪ **Reading :**
Read an article about three people who have experienced a big change in their lives
- ✪ **Writing :**
Write an opinion persuasive essay
- ✪ **Listening :**
An interview with a businessman who helps entrepreneurs to start their own companies

- ✪ **Speaking :**
Discussing the lessons that can be learnt from other people
- ✪ **Language :**
Quantifiers: a few, few, a little, little, none, each, every.
- ✪ **Life skills :**
Resilience



لا إقناع الوحدة

- * بنك الأسئلة والامتحانات التدريبية.
- * دليل المعاصر في المهارات.
- * قاموس المعاصر اللغوي.
- * دليل المعاصر للأزهر الشريف.

Vocabulary

Part I

• اختر مدي انشائك للمفردات الرئيسية في كراسة المفردات التفاعلية.
• المفردات اللغوية باللون الأحمر هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية.

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

banking procedures(n)	الإجراءات المصرفية	entrepreneurial(adj)	بنطوي
(career)direction(n)	تَوَجُّه/تَحَوُّل (وظيفي)	entrepreneurship(n)	مجازفة الأعمال
common sense(n)	حُسنُ تدبُّر - حُسنُ	life experience(n)	معارف الحياة الاقتصادية
contribution(n)	تُسبُّب - شعور عام	life-changing(adj)	تغيير جذري
employment(n)	مُساهمة - مشاركة	reinvent(ed) (v)	إعادة تشكيل
entrepreneur(n)	وظيفة - التوظيف	wisdom(n)	حكمة - يَصْلُح
	رائد أعمال	working knowledge(n)	معرفة العملية

2 Important Vocabulary

banking(n)	الأعمال المصرفية	painting(n)	الرسم
bottled(adj)	مُعَبَأ في زجاجات	pandemic(n)	وباء
break down (phr. v)	يتحلل	passion(n)	شغف - ولع
bubble(n)	فقاعة	perfect(adj)	مثالي
chance(n)	حظ - فرصة	potential(n)	إمكانية
class(n)	دورة تدريبية	procedure(n)	إجراء
competition(n)	مسابقة	publish(ed) (v)	نشر
contact(ed) (v)	يتصل ب/ يتواصل مع	quantifier(n)	محدد كمية
creative(adj)	إبداعي	question(ed) (v)	يسأل - يشكك
develop(ed) (v)	يُطَوِّر - يُنْشِئ	recipe(n)	وصفة طهي
exist(ed) (v)	يوجد	recycle(d) (v)	تدوير
experience(d) (v)	يُجَرِّب/يعايش	regret(ted) (v)	يأسف
factors(n)	عوامل	seaweed(n)	طحالب البحر
fashionable(adj)	علي الموضة	second hand(adj)	مستعمل
fountain(n)	نافورة	sew - sewed - sewn(v)	سقى
gain(ed) (v)	يكتسب	solar(adj)	شمسي

hold - held - held(v)	يحتوي على - يمسك	solar-powered(adj)	يعمل بالطاقة الشمسية
ingredients(n)	يُقيِّم	sports science(n)	علوم الرياضة
inspire(d) (v)	عناصر - مكونات	stressed(adj)	متوتر / مضغوط
instructions(n)	يُلهم	throughout(adv)	عبر - خلال
inventor(n)	تعليمات	vehicle(n)	مركبة
knowledge(n)	مخترع - مبتكر	wheel(n)	عجلة
metal(n)	المعرفة	working life(n)	الحياة العملية
	المعدن		

3 Definitions تعريفات

banking procedures(n)	steps that workers need to follow to complete a process in a bank
(career)direction(n)	the way that someone is changing or developing their working life
common sense(n)	a simple understanding of how something works
contribution(n)	doing something to make a difference to a situation
employment(n)	when someone is paid to do a job
entrepreneur(n)	someone who starts a new business or arranges business deals in order to make money, often in a way that involves financial risks
life experience(n)	the knowledge you gain from life
life-changing	something so important that it results in your life being different
reinvent(ed) (v)	to change who you are, e.g., by starting a different job
wisdom(n)	the ability to use your knowledge of life to make good decisions
working knowledge(n)	a basic level of practical knowledge

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

1. We were given no instructions, so we had to use our to work it out.
a. direction b. employment c. contribution d. common sense

2. To work in the field of communication, you will need of the latest computing systems.
a. wisdom b. changing c. knowledge d. ingredient
3. Dr Zewail's work was a major to science.
a. direction b. employment c. contribution d. common sense
4. I didn't like working as an assistant, so I decided to change became a human resources manager.
a. direction b. employment c. contribution d. common sense
5. I value the of elderly people. They have learned a lot throughout their lives.
a. procedure b. changing c. knowledge d. wisdom
6. I found my first working in a café.
a. direction b. employment c. contribution d. common sense
7. I worked in the USA for ten years, which was an amazing I will never forget.
a. experience b. changing c. knowledge d. ingredient
8. He didn't make enough money working as a clerk, so he decided to himself as tour guide.
a. contact b. inspire c. question d. reinvent
9. It is not easy to change direction after twenty years of working in the same field.
a. career b. employer c. contribution d. common sense

2 Important vocabulary

10. A good employer makes full use of the of each member of the staff.
a. procedure b. coaches c. entrepreneurs d. potentials
11. are words like 'all', 'some', 'many' ...etc.
a. Seaweeds b. Quantifiers c. Recipes d. Procedures
12. He took my advice without He trusts me.
a. contacting b. inspiring c. questioning d. reinventing
13. I think this is a very high price for such a car. This way, buying a new one is better.
a. solar-powered b. second hand c. bottled d. creative
14. I think this is a fair price for such a car. It runs on electricity from the sun.
a. solar-powered b. second hand c. bottled d. creative

15. I think online is safe. Your money is not in danger.
a. vehicle b. working c. knowledge d. banking
16. Planning is one of the basic of success.
a. passions b. paintings c. factors d. transports
17. You can the customer service for technical help.
a. contact b. inspire c. question d. reinvent
18. The security in this factory are perfect.
a. seaweeds b. quantifiers c. recipes d. procedures
19. I found it difficult to my first novel as I was unknown.
a. publish b. regret c. sew d. hold
20. Don't let your life kill your happiness. Humans need some time for themselves.
a. vehicle b. working c. knowledge d. banking
21. The success of my cousin has me. I felt I can be successful, too.
a. contacted b. inspired c. questioned d. invented
22. Reading for such a writer is positive entertainment.
a. solar-powered b. second hand c. bottled d. creative
23. Each sheet has a different code.
a. bubble b. chance c. ingredient d. pandemic
24. How much liquid does this container?
a. publish b. regret c. sew d. hold
25. This is a modern which is environmentally friendly.
a. vehicle b. working c. knowledge d. banking
26. It is commonly believed that it is healthier to drink water.
a. solar-powered b. second hand c. bottled d. creative
27. The best thing about plastic is that it can be
a. recycled b. enveloped c. broken down d. existed
28. The worst thing about plastic is that it does not
a. recycle b. develop c. break down d. exist
29. Coronavirus is dangerous, but there have been much more dangerous over the ages.
a. bubbles b. chances c. ingredients d. pandemics
30. I got the for this dish from the internet.
a. seaweed b. quantifier c. recipe d. procedure

31. Never the good you did to someone. Only the good do you
 a. publish b. regret c. sew d. hold
32. You have got a lot of about farming. Do you work as a farmer?
 a. vehicles b. working c. knowledge d. banking
33. Extinct animals no longer on earth.
 a. recycle b. gain c. break down d. exist
34. This is worth millions of dollars. It is a unique work of art.
 a. passion b. painting c. factor d. transport
35. This injured man needs much health care in order to increase his of survival.
 a. bubble b. chance c. ingredient d. pandemic
36. It is nice to see coloured fish moving among
 a. seaweed b. quantifier c. recipe d. procedure
37. I need to find a needle to the button of the shirt.
 a. publish b. regret c. sew d. hold
38. A young has built a solar-powered tuk-tuk.
 a. inventor b. coach c. entrepreneurship d. potential
39. He is a good team player. However, he lacks
 a. passion b. painting c. factor d. transport
40. A team of scientists have a new vaccine for corona virus.
 a. recycled b. developed c. broke down d. existed

3 Definitions

41. Something that is is so important that it results in your life being different.
 a. potential b. life-changing c. enabled d. up-to-date
42. is the ability to use your knowledge of life to make good decisions.
 a. Wisdom b. Experience c. Employment d. Common sense
43. To is to change who you are, e.g., by starting a different job.
 a. cycle b. recycle c. invent d. reinvent
44. is a basic level of practical knowledge.
 a. Working knowledge b. Contribution c. Life experience d. Career direction

45. is the simple understanding of how something works.
 a. Wisdom b. Experience c. Employment d. Common sense
46. means doing something to make a difference to a situation.
 a. Working knowledge b. Contribution c. Life experience d. Career direction
47. is the knowledge you gain from life.
 a. Working knowledge b. Contribution c. Life experience d. Career direction
48. is when someone is paid to do a job.
 a. Wisdom b. Experience c. Employment d. Common sense

Part II Vocabulary Study

تنويه: تساعد معلمك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مسبقاً بشكل جيد.

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

build	a solar-powered car يصمم سيارة تعمل بالطاقة الشمسية	get	married يتزوج
change	(career)direction يُغير توجهه أو اتجاهه (مهنته)	have	paid to يتقاضى أجراً لكي
do	some writing يقوم ببعض التأليف	increase	a positive impact له أثر إيجابي
face	challenges يواجه تحديات	make	the chances يزيد من فرص
feel	stressed about يشعر بالتوتر من	sound	a difference to يُحدث فرقاً في
gain	a working knowledge يكتسب خبرة في العمل	start	good decisions يتخذ قرارات جيدة
	wisdom يكتسب الحكمة		like يبدو وكأنه
			a company يبدأ شركة

Mini Test 1 Collocations

- ★ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :
- I don't like it being a nurse, so I want to direction.
 a. do b. face c. have d. change
 - Doing an internship helped me work knowledge.
 a. gain b. make c. build d. do
 - Planning and hard work the chances of your success.
 a. feel b. get c. increase d. sound

4. You can some writing for our website.
a. do b. face c. have d. start
5. She married to a successful young engineer.
a. gained b. made c. built d. got
6. stressed about starting a new job in a new country is natural.
a. Feeling b. Gaining c. Increasing d. Starting
7. Challenges are by those who seek success.
a. done b. faced c. had d. started
8. The smart car we are will be ready for the market next year.
a. gaining b. doing c. building d. getting
9. I am a volunteer. I do not paid for my work.
a. feel b. get c. increase d. sound
10. The positive impact Mr Ashraf on his students is clear.
a. does b. faces c. has d. sounds

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
common sense(n)	حُسن التدبُّر wit, sound judgement, wisdom
employment(n)	وظيفة job, post, position
employment(n)	التوظيف - التشغيل hiring, taking on
employment(n)	استغلال/استخدام use, implementation
reinvent(ed) (v)	يُصلح reform, modify
wisdom(n)	الحكمة - البصيرة insight, common sense

3 Antonyms متضادات

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)
common sense(n)	حُسن التدبُّر folly
employment(n)	تفويض - شعور عام unemployment
wisdom(n)	التوظيف - التشغيل stupidity, folly

Mini Test 2 Synonyms & Antonyms

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. "Use your common sense if something goes wrong." In this sentence "common sense" is a synonym of
a. folly b. wit c. wisdom d. b & c

2. "I was offered employment as a member of El-Moasser team." The word 'employment' here can be replaced by
a. a job b. unemployment c. taking on d. a & c
3. "The employment of children is against the law." The word 'employment' here can be replaced by
a. a job b. unemployment c. taking on d. a & c
4. "National employment has reached 92%." The word 'employment' here is an antonym of
a. a job b. unemployment c. taking on d. a & c
5. "Egypt is reinventing the educational system." The verb "reinvent" here is synonymous with
a. create b. find out c. invent again d. reform

4 Derivatives المشتقات

Verb	Noun	Adjective
contribute (to) (يساهم/يشارك (في)	contribution contributor مُساهمة/مُشاركة مُساهم/مُشارك	contributory مُساهم - مُشارك
employ يُوظف/يُشغّل	employee employer employment التوظيف / التشغيل - وظيفة - استخدام unemployment البطالة	employable unemployed مُؤهل للعمل عاطل
	entrepreneur entrepreneurship رائد أعمال ريادة الأعمال - المجازفة الاقتصادية	entrepreneurial ريادي - ينطوي على مجازفة
	wisdom الحكمة	wise حكيم

Mini Test 3 Derivatives

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A/An is always concerned with making profit.
a. contribution b. contributor c. entrepreneur d. entrepreneurial
2. His ideas, mostly, are always concerned with making profit.
a. contribution b. contributor c. entrepreneur d. entrepreneurial
3. Naguib Mahfouz's to Arabic literature are clear to everyone.
a. contributed b. contributions c. contributors d. contributory
4. Naguib Mahfouz was one of the chief to modern Arabic literature.
a. contributed b. contributions c. contributors d. contributory

5. Naguib Mahfouz was to modern Arabic literature.
a. contributed b. contributions c. contributors d. contributory
6. Everyone likes working for him. They say he is a very kind
a. employee b. employer c. employment d. employable
7. A company in my town closed last week, leaving 50 people
a. employment b. employer c. unemployed d. employ
8. Someone who is paid to work for another person is called a / an
a. employer b. employee c. employable d. employment
9. If you have a degree from a good university, you will be very
a. employ b. employment c. employable d. employee
10. She was not she shouldn't have decided while she was angry.
a. wise b. wisely c. a & b d. wisdom

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات ومصطلحات

banking procedures	الإجراءات المصرفية	free time	وقت فراغ
bottled water	مياه مُعبأة في زجاجات	life experience	خبرة الحياة
computing systems	أنظمة الحواسيب	life-changing experience	تجربة تؤدي لتغيير جذري في الحياة
contribution to	مساهمة في		
coronavirus pandemic	جائحة فيروس كورونا	much to my surprise	ربما أصابني بالدهشة
even though	مع أن	piece of	قطعة من
for little money	بمقابل مادي بسيط	second-hand	مستعمل
free drink	مشروب مجاني	solar-powered	يعمل بالطاقة الشمسية
		sports science	علوم الرياضة

6 Synonymous idioms تعبيرات مترادفة

according to ... = as stated by	وفقاً لـ / حسب ما يقول ...	according to ... = in accordance with	وفقاً لـ / حسب بما يتوافق مع ...
as a result, = so = consequently	لذلك	believe in = have a belief in	يؤمن بـ
believe in = trust	يثق بـ	ever since = continuously since	منذ
15-year-old boy		have a positive impact on	لها أثر إيجابي على
= a boy of 15		= have a positive influence on	
= a boy aged 15		= have a positive effect on	
= a boy who is 15 years old		= affect ... positively	
much to my surprise = I am very surprised	فتي عمره خمسة عشر عاماً	result in = lead to = cause	يؤدي إلى
	مما يصحبه دهشة كبيرة		

7 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

break down	يتحلل - يتعطل	reinvent ... as	يعيد تأهيل ... كـ
end up as	ينتهي به الحال إلى	suffer from	يعاني من
go out	يخرج	work ... out	يفهم - يستنتج
grow up	يكبر		

Mini Test 4 Expressions, Prepositions & Idioms

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- "I have a ten-year-old son." This means my son
a. 10-year-old b. aged ten c. is a boy of ten d. ten years old
- "Smoking will surely result in serious health problems." The phrasal verb 'results in' in this context is a synonym of
a. happen b. cause c. lead to d. b & c
- Being interested in politics and public interest all his life, he a member of the parliament.
a. ended up as b. resulted in c. led to d. resulted from
- "Much to our surprise, she agreed to marry a man the age of her father." The expression "Much to our surprise" means that we are surprised by her decision.
a. not b. a bit c. very d. not very
- Unlike wood, plastic products never
a. suffer from b. break down c. go out d. burn
- A/An-powered car runs on electricity generated from sunlight.
a. oil b. petrol c. diesel d. solar
- Sama worked hard all school year. she came first.
a. However, b. So, c. As a result, d. b & c
- "Good company has a positive impact on us." This means good company affects us
a. negative b. positive c. positively d. good
- He was a professional teacher of English, however he has managed to reinvent himself an engineer.
a. as b. to c. in d. from
- You pay for a free drink.
a. a little b. nothing c. much d. enough

8 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

entrepreneur - organisation man

• entrepreneur (n)

- The success of the company depends on entrepreneurs.

• organisation man / woman (n)

- The company is looking for an organisation man/woman.

employ - employer - employee - employment - unemployment - employable - employed

• employ = give ... a job (v)

- The new company will employ about 3000 workers.

- The government employed some graduates to do surveys.

• employer (n)

- The sugar factory is the largest employer in Edfu.

- Ahmed works for a good employer.

• employee (n)

- My father was a government employee.

• employment (n)

- My elder brother was offered employment in a car company.

- Children employment is against the law.

• unemployment (n)

- The government tries hard to solve the problem of unemployment.

• employable (adj) ≠ unemployable (adj)

- Lifelong learning makes you more employable.

- If you stop improving your skills, you will be unemployable.

• employed (adj) ≠ unemployed (adj)

- As he is employed and earns good money, he is planning to get married.

- The factory closed leaving 200 people unemployed.

result in/from

• result in = lead to = cause (phr. v)

- Doing exercise results in keeping fit.

= Doing exercise leads to keeping fit

• result from = happen because of (phr. v)

- Keeping fit results from doing exercise.

- Keeping fit happens because of doing exercise.

knowledge - wisdom

• knowledge (n)

- My knowledge of English culture has increased.

• wisdom (n)

- Common wisdom suggests that you do not believe all the news you read online.

Mini Test 5 Clear the Confusion

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Success hard work to a goal.

a. results in b. leads to c. a & b d. results from

2. Hard work to a goal surely success.

a. results in b. leads to c. a & b d. results from

3. Don't expect him to decide. He is an

a. organisational b. organisation man
c. entrepreneurial d. entrepreneur

4. What an! He never stops taking business risk to make money.

a. organisational b. organisation man
c. entrepreneurial d. entrepreneur

5. They work for a rich

a. employee b. employment c. employer d. unemployment

6. among young people is undoubtedly a serious economic and social problem.

a. Employee b. Employment c. Employer d. Unemployment

7. The of young people in productive jobs is undoubtedly a serious economic and social problem.

a. Employee b. Employment c. Employer d. Unemployment

كل ما يخص المفردات الرئيسية

9

Master your Key Vocabulary

common sense

حُسن إدراك - حُسن تمييز - الذوق العام

- **common sense (n)**
- It's common sense to keep knives away from children.
- I hope that common sense will prevail.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- have common sense لديه حُسن إدراك أو تَصَرُّف
- show common sense يُبدي حُسن إدراك أو تَصَرُّف
- defy common sense ... يُسئ التَصَرُّف ...
- common sense tells you ... الذوق العام يفرض عليك ...
- common sense dictates ... الذوق العام يفرض ...
- common sense suggests that ... الذوق العام يتطلب أن ...

entrepreneur

- **entrepreneur (n)** رائد أعمال (شخص مجازف مبدع يأتي بأفكار اقتصادية جديدة وينفذها)
- He is a leading entrepreneur who has started seven companies.
- **entrepreneurship (n)** ريادة الأعمال/المجازفة الاقتصادية
- His entrepreneurship put him on top of leading businessmen in the country.
- **entrepreneurial (adj)** ريادي في الأعمال/مُجازف اقتصادي
- His entrepreneurial skills put him on top of leading businessmen in the country.

knowledge

- **know (v)** يعرف
- I know what you mean.
- لاحظ أن الفعل (know) بمعنى يعرف لا يُستخدم في الأزمنة المستمرة:
- I am knowing the answer to this question. (X)
- I know the answer to this question. (✓)
- **known** غير معروف ≠ **unknown** معروف (صفة تأتي قبل الموصوف فقط)
- This footballer is known. (X)
- This is a known footballer. (✓)
- **... be known for** معروف بـ / يتميز بـ
- He is known for his kind heart.
- **... be known as** معروف كـ/مشهور بأنه
- He is known as a kind-hearted man.

... be known to

معروف لدى/مشهور عند

- Salah is known to football fans all over the world.

• knowledge(of/about) (n)

المعرفة (ب) (اسم غير معلود)

- He has got too much knowledge about football stars.

لاحظ أن:

- I learned knowledge. (X)
- I gained knowledge. (✓)
- I acquired knowledge. (✓)

reinvent

• reinvent (... as) (v)

يعيد تأهيل (... ك) - يُشكّل ... من جديد (ك)

- She used to be a secretary. However, she reinvented herself as a teacher.
- I have reinvented my old flat as an office.

• reinvent = reform (v)

يُصلح

- There are plans to reinvent the current healthcare system.
- The president promised to reinvent Social Security.

• reinvent the wheel

يُضيع وقته وجهده فيما لا يفيد (يخترع العجلة)

- It is no use reinventing the wheel.

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

تدريبات: التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Scientists have succeeded in the of sunlight to generate electricity.
a. procedure b. process c. employment d. experiment
- When setting up new software, there's no need to
a. find employment as b. reinvent the wheel
c. reinvent yourself d. click on the set up extension
- Keep it secret! should tell you that people will find out sooner or later.
a. Common sense b. Life-changing c. Career Direction d. Factors
- This
a. is a fact that is known b. is a fact which is known
c. fact is known d. is a known fact
- I
a. gained a knowledge b. gained knowledge
c. acquired a knowledge d. learned knowledge

It was a **huge**⁽⁵⁾ change in my life and I had to **reinvent**⁽⁶⁾ myself several times, but after having completed my first year as a teacher, I don't **regret**⁽⁷⁾ it at all.

(5) هائل / ضخم

(6) يعيد تأهيل / يعيد بناء

(7) يندم

Sami, 28

Up **until**⁽¹⁾ I was sixteen, I didn't work very hard at school. My mum was always telling me to do my homework, but I just wanted to play football. Then a teacher told me that I can study **sports science**⁽²⁾ at university and become a sports teacher or a football **coach**⁽³⁾, both of which **sounded like**⁽⁴⁾ **perfect**⁽⁵⁾ jobs to me. After that, I tried a lot harder at school and I got into university to study sports science. Now I teach sports at a school and my **contribution**⁽⁶⁾ to my students' lives is to **inspire**⁽⁷⁾ them to enjoy sports. However, I use my life experience to show them that, **even though**⁽⁸⁾ sport is amazing, you also need to work hard at school.



Check Vocabulary

(1) حتي / الغاية

(2) علوم الرياضة

(3) مُدَرِّب

(4) يبدو وكأنه

(5) مثالي

(6) مُساهمة

(7) يُلهِم

(8) مع أن

The young inventor⁽¹⁾

(WB page 15)

Many people had a lot of time during the corona virus **pandemic**⁽²⁾ of 2020 and 2021, but few of them had much time to invent something new!



But that is what happened to Suntharalingam Piranawan, when he was **unable**⁽³⁾ to **go out**⁽⁴⁾ for many days because of the pandemic. The 15-year-old boy spent almost every day for eight months **developing**⁽⁵⁾ a **solar-powered**⁽⁶⁾ tuk-tuk. These are small **vehicles**⁽⁷⁾ with three **wheels**⁽⁸⁾ that some people use for **transport**⁽⁹⁾ in Sri Lanka, where he is from.

Check Vocabulary

(1) المخترع الصغير

(2) جائحة

(3) غير قادر

(4) يخرج

(5) يُطوِّر

(6) يعمل بالطاقة الشمسية

(7) مركبات

(8) عجلات

(9) المواصلات / النقل

(10) مُستعمل

(11) المعدن

(12) الطاقة

Suntharalingam's family did not have any money to buy new parts for his tuk-tuk, so the boy's grandfather helped him to buy **second hand**⁽¹⁰⁾ pieces of **metal**⁽¹¹⁾ from shops for little money. Now, the tuk-tuk works very well, using the **energy**⁽¹²⁾ from the sun.

The success of the tuk-tuk has not stopped Suntharalingam. Every day, Suntharalingam tries to think of new things that he can invent. He says that the work helps him not to feel stressed⁽¹³⁾ about the corona virus or other problems. Next, he wants to build a solar-powered car, but this will need much more money. None of his family can help him with this, so he hopes the government will help him with his plans.

(13) متعب / مضغوط

Part IV Language

• قبل البدء في استذكار الجزء التالي، يفضل مراجعة قاعدة (Countable & Uncountable nouns) من ملحق القواعد الخاص بكتاب المصاحف.
• نظراً لطول شرح هذه القاعدة قمنا بتقسيمها إلى أجزاء ووضعنا تدريبات شاملة على كل جزء بعده مباشرة. وسنكتفي بعدد قليل من التدريبات العامة في نهاية الشرح

تنويه

التعبيرات الكمية والعديّة Quantifiers

1 كل - all of

- 1 تُستخدم (all) كصفة قبل اسم لا يُعدّ ويأتي معها فعل مفرد:
- All Mona's money **is** at home.
2 تُستخدم (all) كصفة قبل اسم مفرد يُعدّ وتُشير إلى المجموعة كوحدة واحدة ويأتي معها فعل مفرد:
- All the country **is** ready to face terrorism.
3 تُستخدم (all / all of) مع اسم جمع ويأتي معها فعل جمع:
- All (of) my friends **are** helpful.
4 يُمكن أن تُستخدم (all / all of) قبل المحددات:
- All (of) those trees need to be watered at once.
5 تُستخدم (all of) وليس (all) قبل الضمائر الشخصية بينما تستخدم (all) فقط بعد الضمائر الشخصية كما يلي:

ضمير مفعول + All of	all + ضمير شخصي (فاعل أو مفعول)
- Mr Omar advised all of them.	- Mr Omar advised them all.
- All of us love Egypt.	= We all love Egypt.
- I respect all of them.	= I respect them all.
- All of you are clever.	= You all are clever.
- The manager can't meet all of you.	= The manager can't meet you all.

6 يمكن أن تُستخدم (all) كضمير ويأتي بعدها فعل مفرد أو جمع حسب الاسم الذي تشير إليه:

- There is no **money** on me. **All has** been spent.
- There are **employees** in the office. **All have** left.

Mini Test 1

Apply

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- All my money in the bank.
a. is b. are c. have d. has
- students passed the exam.
a. All b. All the c. All of the d. a, b & c
- All people homes to live in.
a. needs b. need c. has needed d. is in need of
- All of are ready to help.
a. me b. him c. them d. her
- must take part in the race.
a. All you b. All of you c. You all d. b & c
- He is ready to help
a. all of us b. us all c. a & b d. we all

2 كل - every - each

- 1 تُستخدم (every / each) كصفة قبل اسم مفرد ويأتي بعدها فعل مفرد:
- Each member of the team **plays** really well.
- Every car in the city **causes** some pollution.
2 تشير (each) إلى اثنين أو أكثر، بينما تُشير (every) إلى ثلاثة أو أكثر:
- He carried a bag in **each hand**. (not every)
- She gave presents to **every / each student** in her class.
3 يُمكن أن تُستخدم (each) فقط وليس (every) كضمير:
- She gives her two sons 100 pounds a day. **Each gets** fifty pounds.
(Not : every gets)
4 يُمكن أن تُستخدم (every) فقط وليس (each) بعد الظروف:
- **Nearly every student** was examined. (not each)
5 تُستخدم (each of) قبل اسم جمع ويأتي معها فعل مفرد (أو جمع في اللغة العامية):
- **Each of** my parents **was** at the party.
6 لا بد أن تُستخدم المحددات بعد (each of) ولا يمكن حذف (of) في هذه الحالة:
- Each of **my** two brothers **is** successful doctors.
- Each of **those** women **looks** very poor.

فعل في صيغة الجمع + each + اسم أو ضمير جمع -
The boys each have a tablet computer.
We each are very busy.

اسم جمع + عدد + every -
In our company, we have a meeting every two weeks.

لا يُستخدم حرف الجر (of) بعد (every) مباشرة:
I have three sisters. Each of them is kind and helpful. (Not: Every of)

لاحظ كيفية استخدام (each / each of) مع الضمائر الشخصية في الجدول التالي:

ضمير مفعول + each of	each + ضمير (فاعل / مفعول)
- Each of us went to bed early.	- We each went to bed early.
- Mr Ayman likes each of them.	- Mr Ayman likes them each.
- Each of them has important exams these days.	- They each have important exams these days.

Mini Test 2 Apply

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- member of the group does their best.
a. Each b. Every c. a & b d. All
- members of the group do their best.
a. Each b. Every c. a & b d. All
- People have five toes in leg.
a. each b. every c. a & b d. both
- People have ten toes in legs.
a. each b. every c. a & b d. both
- El-Moasser plays an important role in almost student's education.
a. each b. every c. a & b d. all
- El-Moasser plays an important role in almost students' education.
a. each b. every c. a & b d. all
- Each of my two sons good at maths.
a. is b. are c. do d. does

- My two sons each good at maths.
a. is b. are c. do d. does
- They have mobile phones.
a. both of b. all of c. each d. every
- of them needs urgent help.
a. Each b. Every c. All d. Both

3 a lot of/lots of - many - much

a lot of / lots of

الكثير من

تُستخدم (a lot of/lots of) في الإثبات قبل اسم جمع أو اسم غير معدود:

- a lot of / lots of plural اسم جمع + كثير من uncountable اسم لا يُعد
- I have a lot / lots of tasks to do.
- He bought a lot / lots of bread.

Using (many/much) as pronouns استخدام (many/much) كضمائر

1 تُستخدم (many) كضمير يعود على اسم معدود (مفرد/جمع):

- I don't need a pen. I have many in my pencil case. (= many pens)
- I have a lot of friends on Facebook, but my brother doesn't have many. (= many friends)

2 عند استخدام (many) كضمير فاعل فإن الفعل بعدها يكون دائماً في صيغة الجمع:

- Don't buy more apples. Many are in the kitchen.

3 تُستخدم (much) كضمير يعود على اسم غير معدود:

- Don't offer me more food. I have already eaten much. (= much food)
- Amir has enough time before exams, but I don't have much. (= much time)

4 يُمكن استخدام صيغتي المقارنة والتفضيل (more/most) أيضاً كضمائر:

- I have a lot of friends on Facebook, but my brother has more. (= more friends)
- Amir has enough time before exams, but I have more. (= more time)

استخدام (many/much) كصفات

Using (many/much) as adjectives

نستخدم (many) كصفة بمعنى (كثير من) قبل اسم جمع في الجمل المنفية:

اسم جمع + many

- I don't have many friends at my new school.

- Rodayna doesn't have many tasks to do today.

نستخدم (much) كصفة بمعنى (كثير من) قبل اسم غير معلود في الجمل المنفية:

اسم غير معلود + much

- We didn't have much time before the exams.

- Omar hasn't got much money left.

الصفحتان (many/much) لهما نفس صفة المقارنة (more) ونفس صفة التفضيل (most):

Adjective الصفة	Comparative صفة المقارنة	Superlative صفة التفضيل
many كثير (العدد)	more أكثر	most الأكثر
much كثير (الكمية)	more أكثر	most الأكثر

- I have got so many friends. Ayman has more friends than me, but Ashraf has the most friends.

- Sama adds so much sugar to her juice. Leen adds more sugar than Sama, but Rokaya adds the most sugar.

استخدام (many/much) في الأسئلة

Using (many/much) in questions

نستخدم (many) قبل اسم جمع في الأسئلة التي تبدأ بـ (How):

- How many books have you got?

نستخدم (much) قبل اسم غير معلود في الأسئلة التي تبدأ بـ (How):

- How much salt did you add to the soup?

في الأسئلة التي لا تبدأ بـ (how) يمكن استخدام (many/much/ a lot of):

- Do you have much money? (✓)

- Do you have a lot of money? (✓)

- Are their many visitors today? (✓)

- Are there a lot of visitors today? (✓)

استخدام (many/much) في الجمل المثبتة

Using (many/much) in affirmatives

يمكن أن نستخدم كل من (many - much) في الجملة المثبتة في الحالات التالية:

أ. إذا جاء قبل أي منهما ما يلي:

so - very - as - too + much

- I have so much homework to do.

- There's too much water on the floor.

so - as - too - a good - a great + many

- There are too many guests in the party.

- Aya has so many jobs to do.

ب. إذا كانت أي منهما تصف فاعل الجملة:

- Many applicants have sent their CVs. (= A lot of applicants ...)

- Much electricity is used to heat water. (= A lot of electricity ...)

ج. إذا كانت أي منهما ضمير فاعل:

- Some members didn't support me, but many voted for me.
(= many members ...)

- We need to save water. Much is wasted unnecessarily.
(= Much water ...)

Mini Test 3

Apply

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- My father has a lot of
a. friend b. friends c. friendship d. b & c
- My father has a lot of
a. friend b. friends c. friendships d. b & c
- There's water on the floor.
a. a lot of b. much c. many d. a few
- There's too water on the floor.
a. a lot of b. much c. many d. a few
- There're drops of water on the windscreen.
a. a lot of b. much c. a few d. a & c

6. There're so drops of water on the windscreen.
a. a lot of b. much c. many d. a few
7. I have a lot of friends. are in my school.
a. A lot of b. Many c. None d. b & c
8. The Egyptians use a lot of water from the Nile. is used in farming.
a. Many b. Much c. A few d. A lot of
9. The Egyptians use a lot of water from the Nile. it is used in farming.
a. Many b. Much c. A few d. A lot of
10. Although some people have voted against the new law, many still it.
a. support b. supports c. has supported d. b & c
11. He earns a lot of money, much of which spent on his children's education.
a. has b. have c. is d. are
12. Many people have taken the coronavirus vaccine; more still waiting for their turn.
a. is b. are c. have d. has
13. The government spends a lot of money on the coronavirus vaccine; Much spent on buying the vaccine itself.
a. is b. are c. have d. has
14. How bread have you bought?
a. a few b. a little c. many d. much
15. How loaves of bread have you bought?
a. a few b. a little c. many d. much
16. Have you got knowledge in this field?
a. many b. much c. a lot of d. b & c
17. Have you got pieces of knowledge in this field?
a. many b. much c. a lot of d. a & c
18. students want to join the faculty of medicine.
a. A lot of b. Many c. a & b d. Much
19. work should be done before I can leave the office.
a. A lot b. Many c. a & b d. Much

4 a little, little, a few, few

a little, little, a few & few as adverbs

استخدام (a little, little, a few, few) كضمان

- 1 تُستخدم كل من (a little/ little) كضمير بمعنى (كمية قليلة) يعود على اسم غير معدود:
- A: Would you like some orange juice?
B: A little, please. (= A little orange juice)
- 2 تُستخدم كل من (a few/ few) كضمير بمعنى (عدد قليل) يعود على اسم جمع:
- I invited all my friends to my birthday, but only a few attended it.
(= A few friends)

a little, little, a few & few + noun

استخدام (a little, little, a few, few) كصفات (أي قبل اسم)

- 1 تُستخدم كل من (a little/ little) كصفة بمعنى (قليل الكمية) قبل اسم غير معدود:
اسم غير معدود + a little/little
- We have a little time before the match starts.
- 2 تُستخدم كل من (a few/ few) كصفة بمعنى (قليل العدد) قبل اسم جمع:
اسم جمع + a few / few
- I have met a few friends today.
- 3 تُستخدم (a little) كصفة بمعنى (صغير) قبل اسم مفرد معدود:
اسم مفرد معدود + a little
- I have a little child called Sama.
- 4 تُستخدم (little) كصفة بمعنى (صغير) قبل اسم جمع:
اسم جمع + little
- I let Sama play with other little girls.

Using a little & a few

استخدام (a little, a few)

- 1 تُستخدم كل من (a few/ a little) بمعنى (عدد قليل/ كمية قليلة) من وجهة نظر المتكلم:
a few/ a little
- A few of my cousins have tablets.
- I take a little sugar in my tea.

(a few) للتأكيد على أن (العدد قليل/الكمية قليلة) من وجهة نظر المتكلم:

only + a few / a little

- Only a few of my cousins have tablets.
- I take only a little sugar in my tea.

تُستخدم (quite) قبل كل من (a few / a little) للتأكيد على أن (العدد قليل/الكمية قليلة) بدرجة ليست كبيرة:

quite + a few / a little

- Quite a few of my cousins have tablets.
- I take quite a little sugar in my tea.

استخدام (little, few)

تُستخدم كل من (few / little) بدون (a) للدلالة على النقص أو النقص (عدم الكفاية) وتُعطى معنى يقترب من النفي:

- There is little time for discussion.
- Little is known about coronavirus.
- Few countries in the third world have enough food for their citizens.
- I asked all my friends for help. Sadly, few gave a positive reply.

⓪ لاحظ أن:

much/many + فعل منفي = hardly any + فعل مُثبت = little/few + فعل مُثبت

- I have little money left.
= I have hardly any money left. = I don't have much money left.
- I have received few calls today.
= I have received hardly any calls today.
= I haven't received many calls today.

so - very - as - too ... + little

- I have so little work to do. (Not: so a little)
- She has put too little salt in the soup. (Not: too a little)

so - as - too - very ... + few

- I saw too few people in the street. (Not: too a few)
- He has so few friends on Facebook. (Not: so a few)

Using (a little) as an adverb

استخدام (a little) كظرف

تُستخدم (a little) كظرف في الحالات التالية:
أ. مع الأفعال:

- It rained a little for discussion.
- Little is known about coronavirus.

ب. مع الصفات والظروف التي تعطي معنى سلبي مثل:

- anxious - متوتر - annoyed - مضطرب - stressed - impatiently ...
- I was a little annoyed when my team lost the match. (= rather annoyed)
- She talks a little loudly. (= rather loudly)

ج. مع صفات وظروف المقارنة:

- The black horse runs a little faster than the brown one.
- Sama is a little taller than me.

Using (little) as an adverb

استخدام (little) كظرف

تُستخدم (little) كظرف في الحالات التالية:
أ. قبل (better/more) في اللغة الرسمية:

- He was little more than a teenager when he got married. (= not much)
- Your opinion is little better than mine. (= not much)

ب. قبل بعض الأفعال مثل:

- know - think - believe - hope - expect - suspect ... يشك في
- The police little suspect him for the crime.
- I little expected to find a job that fast. بهذه السرعة.

ج. قبل الصفتين:

- little-known - غير مشهور - little-used - قليل الاستخدام
- He is no longer a little-known player.

Mini Test 4

Apply

★ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- I had orange juice.
a. a little b. little c. a few d. a & b
- I had drops of orange juice.
a. a little b. little c. a few d. a & b
- Ahmed has a few
a. friends b. time c. a & b d. son

4. Ahmed has a little for reading.
a. friends b. time c. a & b d. son
5. Ahmed has a little of four.
a. friends b. time c. a & b d. son
6. Ahmed has little of his own age.
a. friends b. time c. a & b d. son
7. I add salt to my soup. Most people wouldn't like it.
a. a little b. little c. few d. a & b
8. I add salt to my soup, just enough to make it tasty.
a. a little b. little c. much d. a lot of
9. Mr Ayman wrote down a few notes; nothing very important.
a. quite b. only c. too d. so
10. Mr Ayman has got a little time; just enough to do the job in hand.
a. quite b. only c. too d. so
11. I have money left. I can't buy the underground ticket.
a. a little b. little c. a few d. few
12. I have pounds left. I can't buy the underground ticket.
a. a little b. little c. a few d. few
13. Mum has so work to do before she goes to bed.
a. little b. few c. a & b d. a little
14. How people attended the rich man's funeral ! I wonder where his so-called friends were.
a. many b. much c. few d. a few
15. My uncle has very few on the farm.
a. soil b. cattle c. water d. animal
16. I have trained today.
a. few b. a few c. little d. a little
17. was said at the press conference. المؤتمر الصحفي
a. Little b. Few c. A few d. Many
18. I was annoyed by what she had said.
a. a few b. few c. a little d. little
19. We expected her to win the gold.
a. a little b. little c. a few d. few
20. Well-known is antonymous with-known.
a. good b. a little c. little d. few

5 Some - any

Using (some/any) as pronouns

استخدام (some/any) كضمائر

١ تُستخدَم (some/any) كضمير يعود على اسم مملود جمع أو اسم غير مملود:

- I don't need **any pens**. I have **some** in my pencil case. (= some pens)
- I have a lot of **friends**, but my brother doesn't have **any**. (= any friends)
- I am going to drink **tea**. Would you like **some**?

٢ عند استخدام (some/any) كضمير فاعل فإن الفعل بعدها يكون في صيغة المفرد أو الجمع حسب الاسم الذي تشير إليه:

- I have invited all my **friends**; **some** haven't arrived yet.
- I have got a lot of **information**; **some** is about marine life.

Some (as an adjective)

١ تُستخدَم (some) كصفة قبل اسم جمع أو اسم غير مملود غالباً في الجمل الخبرية المثبتة:

اسم غير مملود / Uncountable noun / اسم جمع + بعض some

- I have **some jobs** to do. (+ Plural)
- I have **some work** to do. (+ uncountable)

٢ يُمكن أن تُستخدَم (some) كصفة قبل اسم جمع أو اسم غير مملود في الأسئلة التي يكون الغرض منها العرض أو الطلب:

- Would you like **some** sandwiches and **some** juice? (عَرَض)
- Can you give me **some** paper and **some** pens? (طَلَب)

any (as an adjective)

١ تُستخدَم (any) كصفة قبل اسم جمع أو اسم غير مملود غالباً في الجمل المنفية أو الاستفهامية:

اسم غير مملود / Uncountable noun / اسم جمع + أيّ any

- I don't have **any jobs** to do. (نفي)
- Do you have **any work** to do? (استفهام)

٢ تُستخدَم (any) قبل اسم جمع أو اسم لا يُعد بعض التراكيب مثل:

- **hardly / scarcely / barely ... any** = almost no
- There is **hardly any** milk left. = There's **almost no** milk left.
- **any ... at all** = almost no
- I don't have **any** money **at all**. = I **almost** have **no** money.

- without any ... = with no ...
- I drink tea without any sugar. = I drink tea without no sugar.
- if ... any / whether ... any (التعبير عن الشك أو عدم التأكد)
- If you need anything, call me.
- I want to know whether you have said anything about our plan to anybody.

some / any + singular noun

يمكن أن تُستخدم (some) كصفة قبل اسم مفرد معلود بمعنى (ما) لتشير إلى شخص أو شيء غير محدد أو غير معروف للمتحدث:

اسم مفرد معلود + some بعض

- Some child broke the shop window and ran away.

- I went to the library to find some dictionary I can use.

يمكن أن تُستخدم (any) كصفة قبل اسم مفرد معلود بمعنى (أي) لتشير إلى شخص أو شيء غير محدد أو غير معروف للمتحدث:

اسم مفرد معلود + any أي

- Do you have any friend you can depend on?

some of / any of

يمكن أن تُستخدم (some/any + of) قبل أداة التعريف (the) وصفات الإشارة وصفات الملكية وضمائر المفعول:

Some / any of +	the
	- Some of the students are absent.
	- I haven't found any of the keys.
	this / that / these / those
	- Some of these dishes are healthy food.
my / his / her / its / your / our / their	- I haven't eaten any of this pasta.
	Any of my cousins won't do that.
	- He has visited some of his relatives.
	it / you / us / them
	- Some of them are ready to help.
I haven't called any of you.	

Mini Test 5

Apply

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Leen wanted to buy notebooks.
a. some b. many c. any d. every
- Leen didn't want to buy notebooks.
a. some b. much c. any d. no
- Leen didn't want to buy notebooks because she had already had
a. some b. much c. any d. no
- Leen wanted to buy notebooks because she didn't have
a. some b. much c. any d. no
- Leen bought notebooks because she had already had some .
a. many b. much c. any d. no
- There's a lot of juice in the fridge. I'll get you
a. many b. some c. any d. much
- There's a lot of juice in the fridge. Would you like ?
a. many b. some c. any d. much
- There's no more juice in the fridge. I can't get you
a. many b. some c. any d. much
- Most of my friends are here in the wedding hall, but some
apologized for different reasons.
a. are b. is c. has d. have
- Most of the information you need is available, but some still
being collected.
a. are b. is c. has d. have
- Some cries next door. I wonder if his or her parents are out.
a. a child b. children c. child d. b & c
- Any that has a problem with their tablet can consult Mr
Mohammed Omar or Mr Sobhi.
a. student b. a student c. students d. a & c
- My students have sent me some great taken during the school
trip.
a. a photo b. photos c. photo d. b & c
- Do you mind lending me money?
a. any b. some c. many d. few

15. Sorry! I can't lend you money.
a. any b. some c. many d. few
16. She has no time for hobbies.
a. barely b. doesn't c. not d. almost
17. She has any time for hobbies.
a. barely b. doesn't c. not d. almost
18. She have any time for hobbies.
a. barely b. doesn't c. not d. almost
19. I drink tea without sugar.
a. no b. some c. any d. a & b
20. I drink tea with sugar. I am diabetic.
a. no b. some c. any d. a & b
21. I drink tea with only sugar. I don't like it too sweet.
a. no b. some c. any d. a & b
22. I drink tea with sugar.
a. no b. some c. any d. a & b
23. You can call me at any time if goes wrong
a. anything b. any c. some d. nothing
24. Mai doesn't have time at all.
a. much b. some c. any d. a lot of
25. the boys in my class are toppers.
a. Some b. Some of c. Any d. None
26. There are your close friends. Some of can help you.
a. they b. theirs c. their d. them

6 No - None - No one

No

- ① تُستخدم (no) مباشرة قبل اسم غير معدود أو اسم جمع:
- I have **no time** for hobbies. (no + uncountable noun)
- She has **no friends** at her new school. (no + plural noun)
- ② يُمكن أن تُستخدم (no) مباشرة قبل اسم مفرد معدود بدون (a/an) عندما يكون المفرد هو النسب:
- I have **no wife**. (It is common that a man has one wife)
- Hosam has **no car**. (A person is expected to have one car)

- I have **no idea** where Ahmed is. (The place where Ahmed is represents one idea)
- **No swimmer** has broken this record before. (Swimming is an individual sport)

لا تترك أي + فعل منفي = فعل مثبت + any

لاحظ أن:

- He **hasn't** got **any** friends. = He **has** got **no** friends.

لا تترك أي + فعل منفي = فعل مثبت + a / an

- I **am not** a teacher. = I **am** **no** teacher.

None

① كلمة (none) هي الضمير من (no) وتعني (not one - not any) أي (لا أحد من) أو (لا شيء من) وهي تعود على اسم معدود أو اسم غير معدود:

- I waited for my **friends**, but **none** arrived. (none of my friends)
- Sama has one **sister**, but Ali has **none**. (no sisters)
- I searched my pockets for **money**, but there was **none**. (no money)

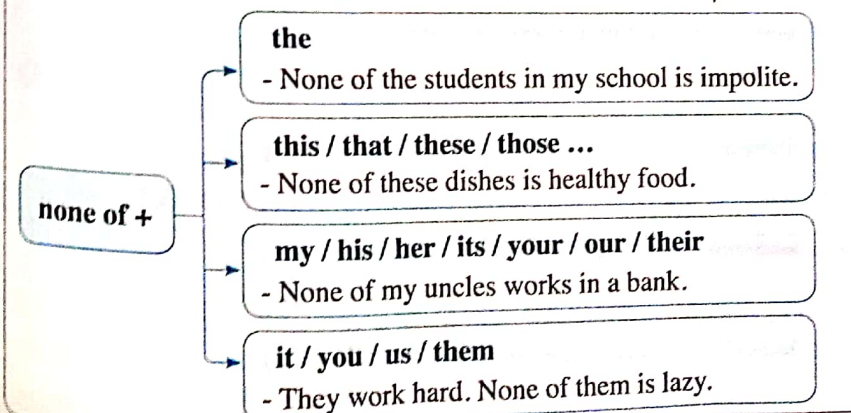
لاحظ أن (none) لا تحمل محل تُستخدم بمعنى (no one - nobody) في حالات مثل:

- There was a terrible accident, however **no one** was injured. (Not: none was)
- This old man looks very poor and weak, but **nobody** has offered to help. (Not: none have)

② عندما يكون الضمير (none) فاعل الجملة نستخدم بعده فعل مفرد أو جمع حسب الاسم الذي يشير إليه:

- I looked for **milk** in the fridge. **None was** there.
- Don't depend on false **friends**. **None help** in need. (Not: helps)

③ لاحظ استخدام (none of) قبل أداة التعريف (the) وصفات الإشارة وصفات الملكية وضمائر المفعول:



نستخدم (any) وليس (none) إذا كانت الجملة منفية بالفعل بـ (not - n't):
 - I didn't see any of them. (Not: none of them)
 عند الإشارة إلى شخصين أو شيئين نستخدم (neither of) وليس (none of):
 - Rodayna and Malak were busy studying their lessons. Neither of them talked to the other. (Not: None of them)
 في اللغة الرسمية يتم استخدام فعل مفرد بعد (none of):

- None of the boys has arrived yet. (Not: ... have arrived)
 - None of the little girls helps with the housework. (Not: ... help with ...)
 في اللغة الدارجة يتم استخدام فعل جمع أو مفرد بعد (none of):
 - None of the boys have arrived yet. (Or: ... has arrived)
 - None of the little girls help with the housework. (Or: ... helps with ...)

ملاحظة: في الامتحانات الرسمية يُعتمد بقواعد اللغة الرسمية وليس الدارجة:
 - None of the children awake when you called.
 a. was b. is c. were d. are

لا نستخدم (none) قبل الاسم مباشرة:
 - I saw none children in the park. (X)
 - I saw none of the children in the park. (✓)
 - I saw no children in the park. (✓)

No one

يستخدم الضمير (no one) بمعنى (لا أحد) كفاعل أو مفعول:
 - No one has called me today.
 - I found no one at home when I arrived.

يستخدم فعل مفرد بعد (no one) ويعود عليه ضمير جمع (they/them/their):
 - No one is at home. Where have they gone?
 - No one has supported her. She won't trust them anymore.
 - No one is to use their personal network. The school network is open.

Mini Test 6

Apply

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I have food ready for the baby.
 a. no b. none c. no one d. a & c

Starting again

- There're no in the school playground.
 a. student b. a student c. students' d. students
- I ate rice.
 a. not b. no c. none d. any
- I didn't eat rice.
 a. not b. no c. none d. any
- He lost his left arm in the accident. Now, he has no left
 a. an arm b. arms c. arm d. the arm
- I called three of my cousins, but replied.
 a. no b. none c. anyone d. not
- Sama offered me different cold drinks, but I didn't like
 a. any b. no c. not d. none
- Sama offered me different cold drinks, but I liked
 a. any b. no c. not d. none
- The meeting was held, but from our company attended it.
 a. no b. none c. no one d. not any
- The meeting was held, but of us attended it.
 a. no b. none c. no one d. any
- No one in our family the last decision.
 a. have supported b. are supporting c. support d. supports
- Thirty students are taking the exam right now. I expect none of them going to get the full mark.
 a. is b. are c. was d. were
- Are those your close friends? None agreed to help you!
 a. has b. have c. is d. are
- Haven't you said that the food is enough? None left and your sister hasn't eaten anything!.
 a. has b. have c. is d. are
- None of was asleep.
 a. a passenger b. passenger c. passengers d. the passengers
- None of neighbours is noisy or nosy.
 a. our b. ours c. us d. we

17. My friends were in a difficult situation. None of was in a good mood.

- a. they b. them c. their d. theirs
a. they b. none c. any d. no one

18. I can't give you more time. of them will be able to help.

- a. no b. Any c. None d. Neither
a. Not b. Any c. None d. Neither

19. Rokaya and Leen are both busy.

- a. No one b. None c. No d. Neither
a. No one b. None c. No d. Neither

20. in our family will support that evil person.

- a. No one b. her c. their d. its
a. his b. her c. their d. its

General Exercises On Language



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

I Getting Started

- students wear their school uniform.
a. Both b. All c. All of d. b & c
- the students wear their school uniform.
a. Both b. All c. All of d. b & c
- Egyptian citizens have roles in society.
a. All b. Both c. Half an d. Every
- Egyptian citizen has a role in society.
a. All b. Both c. Half an d. Every
- My school is kilometers from my house.
a. a little b. a few c. none of d. any
- of the houses was slightly different.
a. Every b. A little c. Some d. Each
- of the houses were slightly different.
a. Every b. A little c. Some d. Each
- you have to help me with the homework.
a. Some b. Some of c. A few d. None of
- you has to help me with the homework.
a. Some b. Some of c. A few d. None of

10. your books are on the desk.

- a. Each b. Each of c. No d. All

11. your books is on the desk.

- a. Each b. Each of c. No d. All

12. books are on the desk.

- a. Each b. Each of c. No d. None of

13. We need to work hard.

- a. every b. all of c. all d. neither

14. No member of my family ever travelled abroad.

- a. were b. haven't c. has d. hasn't

15. want to go home right now.

- a. Them both b. They each c. Both of they d. Both they

16. Don't forget to feed the children. Make sure you have fed

- a. all them b. all of them c. all they d. them of all

17. I called both Handy and Tarek, but replied.

- a. no one b. none c. no d. every

18. Some of the milk in the fridge already been drunk.

- a. is b. are c. has d. have

19. Some of the children already drunk their milk.

- a. is b. are c. has d. have

20. them works hard.

- a. Neither b. A few c. All of d. None of

21. All the food you may need in the fridge.

- a. is b. are c. has d. have

II Special Cases

22. of my parents are at home today because they are at work.

- a. Neither b. None c. Either d. All

23. We had to stand on the bus because seat was taken.

- a. all b. both c. either d. every

24. We had to stand on the bus because seats were taken.

- a. all b. both c. either d. every

25. Maysa has asked Mona and me to the park this afternoon, but

- a. both b. none c. neither d. all

26. Maysa has asked Mona, Mai and me to the park this afternoon, but of us can go. We are shopping.
a. both b. none c. neither d. all
27. player in the team was given a medal.
a. All b. Every c. Half of d. Both
28. All of are against my decision to leave my current job.
a. the family members b. the family member c. a family members d. family member
29. Not all the secretaries in this office hard.
a. work b. works c. doesn't work d. hasn't work
30. The two boys are young. them can travel on his own.
a. None b. None of c. Neither of d. Neither
31. The three boys are young. them can travel on his own.
a. None b. None of c. Neither of d. Neither
32. None of my brothers at home.
a. were b. weren't c. was d. wasn't
33. student wears their school uniform.
a. Both b. All c. Each d. All of
34. Neither of has broken the window with the ball.
a. a boy b. the boy c. the boys d. one boy
35. None of the two girls swim. They have never tried it.
a. don't b. doesn't c. can't d. can
36. charger worked, so I had to use my sister's charger.
a. Both b. No c. Either d. All
37. Two of my cousins visited us today. had a nice time.
a. They each b. Each they c. They every d. Every they
38. None of his family and his friends anything about his exam results.
a. knows b. know c. doesn't know d. don't know
39. Every in this class has received his or her books.
a. a student b. the student c. student d. students
40. of the twenty applicants for the job has studied abroad.
a. Every b. Either c. Both d. Each

41. The two players are doing badly in today's match since of them has trained well.
a. both b. all c. none d. neither

III Check your understanding

42. "They're very young children." This means they are
a. adults b. a little children c. a little child d. little children
43. "I have a little money on me." This means
a. I have no money on me. b. I don't have much money on me. c. I don't have any money on me. d. I have a lot of money on me.
44. "She has got few pounds." This means
a. she has got no pounds. b. she has got hardly any pounds c. she hasn't got many pounds. d. b & c
45. "He is carrying two bags;". Complete with the correct form.
a. one bag in every hand b. one bag in each hand c. one bag in both hands d. one bag in half hands
46. "Every one of us loves Egypt". What does this mean?
a. All of we love Egypt. b. All we love Egypt. c. None of us hates Egypt. d. Egypt loves all of we.
47. "Each of the two cars has different advantages". This means
a. every of the two cars has different advantages. b. the two cars each have different advantages. c. the two cars each has different advantages. d. the two cars either have different advantages.
48. "All students have mobile phones". I want to say that
a. every student has a mobile phone. b. each student has a mobile phone. c. all students have a mobile phone. d. a & b



Part I

Vocabulary & Definitions

• اختبر مدى إتقانك للمفردات الرئيسية في كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية.
• المفردات اللغوية باللون الأحمر هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية.

تنويه

المفردات الهامة Important Vocabulary

adventure(n)	مغامرة	lead - led (v)	يقود - يحيا - يؤدي
argument (n)	تبرير/ حجة - جدال	mentally(adv)	عقلياً/ ذهنيًا
builder(n)	عامل بناء	motivation(n)	دافع - حافز
care(d) (v/n)	يرعى - رعاية	necessarily(adv)	بالضرورة
celebrate(d) (v)	يحتفل بـ	optimistic(adj)	متفائل - تفاؤلي
challenge(n)	تحدي	passionate(adj)	شغوف - موع
conclude(d) (v)	يستنتج - يخلص إلى	physical(adj)	بدني/ جسدي
consider(ed) (v)	يضع في الاعتبار - يفكر في	physically(adv)	بدنيًا
contact(ed) (n/v)	تواصل/ اتصال - يتصل بـ	pointless(adj)	لا طائل منه
debate(n)	مناظرة - نقاش	refreshing(adj)	مُنعش - مُبشّر
elderly(adj)	كبير السن	rely(ied) (v)	يعتمد
exception(n)	استثناء	remain(ed) (v)	يبقى/ يظل
further(adj)	إضافي/ آخر	respect(ed) (n/v)	احترام - يحترم
generation(n)	جيل	retire(d) (v)	يتقاعد - يعتزل
grandchildren(n)	أحفاد	solution(n)	حل
grandparents(n)	أجداد	tough(adj)	صارم - شديد - عصيب
ignore(d) (v)	يتجاهل	translate as	تُترجم إلى
introduce(d) (v)	يُصدر - يُقدم	typical (adj)	نَمَطِيّ - نَمُودَجِيّ

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

Important vocabulary

- A child doesn't like it when you their requests.
a. ignore b. consider c. celebrate d. retire
- Your are your father's and mother's parents.
a. grandchildren b. grandparents c. debate d. argument

3. Most young people are about football. They're crazy about it.
a. typical b. tough c. pointless d. passionate
4. All students must wear the school uniform. You are no
a. motivation b. generation c. exception d. contribution
5. The last paragraph of an essay what has been written in it.
a. cares b. concludes c. contributes d. introduces
6. He can't remember anything. He is disabled.
a. elderly b. necessarily c. mentally d. physically
7. Being, he always looks at the positive side of everything.
a. optimistic b. refreshing c. stressed d. overworked
8. Your are the children of your children.
a. grandchildren b. grandpas c. grandmas d. grandparents
9. I find this argument We'll never reach an agreement.
a. typical b. flexible c. pointless d. passionate
10. The younger find it easy to deal with modern technology.
a. motivation b. generation c. exception d. contribution
11. The new law of education has been lately.
a. cared b. concluded c. contributed d. introduced
12. It is the right thing to respect people.
a. elderly b. necessarily c. mentally d. physically
13. There was a/an about combating air pollution held in our school yesterday.
a. grandchildren b. respect c. debate d. argument
14. We are Sama's birthday on July 7th. We are giving a big party.
a. ignoring b. considering c. celebrating d. retiring
15. This hot weather is not of January which is a cold winter month.
a. typical b. tough c. pointless d. passionate
16. My parents have made great to my personal and work life.
a. motivations b. generations c. exceptions d. contributions
17. It is common in Upper Egypt that the young for their grandparents.
a. care b. conclude c. contribute d. introduce
18. Being over 60 does not mean you cannot work.
a. elderly b. necessarily c. physical d. mental
19. The I had made did not persuade them to agree to my suggestion.
a. grandchildren b. respects c. debates d. arguments

20. The first thing to is to raise the staff's salaries. It is an urgent demand.
a. ignore b. consider c. celebrate d. retire
21. Times are being for me. I've lost my job and my father is very ill.
a. typical b. tough c. pointless d. passionate
22. Nearly everyone needs It encourages him to go on facing difficulties.
a. motivation b. generation c. exception d. contribution
23. Volunteers their time and effort to charity work.
a. care b. conclude c. contribute d. introduce
24. He can't use one of his hands. He is disabled.
a. elderly b. necessarily c. mentally d. physically
25. Showing to others is good behaviour.
a. grandchildren b. respect c. debate d. argument
26. I think one should not as long as they are mentally and physically able to work.
a. ignore b. consider c. celebrate d. retire
27. The cool wind felt
a. optimistic b. refreshing c. stressed d. overworked

Part II Vocabulary Study

تتويبه ساعد فعلكم على الارتقاء بمستواكم عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مسبقاً بشكل جيد.

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

celebrate	the contributions	keep	active
	يحتفل بإسهامات		يظل نشيطاً
do	physical work يقوم بعمل بدني	lead	a life عيش حياة
	volunteer work يقوم بعمل تطوعي		a contribution to يُقدم إسهام لـ
get	older يكبر في السن	make	an argument يُقدم تبريراً
give	reasons for يعطي مبررات لـ		يفتقد الأصدقاء
have	a tough time يمر بوقت عصيب	miss	respect يُظهر الاحترام
	contact لديه تواصل	show	a look يلقي نظرة
introduce	laws يُصدر قوانين	take	

Mini Test 1 Collocations

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- It is the authority of the parliament to new laws or modify old ones.
a. take b. introduce c. get d. show
- We all value the so many contributions you've to our society.
a. done b. made c. had d. missed
- My father has older and weaker.
a. taken b. introduced c. got d. shown
- A party is being given to the contributions of Mr Nasser on the occasion of his retirement.
a. give b. lead c. make d. celebrate
- When I am away, I my family and friends very much.
a. do b. make c. have d. miss
- I want to another look at the car before I decide on buying it.
a. take b. introduce c. get d. show
- Pardon me! I can't any reasons for my decision.
a. give b. lead c. make d. celebrate
- I will never forget the tough time I when I was infected with corona virus.
a. did b. made c. had d. missed
- It is good behaviour to respect to the elderly.
a. take b. introduce c. get d. show
- Homeless children a life of misery.
a. give b. lead c. make d. celebrate
- physical work helps you keep fit.
a. Doing b. Making c. Introducing d. Missing

2 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات ومصطلحات

a long-distance runner
after all,
aged over 65
care homes
continue working into
do whatever they want

عُدًا، مسافات طويلة
برغم كل ذلك - في النهاية
عمره أكثر من ٦٥ عام
دور الرعاية
يستمر في العمل حتى يصل إلى
يفعلون ما يريدون

in other ways
keep you healthy
life experiences
make it harder
of her age
post on social media

طرق أخرى
تبقىك بصحة جيدة
تجارب الحياة
يجعل ... أصعب
من نفس عمرها
نشر على وسائل التواصل

elderly people
have very little contact with
International Day for Older Persons
United Nations (UN)

كبار السن
لديه تواصل قليل مع
اليوم العالمي لكبار السن
الأمم المتحدة

see ... in a more positive light
show respect for
typical of
United Nations (UN)

بري ... منظور أكثر إيجابية
نُظير الاحترام لـ
مثال نموذجي لـ
الأمم المتحدة

3 Synonymous Expressions تعبيرات مترادفة

from my point of view = in my opinion	من وجهة نظري	take it easy = take things easy = relax	أأخذ الأمور ببساطة - تَوَلَّى عليك
further reason = In addition	وهناك سبب إضافي وهو	the first thing to consider = First of all	أول شيء - يوضع في الاعتبار
get to = reach = fulfil = achieve	يحقق	the over 70s = the people who are over 70 years old	الأشخاص الذين تتجاوز أعمارهم ٧٠ عاماً
owing to = because of	بسبب	To conclude = In conclusion	والخلاصة هي - نستنتج أن
passionate about = very keen on = very enthusiastic about = addicted to	لديه شغف به	to some extent = partly	إلى حد ما
rely on = depend on = count on	يعتمد على - يُعَوِّل على	we cannot ignore = Don't forget that	لا يمكن أن نتجاهل أن

4 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

agree with	يتفق مع	learn from	يتعلم من
contribute to / towards + n / (inf.+ing)	يساهم في	see ... as	بري ... كـ / يعتبر ... كـ
disagree with	يختلف مع	speak to	يتحدث إلى
help ... with	يساعد ... في	translate as	يمكن ترجمته كـ

Mini Test 2 Expressions, Prepositions & Idioms

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
- Although most people retire from work at the age of sixty, they can contribute other ways to their society.
a. to b. in c. of d. from
 - Which of the following give a meaning near to "A further reason"?
a. Don't forget that b. In addition c. First of all d. In conclusion

3. Ayman is very about football. He adores it.
a. proud b. popular c. positive d. enthusiastic
4. 'Care ' means nearly the same as 'look after'.
a. of b. off c. for d. after
5. It is a great success to your goals.
a. get to b. reach c. achieve d. a, b & c
6. "My flight was cancelled owing to bad weather." In this context, 'owing to' can be replaced by
a. because of b. because of c. a & b d. as a result
7. If you want to express an opinion, you can start with ".....".
a. From my point of view, ... c. Owing to the fact that ...
b. As a matter of fact, ... d. It is an unquestioned truth that ...
8. When you trust someone or something to do what you need or expect them to do, this means you them.
a. help with b. rely on c. distrust d. see as
9. Coronavirus vaccine is seen a sort of protective measures.
a. about b. in c. by d. as
10. The closing paragraph of an essay can start with
a. To conclude b. In conclusion c. a & b d. In addition
11. Which of the following gives the meaning of 'We cannot ignore ...'?"
a. Don't forget that b. In addition c. First of all d. In conclusion
12. These exercises are typical Mr Mohammed's work.
a. for b. at c. of d. by
13. Some elderly people continue working their 70s.
a. with b. of c. on d. into
14. All my teachers have contributed my success.
a. from b. towards c. with d. onto

5 Clear the Confusion

لاحظ الفرق

The + adj

- نستخدم (the) قبل صفة ليس بعدها الاسم الموصوف فإن هذه الصفة تتحول تعمل على الاسم الجمع:
- We should show respect to elderly people.
= We should show respect to the elderly.
- نستخدم هذه الصيغة كفاعل فإن الفعل بعدها يكون في صيغة الجمع:
- The elderly are looked after by their grandchildren. (Not: The elderly is ...)
- The over 70 have an important role to play. (Not: The over 70 has ...)

Whether or not

تُستخدم (whether or not) بمعنى (سواء ... أم لا) لربط عبارتين، وهي أقرب في بناء جملتها للجملة الشرطية التي تبدأ ب (if):
سواء ... أم لا

• Whether or not + جملة

- Whether or not you like it, I'm going to drive to Alexandria.
- Whether he agrees or not, he'll clean his room

Translate

• translate from ... into ...

... يُترجم من ... إلى

- Rodayna can translate from Arabic into English.

• translate into ... from ...

... يُترجم إلى ... من

- Rodayna can translate into English from Arabic.

• translate as...

... تُعطي معني ... / يمكن ترجمتها

- 'Sham El-Nassim' translates as something like 'Spring Festival'.

Collective Nouns

الأسماء التالية تُسمى الأسماء الكُلية، أي أنها في صيغة المفرد تدل على جمع ويمكن أن تأخذ فعل مفرد أو جمع:

team / group / staff هيئة / union اتحاد / population سكان / the government / family / company / committee اللجنة / the majority الأغلبية / The minority الأقلية / فصل class / الجيش army / the youth أو العامة / the public / القوات navy / عصاية gang / حشد crowd / طاقم سفينة أو طائرة crew / زوج couple / الجمهور audience / هيئة مستشارين council / البحرية university

- My team has won the cup.
- My team have won the cup.

وتأخذ الكلمات السابقة فعل جمع إذا أُستخدِمت معها (who / whom) أو أي ضمير جمع، أما إذا استخدمنا معها (which/it) فهي تأخذ فعل مفرد:

- The group who did the research were honoured yesterday.
- The group which did the research was honoured yesterday.

Mini Test 3 Clear the Confusion

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The group set its goal.
a. have b. has c. is d. are

2. The group set their goal.
a. have b. has c. is d. are
3. The Arabic 'Hekma' translates 'wisdom'.
a. on b. to c. from d. as
4. Whether or not my decision, I will never change it.
a. you liking b. liking c. you like d. likes
5. The disabled special talents.
a. have b. has c. was d. were

Part V

Reading

Reading Texts

How different societies around the world view older people (WB page 16)

You probably see your grandparents⁽¹⁾ every week, or maybe⁽²⁾ they live with you and your parents. However, in some countries, young people see their grandparents less often, even though this is not something they enjoy contact⁽³⁾ with older people. Let's take a look⁽⁴⁾ at why this is, and how older people are seen around the world.



Check Vocabulary

- (1) أجداد
(2) ربما
(3) تواصل/اتصال
(4) ألقني نظرة
(5) يحتفل بـ
(6) مساهمات
(7) احترام
(8) نترجم إلي
(9) اهتم
(10) كبير السن

The United Nations has the International Day for Older Persons each October, which celebrates⁽⁵⁾ the contributions⁽⁶⁾ that older people make to society. In fact, many countries already show their respect⁽⁷⁾ for older people in the way they speak to them. For example, many African languages use the word mzee before an older person's name to show them respect. In Japan, the suffix -san is used in the same way. In Hawaiian, older people are called kupuna, which translates as⁽⁸⁾ something like wisdom.

In Egypt, many elderly people are cared⁽⁹⁾ for by their children or other family members. This is the same in countries such as China, Japan and Korea, where around 75% of elderly⁽¹⁰⁾ people live with their adult children. However, this situation has changed in recent years. In some countries, many people have migrated to the cities to find work, which means they

Starting again

don't live near their family home. Consequently, some people are not able to look after⁽¹¹⁾ their parents when they get older⁽¹²⁾ the way they would like to. Fortunately, technology has helped younger people who live far away to contact their elderly parents on a regular basis. They can now chat with them through video calls or communicate daily through social media. This is a good way of communication, especially during the coronavirus pandemic, when it was better to take care of the elderly without actually visiting and coming into physical contact with them.

(11) يرعى

(12) يكبر في السن

A@raufb: It's great that the writer's grandma is still able to do volunteer work⁽¹⁾ and learn new things, but I don't think she's typical of⁽²⁾ most people of her age⁽³⁾, who just want to stay at home and take it easy⁽⁴⁾. Our society is organised⁽⁵⁾ in such a way that the over - 70s are asked to stay inactive and not to do much work. They retire⁽⁶⁾ try to enjoy life. So, I think the discussion⁽⁷⁾ about whether or not this group contributes⁽⁸⁾ to society is a bit pointless⁽⁹⁾.

(SB page 31)

Check Vocabulary

- (1) يقوم بعمل تطوعي
(2) نموذج لـ
(3) من نفس العمر
(4) يأخذ الأمور ببساطة
(5) يُنظم
(6) يتقاعد
(7) نقاش
(8) يُساهم
(9) لا طائل منه

B @silvo: I really enjoyed this article. It was so refreshing⁽¹⁾ to hear an optimistic⁽²⁾ story about a member of the older generation⁽³⁾ who's keeping active and still looking for new challenges⁽⁴⁾ and adventures⁽⁵⁾. 😊 Maybe in the past, people thought that you were old when you were over 70, but now it isn't seen as being very old any more and most people have to work until they're 67 or even older anyway.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) مُنْعِش - مُبَشِّر
(2) متفائل - تفاؤلي
(3) جيل
(4) تحديات
(5) مغامرات

C @thomato: I think it's an interesting debate⁽¹⁾ whether or not people can still make a contribution to society when they're older. One big advantage that many over-70s have is that they don't have to work any more so they can spend their time on things that they're passionate⁽²⁾ about and many of them help to look after their grandchildren⁽³⁾ too. Of course, most people aren't as physically⁽⁴⁾ active as they used to be at that age, but they can still contribute⁽⁵⁾ in other ways.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) مناظرة - نقاش
(2) شغوف - مُؤَلِّع
(3) أحفاد
(4) بدنياً
(5) يُساهم

Why people over 65 should continue to work

From my point of view, some people aged over 65 should continue to work if they want to - but not all of them. I'll explain why I think this.

The first thing to consider⁽¹⁾ is the job that people do.

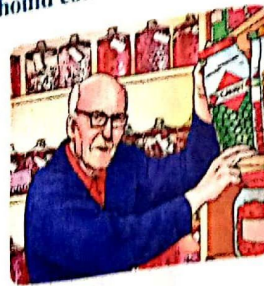
Many people enjoy their work,

so why should they stop when they get to⁽²⁾ 65? For example, in Scotland, 79-year-old Tom Swan has worked in a shop for 60 years. He enjoys meeting the people who come in.

A further⁽³⁾ reason is that work can keep you healthy.⁽⁴⁾ Brian Denney from England helps older people with their money, although he is 82! He thinks that he would be less healthy mentally⁽⁵⁾ and physically if he stayed at home all day.

However, we cannot ignore⁽⁶⁾ the fact that it is not possible for all people to continue working, for example, builders.⁽⁷⁾ Owing to⁽⁸⁾ the physical⁽⁹⁾ work they do every day, they would not be able to continue working into their 70s or older.

To conclude,⁽¹⁰⁾ I believe people should be able to continue working if they are able to and want to, but I also realise that this is not possible in some jobs and for some people.



(WB page 17)

Check Vocabulary

- (1) وضع في الاعتبار
- (2) وصل علي
- (3) إضافي/آخر
- (4) وبذلك وبصفة جيدة
- (5) عقلياً/ذهنياً
- (6) يتجاهل
- (7) عمال البناء
- (8) بسببها
- (9) بدني/جسدي
- (10) والخلاصة هي

Part IV

Language

الأزمنة السردية (الروائية)

الأزمنة السردية (الروائية) - أو بعبارة أخرى أزمنة الماضي - هي الأزمنة التي تُستخدم في سرد القصص أو الأحداث الخاصة بالماضي، وهذه الأزمنة هي:

1 Past Simple الماضي البسيط

- I bought a tablet last month. I paid 9,000 in cash for it

2 Past continuous الماضي المستمر

- I was waiting for the bus when my mobile rang.

3 Past perfect الماضي التام

- By midnight, everyone at home had gone to bed.

4 Past perfect continuous الماضي التام المستمر

- Mum had been helping my sister with her homework, so she didn't have time to call you to bed.

وأحياناً يُعتبر المضارع التام أحد الأزمنة السردية، هذا وقد تم شرح جميع هذه الأزمنة واستخداماتها في الوحدة 9 الأولى والثانية وستكتفي هنا بالتمهيدات العامة.

المضارع البسيط يمكن استخدامه كأحد الأزمنة السردية وسيتم شرح ذلك في الوحدة (12)

General Exercises On Language

Apply

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

I Getting Started

1. They to spend the feast with us every year until we moved.
a. use b. are used c. have used d. used (1-1 م. أولي)
2. When he arrived in Cairo, he English for 6 years. (2-10 السودان)
a. had studied b. had been studying
c. has studied d. has been studying
3. While I home, I saw some of my friends. (2-11 السودان م. أولي)
a. am walking b. was walking c. had walked d. walk
4. I the book you lent me and I'm really enjoying it. (2-13 م. أولي)
a. will be reading b. had read c. have been reading d. will read
5. I the book you lent me and I really found it enjoyable.
a. will be reading b. read
c. have been reading d. will read
6. After the house painted, we furnished it. (3-11 السودان)
a. had b. had been c. has been d. is
7. We arrived an hour late. The play half an hour earlier.
a. began b. was beginning c. had begun d. has begun
8. The Romans Petra nearly two thousand years ago.
a. have captured b. was captured c. captured d. had captured
9. Petra nearly two thousand years ago.
a. have captured b. was captured c. captured d. had captured

10. When I was younger, I go swimming every day.
a. usually b. used c. use d. used to
11. I already read some of Dickens's novels before I learnt about him in class.
a. have b. had c. had been d. was
12. Some of Dickens's novels read by me before learning about him in class.
a. have b. had c. had been d. was
13. Many of the students questions for the teacher before he arrived.
a. had prepared b. have prepared
c. was preparing d. had been prepared
14. What when the lights went out last night?
a. were you been done b. had you been done
c. have you been doing d. were you doing
15. While he was working as an assistant to a famous lawyer, he himself as a legal writer.
a. establishes b. established
c. had established d. has established
16. President Sadat's biography by Anees Mansour.
a. was written b. were written c. wrote d. had been written
17. She a teacher before she became a journalist.
a. had been b. has been c. was being d. will be
18. Amir had some injuries. It looked as if he in a fight.
a. had been b. being c. has been d. was being
19. Amir has some injuries. It looks as if he in a fight.
a. had been b. being c. has been d. was being
20. The kitchen was full of steam. Mum a huge meal for the guests.
a. had cooked b. has cooked
c. has been cooking d. had been cooking
21. The kitchen is full of steam. Mum a huge meal for the guests.
a. had cooked b. has cooked
c. has been cooking d. was cooking
22. Somebody all the juice. The bottle is empty.
a. is drinking b. has drunk c. drinks d. had drunk

23. Somebody all the juice. The bottle was empty.
a. is drinking b. has drunk c. drinks d. had drunk
24. I had loved green landscapes as long as I could remember.
a. for b. since c. such d. when
25. When El-Moasser page on the Facebook?
a. did you join b. were you joined
c. joined d. you joined
26. Yasmeen finished her studies before she to the USA for a year.
a. had been going b. was going c. had gone d. went
27. The children their drawings before they hung them up.
a. are colouring b. have coloured c. coloured d. had coloured
28. When we finished our meal, Amr on paying the bill.
a. has insisted b. had been insisting
c. had insisted d. insisted

II Special Cases

29. After painted, the house was furnished.
a. has been b. had been c. having d. being
30. painted, the house was furnished.
a. Had b. Had been c. Having been d. Being
31. Having the shopping, mother started to prepare lunch. (دور ثان حديث ٢٠١٥)
a. do b. she did c. she does d. done
32. You read the newspaper article about farming, you? (د. م. اولي ٢٠١٣)
a. haven't b. didn't c. have d. aren't
33. I'm sure you me, did you?
a. weren't understanding b. understood
c. didn't understand d. hadn't understood
34. I'd rather you this car. It's a bargain. (نموذج الوزارة الثاني ٢٠١٤)
a. buy b. to buy c. bought d. will buy
35. I to spend the summer holiday in Alexandria when suddenly my sister suddenly fell ill. (د. م. اولي ٢٠١٣)
a. had been planning b. have been planning
c. had planned d. have planned
36. seeing a lion, I feel frightened.
a. When b. On c. After d. a & b

37. seeing the lion. I felt frightened.
 a. When b. On c. After d. a & b
38. What time up yesterday morning?
 a. you got b. did you get
 c. were you getting d. had you got
39. They felt bad about selling the house because they it for more than sixty years.
 a. were owning b. had been owning
 c. have owned d. had owned
40. Our homes now have more equipment than they
 a. used to be b. use c. used to d. use to
41. It was a bit embarrassing to arrive at their house and find Sama looking so sad. I think she for a while before we got there.
 a. had been crying b. had cried c. was crying d. has been crying
42. While his essay, Omar noticed that it was too long.
 a. was revising b. revising c. was revised d. being revised
43. While, Omar's essay seemed too long.
 a. was revising b. revising c. was revised d. being revised
44. Those old stories are still by many children today.
 a. loved b. loving c. being loved d. love
45. When I got to work this morning, I got angry as I saw that no one yet.
 a. arrived b. has arrived c. had arrived d. had been arriving
46. No one even noticed when I arrived home. They the final match on TV.
 a. has been watching b. had been watching
 c. were watching d. had watched

III Check your understanding

47. "On arriving home, I saw that everybody else had returned home already." Which was the first action to occur in this sequence?
 a. My arrival home.
 b. Everybody's arrival home.
 c. Seeing that Everybody had returned home.
 d. Everybody else's arrival home.

48. "I called my father who was busy on another call." Which was the last action to occur in this sequence?
 a. My call to my father.
 b. My father's call to someone else.
 c. Someone else's call to my father.
 d. b & c
49. Which of the following is correctly structured?
 a. My car was breaking down before I reached my office.
 b. My car has broken down before I reached my office.
 c. My car had broken down before I reached my office.
 d. My car had broken down before I reach my office
50. Which of the following is correctly structured?
 a. When arriving at school, I attend the morning assembly.
 b. While arriving at school, I attended the morning assembly.
 c. On arriving at school, I attended the morning assembly.
 d. a & c
51. Which of the following is correctly structured?
 a. I was used to get up early. b. I grew used to getting up early.
 c. I became used to get up early. d. I used to getting up early.
52. Which of the following is correctly structured?
 a. I wish I am a football star. b. I wish I will be a football star.
 c. I wish I were a football star. d. I wish I has been a football star.
53. "I used to study physics." This means that
 a. I no longer study physics. b. I have studied physics.
 c. I am still studying physics. d. I am getting used studying physics.
54. Mum looked utterly exhausted.
 a. She had already done nothing. b. She had been doing the housework.
 c. She had done the housework. d. She has been doing the housework.
55. While being examined,
 a. I stopped the child from moving.
 b. the doctor stopped the child from moving.
 c. mum stopped the child from moving.
 d. the child was stopped from moving.



Part I

Vocabulary & Definitions

• هذا الجزء خاص بالمفردات والتعبيرات الرئيسية للقصة، لقراءة نص القصة المقررة وللازيد من المفردات اللغوية والتدريبات نهاية الكتاب.

تلويه

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

boast(ed) (v)	يتباهى / يتفاخر بـ	desert(ed) (v)	يهجر - يترك
catch - caught (v)	يقبض علي	fear for	يخشى علي
commit(ted) (v)	يرتكب / يقترب - يقوم بـ	my heart sinks	ينتابني اليأس
confirm(ed) (v)	يؤكد أن	night watchman	حارس ليلي
criminal(n/adj)	مُجرِم - إجرامي	permanently(adv)	علي الدوام
crouch(ed) (v)	يجلس القرفصاء		

2 Definitions تعريفات

لابد من قراءة التعريفات التالية جيدًا، فهي موضع امتحان.

تلويه

boast (v)	يتباهى / يتفاخر بـ	to talk too proudly about your abilities, achievements, or possessions	ممتلكات
catch (v)	يقبض علي	to find a criminal or enemy and stop them from escaping	
commit (v)	يرتكب / يقترب - يقوم بـ	to do something wrong or illegal	غير قانوني
confirm (v)	يؤكد أن	to show that something is definitely true, especially by providing more proof	
criminal(n)	مُجرِم	someone who is involved in illegal activities or has been proved guilty of a crime	متورط
crouch(down) (v)	يجلس القرفصاء	to lower your body close to the ground by bending your knees completely	
desert (v)	يهجر - يترك	to leave someone or something and no longer help or support them	
fear for	يخشى علي	to feel afraid or worried that something bad is going to happen to someone or something	

my heart sinks
night watchman(n)
يشتاقني اليأس
حارس ليلي

I lose hope or confidence
someone whose job is to guard a building at night

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- To is to show that something is definitely true, especially by providing more proof.
a. crouch b. catch c. desert d. confirm
- A is someone who is involved in illegal activities or has been proved guilty of a crime.
a. criminal b. night watchman c. heart d. contribution
- To is to leave someone or something and no longer help or support them.
a. crouch b. catch c. desert d. confirm
- My means that I lose hope or confidence.
a. criminal b. night watchman c. heart sinks d. contribution
- To is to talk too proudly about your abilities, achievements, or possessions.
a. boast b. catch c. commit d. fear
- To is to find a criminal or enemy and stop them from escaping.
a. crouch b. catch c. desert d. confirm
- To is to do something wrong or illegal.
a. boast b. catch c. commit d. fear
- To is to be afraid or worried that something bad is going to happen to someone or something.
a. boast b. catch c. commit d. fear
- To is to lower your body close to the ground by bending your knees completely.
a. crouch b. catch c. commit d. fear
- A is someone whose job is to guard a building at night.
a. criminal b. night watchman c. heart d. contribution

Part II

Skills

المهارات الخاصة بالوحدة تم شرحها متبوعة بالتدريبات في ملحق (Master your skills) كل وحدة علي حدة.

تقوية

Translation الترجمة

① Choose the best Arabic translation :

- One big advantage that many over-70s have is that they don't have to work any more so they can spend their time on things that they're passionate about.
أ. إحدى الميزات الكبيرة التي يتمتع بها العديد من الأشخاص الذين تزيد أعمارهم عن ٧٠ عامًا هي أنهم غير مضطرين إلى العمل حتى يتمكنوا من قضاء وقتهم في الأشياء التي يحبونها.
ب. إحدى الميزات الكبيرة التي يتمتع بها العديد من الأشخاص الذين تزيد أعمارهم عن ٧٠ عامًا هي أنهم غير مضطرين إلى العمل، لذلك فهم يستطيعون قضاء وقتهم في الأشياء التي يحبونها.
ج. إحدى الميزات الكبيرة التي يتمتع بها العديد من الأشخاص الذين تزيد أعمارهم عن ٧٠ عامًا هي أنهم مضطرين إلى العمل، لذلك فهم يستطيعون قضاء وقتهم في الأشياء التي يحبونها.
د. إحدى الميزات الكبيرة التي يتمتع بها العديد من الأشخاص الذين تزيد أعمارهم عن ٧٠ عامًا هي أنهم لم يعدوا مضطرين إلى العمل، لذلك فهم يستطيعون قضاء وقتهم في الأشياء التي يحبونها.
- According to experts, people who have business experience are always more successful as entrepreneurs than people who do not have it.
أ. وفقًا للخبراء، فإن الأشخاص الذين لديهم خبرة في الأعمال يكونون أحيانًا أكثر نجاحًا كرواد أعمال من الأشخاص الذين ليس لديهم خبرة.
ب. وفقًا للخبراء، فإن الأشخاص الذين لديهم خبرة في الأعمال يكونون دائمًا أكثر نجاحًا كرواد أعمال من الأشخاص الذين ليس لديهم خبرة.
ج. وفقًا للخبراء، فإن الأشخاص الذين ليس لديهم خبرة في الأعمال يكونون دائمًا أكثر نجاحًا كرواد أعمال من الأشخاص الذين ليس لديهم خبرة.
د. وفقًا للخبراء، فإن الأشخاص الذين لديهم خبرة في الأعمال يكونون دائمًا أكثر نجاحًا كرواد أعمال من الأشخاص الذين ليس لديهم خبرة.
- Common sense is the ability to behave in a sensible way and make practical decisions.
أ. إن حُسن التصرف هو القدرة على التصرف بطريقة معقولة واتخاذ قرارات علمية.
ب. إن حُسن التصرف هو القدرة على التصرف بطريقة معقولة واتخاذ قرارات غير عملية.
ج. إن حُسن التصرف هو القدرة على التصرف بطريقة معقولة واتخاذ قرارات عملية.
د. إن حُسن التصرف هو القدرة على التصرف بطريقة معقولة واتخاذ قرارات غير عملية.

4. We cannot ignore the fact that some people who are over seventy are not as healthy and, therefore, not as active as younger people.

لا يمكننا تجاهل حقيقة أن بعض الأشخاص الذين تزيد أعمارهم عن السبعين ليسوا بصحة جيدة، وبالتالي ليسوا نشيطين مثل الشباب.

ب. لا يمكننا تجاهل حقيقة أن بعض الأشخاص الذين تزيد أعمارهم عن السبعين ليسوا بصحة جيدة، وبالتالي ليسوا نشيطين مثل الشباب.

ج. لا يمكننا تجاهل حقيقة أن الأشخاص الذين تزيد أعمارهم عن السبعين ليسوا بصحة جيدة، وبالتالي ليسوا نشيطين مثل الشباب.

د. لا يمكننا تجاهل حقيقة أن بعض الأشخاص الذين تزيد أعمارهم عن السبعين ليسوا بصحة جيدة، وبالتالي فهم نشيطين مثل الشباب.

② Choose the best English translation :

١. في أي نظام جديد يتم تطبيقه لابد من الوقوع في بعض الأخطاء التي يتم تصويبها وصولاً إلى الشكل الأمثل.

a. In any new system that is folded, there must be some errors that are corrected in order to reach the optimal form.

b. In any new system that is applied, there must be some errors that correct in order to reach the optimal form.

c. In any new system that is applied, there must be some errors that are corrected in order to reach the optimal form.

d. In any new system that is appealed, there must be some errors that are corrected in order to reach the optimal form.

٢. إذا أخطأت فلا تيأس وتستسلم، بل عليك أن تتعلم من أخطائك وأن تحاول مراراً وتكراراً وستصل لهدفك في النهاية.

a. If you make a mistake, do not despair and give up. You should learn from your mistakes and try again and again, and you will reach your goal in the end.

b. If you do a mistake, do not despair and give up. You should learn from your mistakes and try again and again, and you will reach your goal in the end.

c. If you make a mistake, do not despair and give in. You should learn from your mistakes and try again and again, and you will reach your goal in the end.

d. If you make a mistake, do not despair and give up. You should learn from your mistakes and try again and again, and you will teach your goal in the end.

٣. لكبار السن قيمة كبيرة لا تُقدَّر بثمن، فيكفي خبراتهم الكبيرة التي اكتسبوها من المواقف الكثيرة التي عايشوها.

a. The elderly has a great and inestimable value. The great experiences they have gained from the many situations they have lived through are sufficient for them.

b. The elderly have a great and inestimable value. The great experiences they have gained from the many situations they have experienced are sufficient.

c. The elderly have a great and inestimable availability. The great experiences they have gained from the many situations they have lived through are sufficient for them.

d. The elderly have a great and estimable value. The great experiences they have gained from the many situations they have lived through are sufficient for them.

٤. علي الشباب حديثي التخرج الانخراط في الحياة العملية في أسرع وقت ممكن، فذلك سيساعدهم على اكتساب خبرات العمل مبكراً.

a. New graduates should engage in working life as long as possible, as this will help them gain work experience early.

b. Fresh graduates should engage in working life as soon as impossible, as this will help them gain work experience early.

c. New graduates should engage in working life as soon as possible, as this will help them gain work experience early.

d. Fresh graduates should engage in working life as soon as possible, as this will help them do work experience early.

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Omar found that working as a volunteer was a life-..... experience. Now he started a new charity in his neighbourhood.
a. wisdom b. changing c. knowledge d. ingredient
2. So many modern make money from the internet of things.
a. quantifiers b. banking c. entrepreneurs d. potentials
3. Setting achievable goals is an important of success.
a. bubble b. chance c. ingredient d. pandemic
4. This pays specific attention to the physical fitness of the members of his team.
a. inventor b. coach c. entrepreneur d. potential
5. is the way that someone is changing or developing their working life.
a. Working knowledge b. Contribution
c. Life experience d. Career direction
6. Not all members of the staff liked the latest decisions their employer has
a. gained b. made c. built d. done
7. "Use your common sense if something goes wrong." In this sentence, common sense is an antonym of
a. folly b. wit c. wisdom d. b & c
8. She did not have enough She shouldn't have decided while she was angry.
a. wise b. wisely c. a & b d. wisdom
9. The eleven players are doing badly in today's match since of them has trained well.
a. both b. all c. none d. neither
10. sport has something special. I don't think I have a favourite.
a. All b. Half c. Either d. Every
11. I enjoy the moments I spend with you.
a. each b. each of c. all d. every of
12. None of us to look after the baby.
a. has b. have c. is d. a & c

13. I invited my friend to the party, but later I realised that I to give him the address.
a. forgot b. had forgotten c. has forgotten d. was forgotten
14. I got up thinking I was at my wedding with my beautiful bride. I then realised that it just a dream.
a. all was being b. has all been c. all been d. had all been
15. Arabic before you moved to Egypt, Ivanka?
a. You studied b. Do you study
c. Have you studied d. Had you ever studied
16. to the party by the Prince himself, we could hardly refuse to go.
a. Having been invited b. Having invited
c. Inviting d. Invitation

• Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Dear: Lee,

As I told you, I'll be gone until Wednesday morning. Thank you so much for taking on my "pets" while I'm away. Remember that Regina, my puppy, is teething. If you don't watch her, she'll chew anything, including the cat. There are plenty of chew toys around the house. Whenever she starts to bite on anything illegal, just divert her with one of those. She generally settles right down to a good hour-long chew. Then, you'll see her wandering around whimpering with the remains of the toy in her mouth. I usually show her the laundry basket, moving a few clothes so she can bury her toy beneath them.

I do sound like a parent, don't I?

Regina's food is in the utility room, where the other pet food is stored. Give her a bowl once in the morning and once in the evening. No more than that, no matter how much she begs. Beagles كلاب الصيد are known as overeaters, according to her breeder, and I don't want her to lose her girlish figure. She can share Rex (the King's) water, but be sure it's changed daily.

She needs to go out several times a day, especially last thing at night and first thing in the morning. Let her stay out for about ten minutes each time, so she can do all her business. She also needs a walk in

the afternoon, after which it's important to romp with her for a while in the yard. The game she loves most is fetch, but be sure to make her drop the ball. Tell her, "Sit!" Then, when she does, say, "Drop it!" Be sure to tell her "good girl," and then throw the ball for her. I hope you'll enjoy these sessions as much as I do.
Now, for the other two, Rex and Paws. (letter continues)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. The main idea of the passage is
 a. How to deal with Regina.
 b. Where can Lee romp with Regina?
 c. Regina is the writer's favourite pet?
 d. Regina is teething nowadays.
18. Regina's breeder asked her owner to feed her
 a. much food b. a certain meal c. little food d. a big meal
19. It can be inferred from the passage that it is to keep a dog.
 a. easy b. simple c. exhausting d. relaxing
20. If the sitter is to follow the owner's directions in playing fetch with Regina, at what point will he or she tell Regina "good girl"?
 a. Every time Regina goes after the ball.
 b. After Regina finds the ball.
 c. When Regina brings the ball back.
 d. After Regina drops the ball.
21. After reading the passage, we notice that the writer has pets.
 a. one b. four c. three d. two
22. The last paragraph represents
 a. what Regina eats b. how Regina eats
 c. what Regina needs d. where Regina sleeps
23. Domestic pets are
 a. safer than street animals
 b. more dangerous than street animals
 c. more dangerous than zoo animals
 d. a bit safer than forest animals
24. To follow Lee's orders, Regina needs
 a. punishment b. encouragement c. isolation d. separation

Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

There was once a man called Ali who was travelling home with his friends through a hot, dry land. It was the hottest month of the summer. On their way, they met a poor stranger, dressed in rags. He was hungry and thirsty and had no money. He asked if he could join them. The travellers felt sorry for him. They welcomed him, gave him a drink and continued their journey through the desert.

It was not long before they lost their way. The sun beat down even harder. The ground became more sandy and dusty. There were no rivers or springs in sight. There were no water wells nearby. Soon, their water began to run out. The situation was bad. They decided that the only way to survive was to ration the water that was left between them. Each day, each person drank just one small cupful when they stopped for the night. One evening, when it was Ali's turn to drink, he noticed the stranger staring at him. He immediately turned to the water-carrier and said to him, 'Give my water to my brother, the stranger.' The stranger drank Ali's share of the water, for he was very thirsty. Ali had nothing to drink. The next day the same thing happened again. Each day Ali became weaker and weaker.

One morning, the stranger called Ali to tell him it was time to get up and get on his camel. 'Get up, Ali. We are not far from water now. Soon you will be able to drink as much water as you like,' he said. Ali's friends looked at the stranger curiously. 'How do you know we are not far from water?' they asked. The stranger smiled. He picked Ali up and put him on a camel. 'Follow me, he told Ali's friends. They walked for a few kilometres. Then they stopped in astonishment. The stranger had repaid Ali's kindness. He had led them to an oasis!

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

25. What is the moral of this story?
 a. It's a necessity to drink much water in hot weather.
 b. We should always do the good even if it is unpaid.
 c. When you go into the desert, take more food and water with you.
 d. We should keep our things and don't give them to other people.
26. This text is
 a. narrative b. experimental c. descriptive d. historical

27. It can be inferred from the passage that

- a. the stranger had little water
- b. Ali was thirsty and hungry
- c. the stranger knew the desert well
- d. the travellers were cruel to the stranger

28. We can infer from the passage that the stranger was wearing clothes.

- a. fashionable
- b. modern
- c. old-fashioned
- d. old

29. Each person drank just one small cupful when they stopped for the night. This means that everyone drank

- a. no water
- b. a lot of water
- c. as much water as they like
- d. little water

30. At the end of the story, the stranger was to Ali.

- a. grateful
- b. dislikable
- c. hateful
- d. unthankful

31. Some people sacrifice for others, so they get at the end.

- a. water
- b. happiness
- c. money
- d. hatred

32. Which of the following sentences can summarise the last paragraph?

- a. Ali had been left no water to drink.
- b. The stranger paid back Ali's favour.
- c. Ali became more exhausted.
- d. The travellers repaid the stranger's kindness.

Choose the best Arabic translation :

33. Recently, Egypt tries hard to be one of the countries that have several tourist attractions.

لقد سعت مصر بقسوة في الفترة الأخيرة أن تكون واحدة من الدول التي لديها العديد من أسباب الانجذاب السياحي.

تسعى مصر بشدة مؤخرًا ألا تكون أحد من الدول التي توفر العديد من نتائج الجذب السياحي.

تحاول مصر بقوة في الفترة الأخيرة أن تكون أحد من الدول التي لديها العديد من عوامل الانجذاب السياحي.

تحاول مصر بشدة في الفترة الأخيرة أن تكون واحدة من الدول التي لديها العديد من عوامل الجذب السياحي.

34. It is clear that transplantation of human body organs has developed greatly through the recent years.

أصبح من المسلم به أن عمليات نقل أعضاء الجسم البشري قد تطورت كثيرًا خلال السنوات الأخيرة.

من الواضح أن عمليات نقل أعضاء الجسم البشري قد تطورت كثيرًا خلال السنوات الأخيرة.

أصبح من المؤكد أن عمليات نقل أعضاء الجسم البشري قد تطورت كثيرًا عبر السنوات الأخيرة.

من الواضح أن عمليات نقل الجسم البشري قد تنظير كثيرًا عبر السنوات الحديثة.

Choose the best English translation :

٣٥. أصبحت الطبيعة أحد أكبر أعداء الإنسان في الفترة الأخيرة، فهل تعتقد أن الطبيعة تتأثر مما فعل الإنسان بها؟

- a. Recently, nature has become one of man's biggest enemies. Do you think nature revenge what man has done with it?
- b. Nature is becoming one of the biggest enemies that man had lately. Do you think that nature revenges what man has done with it?
- c. Recently, nature has become one of man's biggest enemies. Do you think that nature revenges what man has done with it?
- d. Nature becomes one of the biggest enemies that man has lately. Do you think that nature revenge what man has done with it?

٣٦. نعلم جميعًا بأن أطفالنا هم من سيقوموا بتولى المسؤولية فيما بعد ، وهذه هي سنة الحياة.

- a. We all know that our children will take their responsibility afterwards and this is life normal.
- b. We all know that our children will leave the responsibility afterwards and this is life norm.
- c. We all know that our children will take the responsibility afterwards and this is life norm.
- d. We all know that our children will take the responsibility forwards and this is life normal.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

37. Which of the following has the correct ending punctuation mark?

- a. Haytham will attend the meeting, won't he?
- b. Haytham will attend the meeting, won't he!
- c. Haytham will attend the meeting, "won't he"
- d. Haytham will attend the meeting, won't he.

38. You should always

- a. write impolite things to the person you are emailing
- b. attach only necessary files to your email message
- c. ask for or give out personal information
- d. all of the above

39. In a formal email, you write ".....".

- a. Yes, I've got your massage
- b. see you
- c. no abbreviations
- d. all the above

40. What's the punctuation mark indicating a question called?

- a. A question tag
- b. A question word
- c. A question mark
- d. A question sign

Based On Units 7, 8 & 9

SB pages 36 : 41 WB pages 20 : 23

تنويه

تقييمات
تراكمية في
بنك الأسئلة

Part

I

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary & Derivatives المفردات الرئيسية والمشتقات

account (n)	حساب	life experience(n)	خبرات الحياة
agenda(n)	جدول أعمال - مصلحة	limit(n)	حدّ
assume(d) (v)	يفترض	mention(ed) (v)	يذكر
candidate(n)	مرشح لوظيفة	mistake(n)	خطأ
career direction(n)	التوجّه المهني	occasion(n)	مناسبة
career(n)	مهنة	opportunity(n)	فرصة
choice(n)	اختيار	overtime(n)	مع مرور الوقت
common sense(n)	حسن التدبّر	particular(adj)	خاص
consequences(n)	نتائج	passion(n)	شغف
consequently(adv)	لذلك/بالتالي	presenter(n)	مقدم
contribution(n)	مساهمة	purpose(n)	غرض
cycling(n)	قيادة الدراجة	pursue(d) (v)	يتحمّن - يتعقب - يسعى إلى
define(d) (v)	يُعرف	regard(ed) (v)	يعتبر
definition(n)	تعريف	reinvent	يُعيد تأهيل
effort(n)	جهد	responsibility(n)	مسؤولية
extent(n)	مدي	retire(d) (v)	يتقاعد
feedback(n)	تغذية راجعة/تعقيب	specific(adj)	محدد - مُعيّن
follow(ed) (v)	يتبع	success(n)	النجاح
furthermore(adv)	بالإضافة إلى	team player(n)	يجيد العمل ضمن فريق
helpfulness(n)	العون - الاستعداد للمساعدة	therefore(adv)	لذلك
hobby(n)	هواية	valuable(adj)	قيّم
independently(adv)	بشكل مستقل	wisdom(n)	حكمة
influence(d) (n/v)	تأثير		

1 Verbal Collocations متلزمات لفظية

avoid	prejudice	يتجنب التحيز	make	a better impression on	يترك انطباعاً أفضل عن
be	a success	يكون ناجحاً		a career in	مهنة ...
choose	a career direction	يختار توجهاً وظيفياً		a mistake	خطأ
do	a good job	يُبلّغ بلاءً حسناً		decisions	قرارات
	a training course	يأخذ دورة تدريبية		a contribution in	مساهمة ...
	an internship	يقضي فترة تدريب مهني	miss	opportunities	فرص
follow	your passion	اتبع حثك	pay	attention to	ولي اهتمام بـ
gain	life experience	يكسب خبرات حياتية	play	a greater role	دور أكبر
	a passion for	لديه شغف بـ	support	each other	بعض البعض
	an influence on	لديه تأثير على	take	a day off	بصل على يوم إجازة
have	little interest in	لديه اهتمام قليل بـ		time and energy	بذل الوقت والجهد
	their own agenda	لديهم مصالح خاصة	waste		

2 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a day off	يوم إجازة	in other words,	بعبارة أخرى
a part-time job	وظيفة بدوام جزئي	job title	السُّمِّي الوظيفي
allow ... to do	يُمكن ... أن يفعل ...	jobs connected to	وظائف مرتبطة بـ
apply for	يتقدم بطلب لـ	lead to people not doing	تؤدي إلى عدم قيام الناس بـ
as I mentioned earlier	كما ذكرت من قبل	limit to	حدود لـ
at a young age	في سن صغير	miss out on	الفرص - يُضَيِّع
be there for each other	يدعمون بعضهم البعض	on my own	دون مساعدة / بمفردي
care about	يهتم بـ	on this occasion	هذه المناسبة
change overtime	بتغير مع مرور الوقت	piece of wisdom	أول أو فعل حكيم
come through	يظهر - يبدو	put a lot of effort into	بذل مجهوداً كبيراً في
provide for themselves	يقررون بأنفسهم		

each other
feel like
focus on
for me
go on
hear ... in online talks
in general,

بعضنا البعض
يرغب في / يريد
يركز على
بالنسبة لي
يحدث
يسمع ... في نقاشات على الإنترنت
بصفة عامة

respond to
senior manager
take ... into account
the area I work in
the reason why
what is going on
work-life balance

يرد على
مدير أول
يضع ... في الاعتبار
نطاق عملي
السبب في أن
ما يحدث

التوازن بين الحياة العملية والحياة الشخصية

Reading

Reading Texts

Is 'follow your passion' good advice?

(SB page 36)

We see it on social media, hear it in online talks and some teachers say it to their students: 'Follow ⁽¹⁾ your passion' ⁽²⁾. In other words, decide what you really like doing and then find a job where you can do it. Is this a helpful piece of wisdom ⁽³⁾ that helps people choose a career ⁽⁴⁾ direction ⁽⁵⁾, or something which common sense ⁽⁶⁾ shows to be bad advice?

The reason why we're told to follow our passion is the belief that if you do a job you enjoy, you'll be happy. However, few people today do the same job until they retire ⁽⁷⁾. Most will have to reinvent ⁽⁸⁾ ourselves, so one passion isn't enough.

Also, if you focus on one passion and only apply for jobs connected to it, you could miss out on ⁽⁹⁾ other opportunities ⁽¹⁰⁾. These may be more interesting than the ones you're pursuing ⁽¹¹⁾ or help you to gain valuable ⁽¹²⁾ life experience.

We assume ⁽¹³⁾ young people all have a passion, but many don't. While they're worrying that they don't have a passion, many people miss opportunities to make a contribution ⁽¹⁴⁾ in other areas. Most of us need time and experience to realise what we love doing and this can change over time ⁽¹⁵⁾.

Check Vocabulary

- يتبع
- شغف
- حكمة
- مهنة
- توجه
- حسن التدبير
- يتقاعد
- يعيد تأهيل
- يُفوت / يُضَيِّع
- فرص
- يتحين / يتعقب
- يسعى إلى
- قيم
- يفترض
- مساهمة
- مع مرور الوقت

Definitions of success

(WB page 38)

Nehal : When I think of success, I think of being successful in the area I work in. I'm a news presenter⁽¹⁾, so for me, it's reporting the news and writing good news stories which tell people what is going on⁽²⁾ in the world.

Hassan : Success is something that's difficult to define⁽³⁾, but for me, it's about having a good work-life balance⁽⁴⁾. I need to work, but I also want to have enough time for my friends and to do things I enjoy outside work, like cycling⁽⁵⁾.

Zeinab : A lot of people think that success is working as hard as you can, but, in my opinion, it is about being able to take a day off⁽⁶⁾ to be with your family if you want to or having enough time for your favourite hobby⁽⁷⁾.

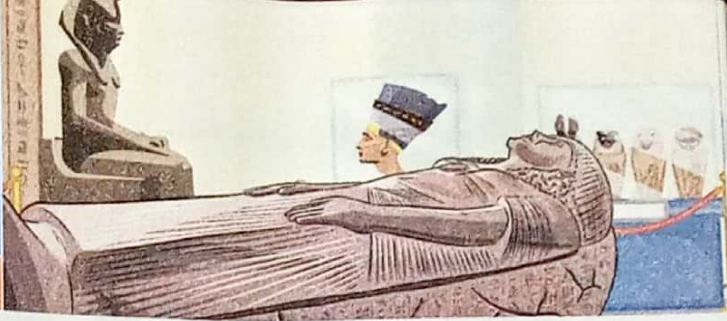
Omar : I feel like⁽⁸⁾ I am a success when I look at my wife and my children. We're all healthy and happy and we have a nice home to live in. We make each other⁽⁹⁾ laugh and support each other.

Tarek : For me, success is about my job title⁽¹⁰⁾. So, if you have a job title that shows you have a lot of responsibility⁽¹¹⁾, like 'Senior manager'⁽¹²⁾, that shows people that you're a success.

Emal : I think you know that you are successful when you have a lot of money in your bank account⁽¹³⁾. Then you can buy anything you want and do anything that you want.

Check Vocabulary

- | |
|--|
| (1) مقدم |
| (2) يحدث |
| (3) يعرف |
| (4) التوازن بين الحياة العملية والحياة الشخصية |
| (5) قيادة الدراجة |
| (6) يوم إجازة |
| (7) هواية |
| (8) يرغب أن |
| (9) بعضنا البعض |
| (10) المسمى الوظيفي |
| (11) مسئوليات |
| (12) مدير أول |
| (13) حساب |



Part I

Vocabulary & Definitions

- اختبر مدى اتقانك للمفردات الرئيسية في كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية.
- المفردات اللغوية باللون الأحمر هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية.

تنويه

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

bargain (n)	صفقة	landmark (n)	مَعْلَم بارز
column (n)	عمود	myth (n)	أسطورة / خُرافة
come across (phr. v)	يجد بالصدفة	pick up (phr. v)	يشتري (بسعر جيد)
dedicated (adj)	مُخَصَّص / مُكرَّس - متفاني	picturesque (adj)	خلاب - بديع المنظر
devoted (adj)	مُخَصَّص / مُكرَّس	port (n)	ميناء
dig up (phr. v)	يقتلع - يعثر على - يستخرج	remains (n)	بقايا / أطلال
hand in (phr. v)	يُسَلِّم (شيء لشخص مسئول)	temple (n)	معبد
heritage site (n)	موقع تراث	tourist attraction	عامل جذب سياحي

2 Important Vocabulary

appreciate (d) (v)	يُقدِّر / يُثَمِّن	location (n)	موقع
archaeological (adj)	أثري	mark (ed) (v)	يُصَيِّر - يُحدِّد
archaeologist (n)	عالم آثار	Mediterranean (n)	البحر المتوسط
archaeology (n)	علم الآثار	monument (n)	أثر
arts (n)	الفنون / العلوم	mummy (n)	مومياء
associated (adj)	مصحوب - مُصاحب	mural (n)	لوحة جدارية
authority (n)	السلطة	Muse (n)	رَبَّة الإلهام
belong (ed) (v)	يُخَص / ينتمي	observatory (n)	مَوْصِد
bury (ied) (v)	يدفن	official (adj)	رسمي
carve (d) (v)	ينحت	original (adj)	أصلي
cellar (n)	دهليز / سرداب / قبو	owner (n)	مالك / صاحب
chance (n)	حظ / مصادفة - فُرصة	painting (n)	لوحة - الرسم بالألوان
civilisation (n)	حضارة	palace (n)	قصر
classify (ied) (v)	يُصنِّف	pillar (n)	عمود
contemporary (adj)	مُعاصر	position (n)	وظيفة - مكانة - مكان
cultural (adj)	ثقافي	powerful (adj)	قوي
destroy (ed) (v)	يُدمِّر	preserved (adj)	مُحَنِّط - محفوظ
		pretty (adj)	جميل

destruction(n)
discovery(n)
diversity(n)
document(n)
downwards(adv)
earthquake(n)
elaborate(adj)

entrance(n)
evidence(n)
expedition(n)
explore(d) (v)
extinct(adj)
farmhouse(n)
fort(n)
god (n)
goddess(n)
guard(ed) (v/n)
heritage(n)
hilltop(n)
home(n)
honour(ed) (n/v)
impressive(adj)
inhabit(ed) (v)
interest(ed) (n/v)
interpret(ed) (v)
lighthouse(n)

الدمار ramp(n)
اكتشاف recognise(d) (v)
التنوع - التعددية region(n)
وثيقة reign(n)
لأسفل rocky(adj)
زلزال royal(n)
متقن / مشغول ruins(n)
مُعَدَّ بعناية - مُعَدَّ sacred(adj)
مدخل sculpture(n)
دليل single(n)
بعثة استكشافية statue(n)
يستكشف structure(n)
مُنْقُوض surround(ed) (v)
منزل ريفي tongue(n)
حصن/قلعة tour(n)
إله / رب traditions(n)
إلهة - ربة unclear(adj)
يُحْرُس - حارس uncover(ed) (v)
تراث underneath(adv)
قمة تل unearth(ed) (v)
موطن / مَقَرَّ UNESCO(n)
شرف - يُكْرَم union(n)
مُبهر - رائع well(n)
يسكن/يقطن well-paid(adj)
اهتمام - يُعِير اهتمام wonders(n)
يُفسِّر/يُحلِّل - يترجم worth (adj)
منارة

مُتَعَدِّ
يُتَرَقَّى علي
منطقة
فترة قيادة
مخز/صخري
مُتَعَدِّ
نظام/أطلال
مُتَعَدِّ
نمَّال - فن النحت
منرد
نمَّال
بني/بناء
يُحيط به
لسان
جولة
التقاليد
غير واضح
يكشف - يكشف عن
أسفل من - تحت
يستخرج بالحفر في
التربة
منظمة اليونسكو
اتحاد
بئر
مُعْجَزِي
عجائب
يساري/يستحق

3 Definitions تعريفات

bargain (n)	صفقة	something on sale cheaper than its real value
column(n)	عمود	a tall solid upright stone post used to support a building or as a decoration
come across (phr. v)	يجد بالصدفة	to find something by chance بالصدفة
dedicated(adj)	مُخَصَّص/مُكرَّس	made for or used for only one particular purpose غرض مُعَيَّن

dig up (phr. v)	يعثر علي/يستخرج	to remove something from the ground
hand in (phr. v)	يُسَلِّم	to give something to someone in authority
heritage site(n)	موقع تراث عالمي	a place which has a historic importance
landmark(n)	مَعْلَم بارز	an important building or object شئ
myth(n)	أَسْطُورَة / خُرَافَة	an ancient story that may or may not be true
pick up (phr. v)	يشتري	to buy something cheaply
picturesque(adj)	خَلَّاب - بديع المنظر	a word to describe something beautiful and possibly old
port(n)	ميناء	a town or city with a harbour or docks رصيف شحن where ships can be loaded or unloaded يُفْرَغ
remains(n)	بقايا/أطلال	the parts of something that are left after the rest has been destroyed or has disappeared
temple(n)	مَعْبَد	a building used for a religious ديني reason
tourist attraction	عامل / مكان جذب سياحي	a place that many tourists visit

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

- Archaeologists have uncovered the of an ancient Roman temple buried in the sand.
a. myth b. bargain c. tourist attraction d. remains
- El-Karnak is Luxor's best-known
a. port b. remain c. landmark d. column
- The New Administrative Capital is really a city. It is well-planned and beautifully designed.
a. picturesque b. dedicated c. devoted d. b & c
- I the documents to the manager in person.
a. pick up b. hand in c. come across d. dig up

5. This is just a; nothing like that did happen.
a. myth b. heritage site c. tourist attraction d. remain
6. Anees Mansour used to write a daily in Al-Ahram.
a. port b. temple c. landmark d. column
7. This is an original spare part قطعة غيار. Where have you it up?
a. picked b. handed c. come d. dug
8. The Great Pyramid is Egypt's best-known
a. myth b. bargain c. tourist attraction d. remains
9. Port Said is one of Egypt's important
a. ports b. temples c. banks d. columns
10. These temples were to ancient Egyptian gods.
a. picturesque b. dedicated c. devoted d. b & c
11. While I was searching for the contract عقد of the house, I
a 90-year-old photo of my grandfather.
a. picked on b. handed in c. came across d. buried up
12. According to the UNESCO, Saint Catherine is a World
a. Myth b. Heritage Site
c. Tourist Attraction d. Remains
13. El-Karnak is a world-famous monument.
a. port b. temple c. landmark d. column
14. I the small tree to move it. It had deep roots.
a. picked of b. handed in c. came across d. dug up

2 Important Vocabulary

15. Human life is All religions prohibits تحرم any aggression against it.
a. sacred b. elaborate c. dedicated d. picturesque
16. This area of the forest hasn't ever been No one has gone there ever.
a. appreciated b. carved c. classified d. explored
17. A civilized citizen respects the of opinions. People do not agree on everything.
a. chance b. diversity c. bank d. evidence
18. When an employee gets a good salary, then they have a/an job.
a. original b. preserved c. royal d. well-paid

19. This was built to protect the port.
a. document b. expedition c. fort d. heritage
20. The ancient Egyptians the Nile Valley and the Delta thousands of years ago.
a. surrounded b. unearthed c. marked d. inhabited
21. No one can deny the effect of the internet on society.
a. contemporary b. archaeological c. preserved d. official
22. An old night watchman this villa.
a. interpret b. guards c. uncover d. honour
23. The Egyptian Football National Team made great achievements in the of Captain Hassan Shehata.
a. reign b. wonder c. ruins d. observatory
24. A/An is a painting that is painted on a wall, either inside or outside a building.
a. lighthouse b. mummy c. mural d. archaeology
25. There're dangerous side effects with taking this medicine.
a. associated b. extinct c. royal d. well-paid
26. Massive concrete support the roof of the building.
a. cellars b. traditions c. ramps d. pillars
27. In ancient Greek myths, were goddesses of science and art who inspired creative people.
a. honours b. interests c. Muses d. sculptures
28. The internet is based on digital networking. It is nothing simple.
a. sacred b. elaborate c. dedicated d. picturesque
29. Most teachers and students the role El-Moasser plays in teaching English in Egypt.
a. appreciate b. carve c. classify d. explore
30. I haven't planned to score the goal this way, it all happened by
a. chance b. diversity c. bank d. evidence
31. Ancient Egyptian mummies were in a special process.
a. original b. preserved c. royal d. well-paid
32. These monuments are part of our national
a. document b. expedition c. fort d. heritage
33. This tower the city centre.
a. surrounds b. unearths c. marks d. inhabits

34. There are differences between the Europeans and the Arabs.
a. archaeological b. cultural c. well-paid d. official
35. The lighthouse of Alexandria no longer exists. Its were found under water.
a. reigns b. wonders c. ruins d. observatories
36. In the past, were used mainly to guide ships.
a. lighthouses b. mummies c. murals d. archeologies
37. Wearing a white dress for the wedding is a worldwide
a. structure b. tradition c. ramp d. pillar
38. There're so many places of to visit in Aswan.
a. structure b. interest c. Muse d. sculpture
39. Tomatoes are as fruit, not vegetables.
a. appreciated b. carved c. classified d. explored
40. There's no against him, so he has been set free.
a. chance b. diversity c. bank d. evidence
41. Prince Harry is a member of the family.
a. original b. preserved c. royal d. well-paid
42. This proves that you have sold the villa to me. It has your signature.
a. document b. expedition c. fort d. heritage
43. A team of archaeologists have a royal tomb full of golden antiquities.
a. surrounded b. unearthed c. marked d. inhabited
44. The prime minister declared tomorrow as a/an holiday on the occasion of 23rd July Revolution anniversary. ذكرى سنوية
a. archaeological b. contemporary c. cultural d. official
45. A team of scientists are the research to draw conclusions.
a. interpreting b. guarding c. covering d. honouring
46. The building on top of the mountain is a/an from which scientists watch the moon, stars, planets etc.
a. reign b. wonder c. ruins d. observatory
47. A/An is the dead body of a human preserved in a special process.
a. lighthouse b. mummy c. mural d. archaeology
48. Modern buildings have for wheelchairs.
a. forts b. traditions c. ramps d. pillars

49. A big party was given in the of the visiting King.
a. honour b. interest c. Muse d. sculpture
50. This temple is into a rocky cliff.
a. appreciated b. carved c. classified d. explored
51. The Valley of the Kings is on the west of the Nile.
a. chance b. diversity c. bank d. evidence
52. This is a fake copy of the painting. The one is kept in the museum.
a. original b. cultural c. contemporary d. well-paid
53. The team of scientists have gone on a/an to the western desert.
a. document b. expedition c. fort d. heritage
54. A high fence the farm.
a. surrounds b. unearths c. grows d. inhabits
55. The police secure the excavations التنقيب near the pyramids and the scientists working there.
a. archaeological b. contemporary c. cultural d. official
56. The investigator succeeded in the trick of the gang.
a. inhabiting b. guarding c. uncovering d. honouring
57. The Lighthouse of Alexandria was one of the of the ancient world.
a. reigns b. wonders c. ruins d. mummies
58. is the study of ancient societies by examining what remains of their buildings, graves, tools etc.
a. Lighthouse b. Mummy c. Mural d. Archaeology
59. This volcano is It has not erupted since 1129.
a. associated b. extinct c. royal d. well-paid
60. The Great Pyramid is the tallest the ancient Egyptians built.
a. structure b. tradition c. fort d. pillar

3 Definitions

61. A is a place which has a historic importance.
a. myth b. heritage site c. tourist attraction d. remains
62. To is to buy something cheaply.
a. pick up b. hand in c. come across d. dig up
63. A is an important building or object.
a. port b. temple c. landmark d. column

64. To is to give something to someone in authority.
a. pick up b. hand in c. come across d. dig up
65. are the parts of something that are left after the rest has been destroyed or has disappeared.
a. Myth b. Heritage site c. Tourist attraction d. Remains
66. To is to find something by chance.
a. pick up b. hand in c. come across d. dig up
67. A is a town or city with a harbour or docks where ships can be loaded or unloaded.
a. port b. temple c. landmark d. column
68. A is a place that many tourists visit.
a. myth b. heritage sight c. tourist attraction d. remains
69. A is a building used for a religious reason.
a. port b. temple c. landmark d. column
70. means made for or used for only one particular purpose.
a. Sacred b. Elaborate c. Dedicated d. Picturesque
71. A is a tall solid upright stone post used to support a building or as a decoration.
a. port b. temple c. landmark d. column
72. A is something on sale cheaper than its real value.
a. myth b. bargain c. tourist attraction d. remains
73. The adjective describes something beautiful and possibly old.
a. sacred b. elaborate c. dedicated d. picturesque
74. A is an ancient story that may or may not be true.
a. myth b. heritage site c. tourist attraction d. remain

Part II Vocabulary Study

1

Verbal Collocations

celebrate	traditions	يحتفل بالتقاليد	lead	downwards	تؤدي لأسفل
interpret	research	يُفسّر/يُحلّل البحث	make	a conclusion	يُنتج

214

Mini Test 1 Collocations

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- This passage downwards under the pyramid.
a. leads b. makes c. interprets d. celebrates
- The conclusion you have is not persuasive. مُقنع
a. led b. made c. interpreted d. celebrated
- Experts will the research to make use of its findings.
a. lead b. make c. interpret d. celebrate

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
chance(n)	حظ / مصادفة luck
come across (phr. v)	يجد بالصدفة run into, find by chance, meet by chance,
contemporary(adj)	مُعاصر modern, present-day
dedicated(adj)	متفاني committed, devoted
dig up (phr. v)	يكتشف uncover
dig up (phr. v)	يستخرج بالحفر unearth
elaborate(adj)	مُتَقَن/مُشغول بعناية intricate, detailed
elaborate(adj)	مُعَقَّد complex, complicated
myth(n)	أُسْطُورَة / خُرَافَة fallacy
picturesque(adj)	خُلاب - بديع المنظر attractive

3 Antonyms متضادات

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)
contemporary(adj)	مُعاصر old-fashioned, out of date عفا عليه الزمن
elaborate(adj)	مُعَقَّد simple بسيط
picturesque(adj)	خُلاب - بديع المنظر ugly قبيح
dedicated(adj)	متفاني apathetic, indifferent, غير مبالي
	unresponsive

Mini Test 2 Synonyms & Antonyms

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- "This is an elaborate system." The adjective 'elaborate' here is a synonym of
a. simple b. complicated c. complex d. b & c

215

2. A place that is picturesque is
 a. attracted b. attractive c. ugly d. ugliness
3. "He dug up some secret news." This means he some secret news.
 a. told b. covered c. uncovered d. unearthed
4. Which of the following is an antonym of "contemporary"?
 a. old-fashioned b. fashioned c. fashionable d. modern
5. When you are dedicated, you are not
 a. devoted b. committed c. a & b d. apathetic
6. When you are dedicated, you are
 a. devoted b. committed c. a & b d. apathetic

4 Derivatives المشتقات

Verb	Noun	Adjective
attract يجذب/يشد انتباه	attraction جذب - جاذبية - عامل جذب	attractive
bargain يتفاوض (على صفقة)	bargain صفقة	
dedicate يُكرّس/يُخصّص - يتفاني	dedication تفاني - تكريس	dedicated متفاني - مكرّس
	myth خرافة / أسطورة mythology خرافة	mythological أساطيري
remain يبقى/يظل	remains بقايا remainder المتبقي - بقية	remaining

Mini Test 3 Derivatives

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Although I shouted at him, he silent.
 a. remaining b. remains c. remained d. the remained
2. Most students got off the bus. The students sat in silence.
 a. remaining b. remains c. remained d. the remained
3. Ten divided by three gives you a of one.
 a. remaining b. remains c. remained d. remainder
4. The of our lunch were still on the table.
 a. remaining b. remains c. remained d. the remained

5. Egyptian monuments tourists from all over the world.
 a. attract b. attraction c. attractions d. attractive
6. Egyptian monuments are to tourists from all over the world.
 a. attract b. attraction c. attractions d. attractive
7. Egyptian monuments are a source of to tourists from all over the world.
 a. attract b. attraction c. attractions d. attractive
8. Egypt's so many tourist make it one of the leading countries in this field.
 a. attract b. attraction c. attractions d. attractive
9. My wife all her time to our family.
 a. dedicate b. dedicates c. dedication d. a & c
10. To be perfect needs a great deal of
 a. dedicate b. dedicates c. dedication d. a & c

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

archaeological remains	بقايا أثرية	official document	وثيقة رسمية
associated with	مصحوب بـ	on the banks of	علي ضفتي
BCE	قبل الميلاد	painted in pretty colours	ملون بألوان جميلة
be dedicated to	مكرّس لـ / مخصّص لـ	Pompey's Pillar	عمود السواري
be home to	يكون موطناً لـ	port city	مدينة ساحلية
be worth around	يُقدّر بما يقرب من	real value	القيمة الحقيقية
Bibliotheca Alexandrina	مكتبة الإسكندرية	rocky hilltop	قمة تل صخري
cruise ships	سفن الرحلات البحرية	Royal Observatory	المُرصد الملكي
cultural interest	أهمية ثقافية	Seven Wonders of the Ancient World	عجائب العالم القديم السبعة
fact file	ملف حقائق	the nine goddesses of the arts	آلهة الفنون التسعة
Fort Qaitbey	قلعة قايتباي	top tourist sites	أهم المواقع السياحية
Hellenistic period	الحقبة الهلنستية	water well	بئر مياه
historical site	موقع تاريخي	welcome to	أهلاً بـ ... في
in authority	في السلطة	World Heritage Site	موقع تراث عالمي
in future years	في سنوات تالية		
known as	معروف كـ		
Mediterranean port	ميناء على البحر المتوسط		

6 Synonymous Expressions تعبيرات مترادفة

by chance = by luck = unintentionally	بالمصادفة	on sale = available to be bought a lower price than usual	معرض / عليه خصم - معروض بسعر مُخَفَّض
offer to = make an offer to	يعرض أن	That's a good point	نقطة (فكرة) / حقيقة / وجهة نظر جيدة
for sale = available to be bought in a shop	معرض للبيع	= That's a good fact, idea, opinion	

7 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

belong to	يُخَص - ينتمي لـ	get off	يُصَف ... كـ
classify ... as	يُصَف ... كـ	get on	يصادف - يجد بالصدفة
come across	يُخَصص ... لـ - يُكرِّس ... لـ	go up	يُخَصص ... لـ - يُكرِّس ... لـ
dedicate ... to	يُخَصص ... لـ - يُكرِّس ... لـ	hand in	يُخَصص ... لـ - يُكرِّس ... لـ
dig up	يُخَصص ... لـ - يُكرِّس ... لـ	pick up	يُخَصص ... لـ - يُكرِّس ... لـ
end up in	يُخَصص ... لـ - يُكرِّس ... لـ		يُخَصص ... لـ - يُكرِّس ... لـ

Mini Test 4 Expressions, Prepositions & Idioms

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Which of the following is used when we want to say that something happened unintentionally?
a. by oneself b. on purpose c. by chance d. intentionally
- Salah is classified one of the best players in the world.
a. as b. to c. into d. by
- The police arrested some people digging some very valuable golden sculptures.
a. down b. up c. into d. a & b
- The statue ended a museum in Cairo.
a. up in b. on c. into d. up
- "There's a good sweater on sale." This means that you can
a. buy it in a shop b. sell it c. into d. up
- Mosques, churches and temples are mainly dedicated religious rituals.
a. as b. to c. into d. by

- I can't leave the report to the secretary. It is to be handed to the manager in person.
a. in b. of c. about d. from
- Welcome Aswan.
a. on b. to c. off d. about
- In this area, there are some villages on the banks of the
a. sea b. ocean c. river d. a, b & c
- When you say "success depends on hard work"; that's a good
a. point b. fact c. opinion d. a, b & c
- When I come someone, this means I meet them by chance.
a. into b. cross c. across d. to
- I have picked this camera at an online store.
a. of b. off c. in d. up

8 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

column - pillar

- يُمكن استخدام كل من (column/pillar) بمعنى عمود (كَمْبِي أو جزء من مَبْنِي):
عمود (مبني / جزء من مَبْنِي)
• column = pillar (n)
- Twelve columns support the roof.
= Twelve pillars support the roof.
- يُمكن استخدام (column) بمعنى عمود (في جدول / في صحيفة):
عمود (في جدول / في صحيفة)
• column (n)
- The vocabulary table in El-Moasser has four columns. (Not: four pillars)
- The article was written in one column. (Not: one pillar)
- يُمكن استخدام (column) بمعنى (مقال صحفي):
مقال صحفي
• column (n)
- I write a weekly science column in this magazine. (Not: science pillar)
- يُمكن استخدام (column) بمعنى (طابور متحرك):
طابور متحرك / صف متحرك
• column (n)
- The soldiers were organised in columns. (Not: in pillars)
- لاحظ التعبيرات التالية الخاصة بـ (column):
- a newspaper column عمود أو مقال صحفي
- an editorial column مقال افتتاحي لرئيس التحرير
- a smoke column عمود دخان
- write/have a column يكتب مقال/عمود

pillar (n)

- A parliament member is supposed to be an important **pillar** of their community. (Not: an important column)

pillar (n)

- Responsible freedom is a necessary **pillar** of a modern society. (Not: a necessary column)

- a **pillar** of society
- a **pillar** strength
- a **pillar** of dust / smoke / flame

in order/on order

put in order

- Put your ideas **in order** when you prepare a talk.

be in order

- Everything is **in order**.

be in order

- My passport is still **in order**.

be on order

- My new laptop is still **on order**. It is being delivered next Monday.

in honour of

in honour of + someone

= to show admiration and respect for

- The company gave a big party in honour of the former manager.

in honour of + an event

= in celebration of

- The company gave a big party in honour of the opening a new branch.

in authority / in power

in authority = in the position of authority

- My father hasn't retired yet. He is still **in authority** as the manager of the bank.

in power = in the position of political power

- After being elected by the majority of people, the president is now **in authority**.

BC - BCE - CE - AD

- BC = Before Christ

- BCE = Before the Common Era.

- CE = Common Era / the Christian Era / Current Era

- AD = Anno Domini

- This mummy dates back to 3500 BC.
- The Roman invasion took place in AD 340.

structure - construction

structure

- The **structure** of the human brain is complex.

structure

- The High Dam is a massive **structure**.

construction

- The **construction** of the new hotel will probably take three years.

explore - invent - find out - discover

explore

- I want to **explore** that old desert area around my village.

invent

- The Chinese **invented** paper.

find out

- I **found out** that she keeps a cat in her bedroom.

discover

- Isaac Newton **discovered** gravity.

discover (a medicine / the femtosecond)

- I hope scientists will **discover** a medicine for cancer.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- The of the High Dam took about ten years.
a. structure b. construction c. a & b d. instruction
- The High Dam is a massive
a. structure b. construction c. a & b d. instruction
- Mr Ashraf is an important of El-Moasser team.
a. pillar b. line c. column d. a & c
- Most readers like your newspaper
a. pillar b. line c. column d. a & c
- The roof is supported with strong
a. pillars b. lines c. columns d. a & c
- He the names of his students in alphabetical order.
a. went b. did c. was d. put
- When a document in order, it is still legal and correct.
a. goes b. does c. is d. put
- A : Has your new tablet been delivered ? B : Not yet. It is still order.
a. in b. on c. of d. from
- My salary visa is still order. I can use it to pay for my new tablet.
a. in b. on c. of d. from
- Do you know who the internet?
a. explored b. found out c. discovered d. invented
- I'd like very much to the area behind the mountain.
a. explore b. find out c. discover d. invent
- I don't know how he could about our new design.
a. explore b. find out c. discover d. invent
- Dr Zewail's team were able to the femtosecond.
a. explore b. find out c. discover d. invent

come across

- **come across = meet ... by chance (phr. v)**
- On my way home, I **came across** my cousin Eman. يقابل بالصدفة
- **come across = find ... by chance (phr. v)**
- I **came across** my lost keys while I was cleaning my room. يجد بالصدفة
- **come across (as) = come over (as) (phr. v)**
- He **comes across** as a young gentleman when he talks to strangers. يوحى بأنه / يعطي انطباعاً بأنه

dig up

- **dig up (phr. v)**
- Omar **dug up** two trees and planted them next to the gate. يقتلع / يستخرج
- **dig up (phr. v)**
- Archaeologists have **dug up** a huge statue near Luxor. يعثر علي / يجد
- The police have **dug up** some evidence against them.

heritage

- **heritage (n)** تراث
- **Heritage** is the traditional beliefs, values, customs etc. of a family, country, or society.
- التراث هو المُتعارَف عليه من المعتقدات والقيم والعادات وما إلى ذلك، سواء بالنسبة للأسرة أو البلد أو المجتمع، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:
- We are proud of our Arab **heritage**.
- It is our responsibility to protect our **heritage**.
- These monuments all belong to the cultural **heritage** of Egypt. لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:
- cultural **heritage** التراث الثقافي
- architectural **heritage** التراث المعماري
- literary **heritage** التراث الأدبي
- archaeological **heritage** التراث الأثري

landmark - mark

- **landmark (n)** معلَم هام
- Cairo Tower is one of Cairo's important **landmarks**.
- The Lighthouse of Alexandria was the city's most valuable **landmark**.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- historic landmark مَعْلَم تاريخي
- prominent landmark مَعْلَم بارز
- famous/familiar/well-known landmark مَعْلَم معروف

• landmark (n)

- The discovery of a vaccine for coronavirus was the most important landmark of 2021.
- The end of war was a landmark decision.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- landmark decision قرار مرجعي (تاريخي)
- landmark case قضية مرجعية (يُقاس عليها)

• mark (v)

- Mr Baleegh is marking our quizzes.

• mark (v)

- This week marks the 21st anniversary of my parents' marriage.

• mark = characterize (v) يُعَيِّر

- Aswan is marked by the High Dam.

myth

• myth = fallacy (n)

- The myth that children do not catch coronavirus was dispelled when thousands of children caught the disease.

- create a myth يُولف أسطورة

- dispel/explode a myth يَدْحُض أسطورة

- a bit of a myth غير حقيقي

- the myths surrounding something الأساطير المرتبطة بشيء ما

• mythic/mythical (adj)

- Messi has been a mythic footballer for years.

pick up

• pick ... up = lift ... up (phr. v)

- I picked up the letter and read it.
- = I picked the letter up and read it.
- = I lifted the letter up and read it.

يُرْتَب

• pick ... up = (make ...) tidy (phr. v)

- I pick up my room before I leave for school.
- = I pick my room up before I leave for school.
- = I tidy my room before I leave for school.
- = I make my room tidy before I leave for school.

• pick ... up = get/win ... (phr. v)

- He has picked up two gold medals so far.
- = He has picked two gold medals up so far.
- = He has won two gold medals so far.

• pick ... up = get/buy ... (phr. v)

- She picked up a pair of sunglasses yesterday.
- = She picked a pair of sunglasses up yesterday.
- = She bought a pair of sunglasses yesterday.

• pick ... up (phr. v)

- I picked up my daughter from her school.
- = I picked my daughter up from her school.

• pick up = get better/improve (phr. v)

- Prices pick up in the tourist season.
- = Prices improve in the tourist season.

remains

• remain = stay (v)

- I repeated my question, but she remained silent.

• remain as (v)

- Although he caused so many problems, he remained as a manager because there was no substitute.

• remain (in/at/with...) = stay (in/at/with...) (v)

- Aya was ill, so she remained at home.

• remains (n)

- The remains of the food are still on the table.

• remains (n)

- The remains of my grandfather were buried here.

(من عملية طرح أو قسمة)
الباقى

- remainder (n)
- Ten taken away from twelve gives you a remainder of two.
- the remainder = the rest (n)
- Here is 25,000 pounds. The remainder will be paid within a week.
- remaining (n)
- There's only one remaining question.

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- When your parents are old, you must be a of strength to them.
a. column b. pillar c. mast d. a & b
- Rodayna very well in the interview.
a. handed in b. picked up c. came across d. dug up
- Those who hate you will always your past searching for something against you.
a. dig up b. devote to c. appreciate d. honour
- I do not believe the surrounding darkness and ghosts.
a. heritages b. myths c. pillars d. sculptures
- A of smoke was going up from the chimney.
a. mast b. column c. pillar d. b & c

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	b (column) لا يمكن استخدام (a pillar of strength) بمعنى (سند/عون) ولا يمكن استخدام (column) في هذا سياق.	التعبير (a pillar of strength) يعني (سند/عون) ولا يمكن استخدام (column) في هذا سياق.
2.	c (come across) هنا يعني (يُعطى انطباعاً بأنه)	لفعل الاصطلاحى (come across) هنا يعني (يُعطى انطباعاً بأنه)
3.	a (dig up your past) يعني (يفتح في ماضيك)	التعبير (dig up your past) يعني (يفتح في ماضيك)
4.	b (the myths surrounding ...) يعني (الأساطير المتعلقة بـ ...)	التعبير (the myths surrounding ...) يعني (الأساطير المتعلقة بـ ...)
5.	d (a pillar of smoke) و (a column of smoke) كلاهما صحيح.	التعبيران (a pillar of smoke) و (a column of smoke) كلاهما صحيح.

Part III

Reading

1 Reading Texts

London Fact file

(SB page 42)

Visiting London ? Here are ten interesting facts you might not know ...



- The most popular tourist attraction ⁽¹⁾ in London is the British Museum.
- Notting Hill in London has some very picturesque ⁽²⁾ streets with houses painted in pretty ⁽³⁾ colours.
- The clock called Big Ben is perhaps the most famous landmark ⁽⁴⁾ in London and is known around the world!
- The Queen's House is one of many heritage ⁽⁵⁾ sites in Greenwich, south London, which includes the Royal Observatory. ⁽⁶⁾
- A statue ⁽⁷⁾ of a famous sailor, Admiral Nelson, stands on a column ⁽⁸⁾ in Trafalgar Square that is 52 metres high.
- The London Mithraeum, an ancient Roman temple of Mithras, was discovered in 1954.
- The Port of London on the River Thames is the third largest port ⁽⁹⁾ in the UK.
- A popular myth ⁽¹⁰⁾ is that when the Union ⁽¹¹⁾ Flag is flying over Buckingham Palace, ⁽¹²⁾ the Queen is at home. (This is not actually ⁽¹³⁾ true; it means she is not at the Palace.)
- The most impressive ⁽¹⁴⁾ remains ⁽¹⁵⁾ of London's Roman city wall can be found just outside the entrance ⁽¹⁶⁾ to Tower Hill Underground Station.
- You can go up ⁽¹⁷⁾ the 62-metre-high tower in Fish Street, which is a monument ⁽¹⁸⁾ marking ⁽¹⁹⁾ the place where the Great Fire of London started in 1666.

Check Vocabulary

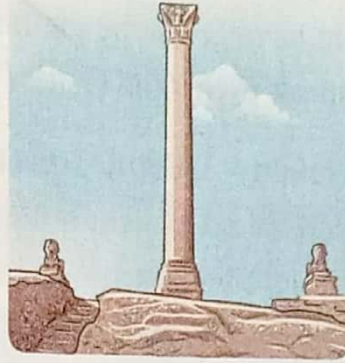
- منطقة جذب سياحي
- خلاب - بديع المنظر
- جميل
- معلم
- تراث
- المزخرف المصنوعي
- تمثال
- عمود
- ميناء
- أسطورة / خرافة
- اتحاد
- قصر
- في الواقع
- مُبهر - رائع
- بقايا / أطلال
- مَدْخَل
- يصعد
- أثر
- يُمَيِّز

Other expeditions⁽⁷⁾ in future years uncovered⁽⁸⁾ more ruins⁽⁹⁾ of the lighthouse. Today, on the site of the lighthouse stands Fort⁽¹⁰⁾ Qaitbey which has guarded⁽¹¹⁾ the port of Alexandria since 1480. It's a very popular and picturesque tourist attraction.

- (7) بعثة استكشافية
(8) يكتشف
(9) خُطام/اطلال
(10) حصن/قلعة
(11) يحرس

3 El Sawari Column : "Pompey's Pillar"

This single⁽¹⁾ stone⁽²⁾ pillar⁽³⁾, which is more than 20 metres tall, stands on a rocky⁽⁴⁾ hilltop⁽⁵⁾, in the middle of Alexandria. Built in 292 CE, it marks⁽⁶⁾ the site of what was once a huge and elaborate⁽⁷⁾ temple, the Temple of Serapeum, built during the reign⁽⁸⁾ of Ptolemy⁽⁹⁾ III Euergetes (246-221 BCE). It is one of the best-known ancient monuments⁽¹⁰⁾ still standing in Alexandria today. Underneath⁽¹¹⁾ the column, steps lead⁽¹²⁾ downwards⁽¹³⁾ to the ruins of the Temple.



Check Vocabulary

- (1) منفرد
(2) حجر/حجري
(3) عمود
(4) صخر/صخري
(5) قمة تل
(6) يُمَيِّز - يُحَدِّد
(7) مُتَقَن / مشغول
بِعناية / مُعَقَّد
(8) حُكْم
(9) بطليموس
(10) آثار
(11) أسفل
(12) يُوْجِدي
(13) لأسفل

Archaeology⁽¹⁾ news round the world Virù, Peru

(SB page 44)

Ancient wall painting discovered in Peru

Archaeologists⁽²⁾ in northern Peru have found a 3,200-year-old mural⁽³⁾ - wall painting⁽⁴⁾ - painted on the side of an ancient temple that is thought to show a Spider god, associated⁽⁵⁾ with rain.

Experts⁽⁶⁾ say that because of the location⁽⁷⁾ of the temple near the river, it must have been a temple built in honour⁽⁸⁾ of the water gods⁽⁹⁾. It is thought that it might have belonged⁽¹⁰⁾ to the extinct⁽¹¹⁾ Cupisnique people, who inhabited⁽¹²⁾ the northern coast⁽¹³⁾ of Peru between 2,000 and 1,000 BCE.



Check Vocabulary

- (1) علم الآثار
(2) علماء الآثار
(3) لوحة جدارية
(4) لوحة
(5) مصحوب
(6) خبراء
(7) موقع
(8) شرف
(9) آلهة
(10) يخص/ينتمي
(11) مُنْقَرِض
(12) يسكن/يقطن
(13) ساحل

Not far away we can see how the remains of the **nearby**⁽²⁾ town are mostly buried in sand. Now, here you can see a small water **well**⁽³⁾. Some believe **sacred**⁽⁴⁾ crocodiles⁽⁵⁾ were kept in the water here but others think it is just a myth. This is a very popular tourist attraction **especially**⁽⁶⁾ for cruise ships sailing along the Nile between Luxor and Aswan. Although there is no large port for ships to stop at, you can still get on and off them nearby. **UNESCO**⁽⁷⁾ has **classified**⁽⁸⁾ this monument as a **World heritage site**⁽⁹⁾ and I hope you **appreciate**⁽¹⁰⁾ why.

(2) قريب

(3) بئر

(4) مقدس

(5) تمساح

(6) خاصة

(7) منظمة اليونسكو

(8) يُصنّف

(9) موقع تراث عالمي

(10) يُقدّر/يُثمن

Part IV

Language

Modal verbs of deduction, advice and regret

الأفعال الناقصة الدالة على الاستنتاج والنصيحة والندم

1 Get ready استعد

١ الأفعال الناقصة المستخدمة لعمل الاستنتاج - معانيها واستخداماتها كالتالي :

M.V. الفعل الناقص		Notes ملاحظات
must	لا بد	- تستخدم للتعبير عن استنتاج مُثبت مبني على دليل قوي (شعور بالتأكد) : - He has eaten nothing all day. He must be hungry.
can't	لا يمكن	- تستخدم للتعبير عن استنتاج منفي مبني على دليل قوي (شعور بالتأكد) : - He has eaten nothing all day. He can't be full.
might / may / could	ربما / من المحتمل / قد	- تستخدم للتعبير عن استنتاج مبني على دليل ضعيف (عدم تأكد) : - I don't know why Sama isn't at the party. She might be ill. She may have a problem. She could be in a bad mood.

٢ الاستنتاج معلومة قائمة على دليل وليست معلومة يقينية - لاحظ الفرق في المعنى :

- Bassem **is** an officer. (يقين - أعلم تماماً أنه ضابط)
- Bassem **must be** an officer. He wears a uniform and has a gun. (استنتاج قوي)
- Bassem **might be** an officer. He has a gun. (استنتاج ضعيف)

٣ تذكر أن نفى (must) في الاستنتاج هو (can't) وليس (mustn't) :

- He **must be** ill. He (mustn't - **can't**) be well.

عمل التبعيرات التالية على استنتاج قوي، ونستخدم معها (must) فى الإثبات و (can't) فى النفي :
من المؤكد - certainly / surely / definitely - أشعر بالتأكد معها (must) فى الإثبات و (can't) فى النفي :

- I feel sure / certain مستحيل impossible
- We feel sure Aya isn't out. She must be in her house. She can't be at school.
عمل التبعيرات التالية على عدم التأكد ونستخدم معها (may - might - could) :
ربما - Perhaps / maybe

- I'm not sure / certain لست متأكد
- It is probable / likely / possible من المحتمل
- I don't think / believe - I don't know لست أدري

- I don't know why Rodayna is crying. She may / might / could have a problem at school.

البيان لا يوجد أى تعبير صريح مما سبق يدل على درجة التأكد ، لكن يكون هناك ما يوحى منطقياً بقوة الدليل أو ضعفه :

- Omar has a good memory. He can't have forgotten. (دليل هنا منطقياً قوي)
- This man always gets up early. He might sell milk. (دليل هنا منطقياً ضعيف)

Mini Test 1 Apply

❖ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- He be a doctor. I feel sure.
a. must b. can't c. might d. a & b
- He be a doctor. I have no idea.
a. must b. can't c. might d. a & b
- He be a doctor. He is examining a patient.
a. must b. can't c. might d. a & b
- He be a doctor. He welcomes patients in the reception and makes reserves. ^{حجز}
a. must b. can't c. might d. a & b
- He an old officer. He is a marshal.
a. is b. must be c. can't be d. might be
- He an old officer. All other officers salute ^{يحيى تحية عسكرية} him.
a. is b. must be c. can't be d. might be
- I don't think she is in the library. She be in the canteen.
a. may b. might c. could d. a , b & c

2 Present deduction المضارع الاستنتاج

❶ لعمل استنتاج قائم على دليل قوى فى المضارع نستخدم :

معروف ➡ Subj. + must / can't + فعل + inf. ...
لا بد / لا يمكن

مجهول ➡ Obj. + must / can't + be + p.p. ...
مفعول

- Mohammed Salah is healthy and fit. He must care about his health and fitness. He must do a lot of exercises. He can't eat much food. (معروف)
- Mohammed Salah is healthy and fit. His health and fitness must be cared about. A lot of exercises must be done by him. Much food can't be eaten by him. (مجهول)

❷ لعمل استنتاج قائم على دليل ضعيف فى المضارع نستخدم :

معروف ➡ Subj. + might / may / could + inf. ...
ربما

مجهول ➡ Obj. + might / may / could + be + p.p. ...
مفعول

- I've no idea when the new equipment will be delivered. It may / might / could arrive tomorrow. (معروف)
- I've no idea when the new equipment will be delivered. It may / might / could be delivered tomorrow. (مجهول)

❸ لعمل استنتاج فى المضارع المستمر نستخدم :

Subj. + must / can't / might / may / could + be + (inf. + ing) ...

- Ayman hasn't answered my call. He must be interviewing some applicants.
- Reem hasn't told me why she doesn't go out these days. She might be studying for the final exams.

Mini Test 2 Apply

❖ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Rodayna always comes first. She be clever.
a. must b. can't c. could d. might
- Rodayna always comes first. She be lazy.
a. must b. can't c. could d. might
- It is possible that he is out. He be at home.
a. could b. might c. must d. a & b

- It is impossible that he is out. He be at home.
 a. could b. might c. must d. a & b
5. I smell my mother's delicious food. She must lunch.
 a. be preparing b. prepares c. to prepare d. prepare
6. He has a large villa. He a lot of money.
 a. can't earn b. mustn't earn c. must earn d. might earn

3 Past deduction الاستنتاج في الماضي

لعمل استنتاج قائم على دليل قوي في الماضي نستخدم :

معلوم Subj. + must / can't + have + p.p. ...

مجهول Obj. + must / can't + have + been + p.p. ...

- Zidan **was** healthy and fit. He **must have cared** about his health and fitness.
 He **must have done** a lot of exercises. He **can't have eaten** much food.
- Zidan **was** healthy and fit. His health and fitness **must have been cared** about. A lot of exercises **must have been done** by him. Much food **can't have been eaten** by him.

لعمل استنتاج قائم على دليل ضعيف في الماضي نستخدم :

معلوم Subj. + might / may / could + have + p.p. ...

مجهول Obj. + might / may / could + have + been + p.p. ...

- Nadia **may / might / could have prepared** a big lunch. I'm not sure.
 - A big lunch **may / might / could have been prepared** by Nadia. I'm not sure.

لعمل استنتاج عن حدث كان مستمراً في الماضي نستخدم :

Subj. + فاعل + must / can't / might / may / could + have + been + (inf. + ing) ...

- I'm not sure what made Yara not attend my birthday. She **might have been helping** her mother at home.

يمكن أن تعبر (could have + P.P.) عن استنتاج ضعيف أو عن شيء كان من الممكن حدوثه

- He **hasn't visited** us for a long time. He **could have been busy**. (استنتاج ضعيف)
 - He **was able to** fix the computer but he **didn't**. He **could have fixed** it.

(كان يستطيع ولم يفعل)

Mini Test 3

Apply

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Leen looked happy. She some good news.
 a. must hear b. must have heard c. can't hear d. can't have heard
- Leen looked annoyed. She some good news.
 a. must hear b. must have heard c. can't hear d. can't have heard
- The car no longer breaks down. My father taken it to the mechanic.
 a. must have b. can't have c. must have been d. can't have been
- The car no longer breaks down. It taken to the mechanic.
 a. must have b. can't have c. must have been d. can't have been
- The car still breaks down so often. My father taken it to the mechanic.
 a. must have b. can't have c. must have been d. can't have been
- The car still breaks down so often. It taken to the mechanic.
 a. must have b. can't have c. must have been d. can't have been
- I don't think that Rokaya did the shopping. She it.
 a. might do b. can't do c. could have done d. can't have done

4 should / ought to ينبغي / يجب

تستخدم (should - ought to) لإعطاء النصيحة :

Subj. + should / shouldn't + inf. ...

Subj. + ought to / ought not (oughtn't) to + inf. ...

- You **should work** hard to achieve your goal. You **shouldn't waste** your time.
 - One **ought to keep** fit. He or she **ought not to eat** unhealthy food.

كما تستخدم (should - ought to + have + p.p) لتوجيه اللوم أو التعبير عن الندم لعدم القيام بشئ كان من المفترض القيام به في الماضي :

Subj. + should / ought to + have + p.p. ...

- I **should have taken** my medicine on time.
 - You **ought to have arrived** early.

(ندم - كان يجب أن أفعل ذلك)

(لوم - كان يجب القيام بذلك)

نستخدم (shouldn't - ought not to + have + p.p.) لتوجيه اللوم أو التعبير عن الندم للقيام بشيء في الماضي كان من المفترض عدم القيام به :
 (الندم - كان يجب ألا أفعل ذلك)
 (الوم - كان من المفترض عدم القيام بذلك)

Subj. + shouldn't / ought not to (oughtn't) + have + p.p. ...

I oughtn't (to) have shouted at my sister.
 You shouldn't have added too much salt.

Mini Test 4

Apply

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- You do what is right and fair.
a. should b. shouldn't c. ought to d. a & c
- You do what upsets me.
a. should b. shouldn't c. ought to d. a & c
- He missed the train. He up earlier.
a. should get b. shouldn't get c. should have got d. oughtn't have got
- He missed the train. He up so late.
a. should get b. shouldn't get c. should have got d. oughtn't have got

General Exercise On Language

Apply

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Getting Started

- Look for your pencil in the drawer. It be there next to the ruler.
(نموذج الوزارة الأول ٢٠٢٠)
a. can't b. must c. have to d. shouldn't
- Maha will wait for her husband. She has forgotten her key. She have brought it.
(دور أول ٢٠١٩)
a. must b. may c. might d. should
- She be talented. She plays the piano, the violin and the lute well.
(أهم ٢٠١٩ - أدبي)
a. can't b. mustn't c. must d. has to
- It have been cold there. There is snow on the ground in the p.....
(دور ثان ٢٠١٩)
a. must b. might c. must d. may not

- Her watch have cost a lot of money. It's made of gold. (السودان ٢٠١٩)
a. must b. might c. could d. can't
- That watch have cost a lot of money. It is made of plastic.
(دور أول ٢٠١٤ نظام قديم)
a. must b. might c. can't d. can
- Samy didn't take his keys, he have seen them. (السودان ٢٠١٨)
a. must b. can c. can't d. may
- I have seen her car outside. She
(نموذج الوزارة الثاني ٢٠١٨)
a. can't arrive b. can't have arrived c. might arrive d. must have arrived
- We don't know when earthquakes happen. They predicted.
(نموذج الوزارة الثالث ٢٠١٨)
a. were b. have been c. had been d. can't be
- Dr. Ahmed is a famous surgeon. He be clever. (نموذج الوزارة الأول ٢٠١٤)
a. can't b. had to c. must d. has to
- He can hardly walk. He be very ill. (دور ثان ٢٠١٤)
a. must b. mustn't c. shouldn't d. should
- Nothing is kept in the fridge. He have eaten all the food.
(دور أول قديم ٢٠١٦)
a. can't b. must c. might d. may
- No one is sure where Ali is, but we think he have gone to see his uncle.
(نموذج الوزارة الثالث ٢٠١٦)
a. needn't b. can't c. might d. must
- Winning the first prize last year Ali very happy. (دور أول قديم ٢٠١٥)
a. will have made b. must have made c. can't make d. mustn't make
- I can't remember where I had left my mobile phone. I'm not sure. I it at home. (دور أول حديث ٢٠١٥)
a. must have left b. might have left c. can leave d. must leave
- It very windy during the night. There are leaves all over the ground. (دور أول ٢٠١٢)
a. must have been b. must be c. can't have been d. can't be
- Ramy has a broken arm; he off his bicycle in the race. (دور ثان ٢٠١٢)
a. can't fall b. might fall c. must have fallen d. can't have fallen

18. The cup is empty. Mr Hassan drunk his orange juice. (السودان ٢٠١٣)
a. must have b. must have been
c. can't have d. can't be

19. She didn't see her brother this morning. He the flat very early. (دور ثان ٢٠١٣)
a. must have left b. can't have left
c. must leave d. can't leave

20. There's water all over the floor. You to turn off the shower. (السودان ٢٠١٤)
a. must forget b. must have forgotten
c. can't have forgotten d. can't forget

21. You the door. It was open when I got home. (دور اول ٢٠١٤ نظام حديث)
a. can lock b. can't have locked
c. can have locked d. can't lock

22. That's the second new car they have bought this year. They be poor!
a. can't b. must c. might d. could

23. It is such a large modern house. It cost a lot of money.
a. could have been b. must have
c. must be d. must have been

II Special Cases

24. The police knew everything about the murderer. They have undertaken their investigations. (نموذج الوزارة الثاني ٢٠٢٠)
a. should b. can't c. must d. might

25. Dina have been at school yesterday. The list of the absentees didn't include her name. (نموذج الوزارة الاول ٢٠١٩)
a. must b. can't c. needn't d. mustn't

26. They left two hours ago, so they arrived by now. It's not far. (السودان ٢٠١١)
a. must b. must have c. can't have d. have

27. I cannot find my handbag. Someone it by mistake. (دور ثان حديث ٢٠١٦)
a. must take b. cannot take
c. must have taken d. cannot have taken

28. She have caught her train because she would have been here by now. (نموذج الوزارة الثالث ٢٠١٧)
a. can't d. must

29. What a pity! He's bleeding terribly. He have had an accident. (نموذج الوزارة الاول ٢٠١٦)
a. can't b. may c. must d. should not

30. She have gone far. I just saw her car leave a minute ago. (نموذج الوزارة ٢٠١٣)
a. must b. should c. can't d. can

31. John has forgotten about the meeting. We have reminded him about it yesterday.
a. might b. ought not to c. ought to d. must

32. He have told you yesterday, but he forgot.
a. might b. can c. would d. should

33. You have shouted at him. He'll never forgive you.
a. ought not to b. must c. might d. can't

34. A: Last term, I took four exams and passed them all!
B: You have been disappointed.
a. couldn't b. must not c. can't d. must

35. I'm glad you survived. You risked your life and killed.
a. may have b. must have been
c. could have been d. might have

36. I revised more for my exams. I think I'll fail!
a. could have b. might have c. must have d. ought to have

37. The concert was fantastic. You really have come.
a. might b. can't c. must d. ought to

38. Nada was very upset with you yesterday. You have apologised for saying she was lazy.
a. should b. must c. might d. can't

39. We agreed to meet yesterday but when I got there I didn't see him. He waiting elsewhere.
a. couldn't have b. can't have
c. could have been d. must not have

40. You have tried to fix the roof yourself. You might have fallen off and been badly injured.
a. can't b. ought not to c. might d. must

Check your understanding

41. "I'm sure Ahmed is at school today. I have seen him enter the laboratory a moment ago." What does this mean?
 a. Ahmed must be at school. b. Ahmed can't be at school.
 c. Ahmed may be at school. d. Ahmed is at school.
42. "I'm sure Ahmed is at school today. It is a school day and Ahmed is a clever student." What does this mean?
 a. Ahmed must be at school. b. Ahmed can't be at school.
 c. Ahmed may be at school. d. Ahmed is at school.
43. "I don't know why he is late.".
 a. He must have missed the school bus.
 b. He must be asleep.
 c. He may have forgotten the time of the meeting.
 d. I must have forgotten to remind him.
44. "Hoda can't have been ill."; this means
 a. I'm sure Hoda is ill. b. I'm sure Hoda was ill.
 c. I'm sure Hoda isn't ill. d. I'm sure Hoda wasn't ill.
45. A: What is Ahmed doing in the garden? B: I have no idea.
 a. He must be watering the trees.
 b. He might be looking after the flowers.
 c. He can't be playing there.
 d. He might have planted a tree.
46. "....., but I preferred watching the match on TV.
 a. I could have gone to the stadium.
 b. I might have gone to the stadium.
 c. I may have gone to the stadium.
 d. I must have gone to the stadium.
47. That the main entrance. I can see people queuing to get in.
 a. can't have been. b. must be. c. must have been. d. can't be
48. "He failed the driving test."
 a. He should have trained well. b. He can't have trained well.
 c. He must have trained well. d. a & b

49. "You made your sister upset again!"
 a. You may have shouted at her.
 b. You will have shouted at her.
 c. You should have shouted at her.
 d. You shouldn't have shouted at her.

Advanced Exercise on Language

تدرب على التمارين التالية بوضع الإجابة والتوضيح

* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A : It can't have been easy tunnelling under the Nile.
 B : Of course it
 a. didn't b. wasn't c. isn't d. doesn't
2. The Metro must have made travelling around Cairo easier.
 - It
 a. does b. doesn't c. was d. did
3. The police are convinced the paintings..... taken out of the country already.
 a. might have been b. must have been
 c. may have d. must have
4. I don't know why I am so tired these days. I be sleeping well.
 a. might not b. couldn't c. can't d. mustn't
5. It have been Magdi I saw at the party. He didn't recognise me at all.
 a. must b. should c. shouldn't d. can't

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	b	- الفعل الرئيسي لجملة الاستنتاج في الماضي هو (been) لذلك نختار (wasn't) وليس (didn't)
2.	d	- الفعل الرئيسي لجملة الاستنتاج في الماضي هو (made) وهو ما ينوب عنه في الصيغة المختصرة (did) وليس (was)
3.	b	السياق استنتاج ماضي قوي مبني للمجهول
4.	a	السياق استنتاج مضارع (مستمر) ضعيف
5.	d	السياق استنتاج ماضي قوي منفي

Part I

Vocabulary & Definitions

اختبر مدى إتقانك للمفردات الرئيسية في كراسة المصاحف الثقافية.
المفردات اللغوية باللون الأحمر هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية.

تأويل

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

aware(adj)	علي علم به / مُدرك لـ	highlight(ed) (n/v)	الجزء الأبرز - يُبرز
beneficial(adj)	مفيد	mausoleum(n)	ضريح
dam(med) (n/v)	سد - يبنى سد	moving(adj)	مُتحرِّك / مُتغير
dedicated (to) (adj)	مُخصَّص (لـ)	must-see(n)	شيء لا بد من رؤيته
elaborate(adj)	مُركَّب - مُتقَن - مُعقَّد	not to be missed	لا يُنسى
emotional(adj)	عاطفي	preserve(d) (v)	يُحفظ - يُحفظ
essential(adj)	جوهري / ضروري	preserved(adj)	مُحفظ - محفوظ
gateway(n)	بوابة / مَعبر	well-preserved(adj)	مُحفظ جيداً
healing(n)	الالتئام - إبراء - شفاء - التئام	well worth	يستحق - جدير به

2 Important Vocabulary

absolute(adj)	مُطلق	intricate (adj)	متشابك
alleyway(n)	زقاق	locate(d) (v)	يضع - يحدد موقع
ancient(adj)	قديم	maze(n)	متاهة
appreciate(d) (v)	يُقدِّر / يُثمن - يُعجَّب به	medieval(adj)	من العصور الوسطى
arrow(n)	سهم	miss(ed) (v)	يُفترق - يفتقد
artefacts(n)	تُحف	mysterious(adj)	غامض
artist(n)	فنان	negotiate(d) (v)	يتفاوض
aspects(n)	مجالات - مناحي	one-third(adj)	ثلث
association(n)	جمعية - اتحاد	open-air(adj)	الهواء الطلق
authentic(adj)	حقيقي	organisation(n)	منظمة
beneath(adv/prep)	أسفل	parade(n)	إحتفالات - مسيرة
captivate(d) (v)	يأسر - يخلب	passage(n)	مسار / دهليز
categorise(d) (v)	يُصنِّف - يضع في تصنيف	practical (adj)	عملي / تطبيقي
championship(n)	بطولة	prehistoric(adj)	ما قبل التاريخ
civilisation(n)	حضارة	priest(n)	كاهن - قديس

coffin(n)
collection(n)
craft(n)
culture(n)
decipher(ed) (v)
display(ed) (n-v)
entire(adj)
entry(n)
establish(ed) (v)
facilities(n)

Fatimid(adj)
feel(n)
fiction(n)
front(n)
golden(adj)
grand(adj)
hidden(adj)
hieroglyphics(n)
initial(adj)
inspire(d) (v)

تابوت
مجموعة
مهنة يدوية
الثقافة
يفك شفرة
عَرَض - يَعْرِض
كامل
دخول
يُنشئ - يُوطَّد
امتيازات - تسهيلات
مراقب
فاطمي
شعور
أعمال أدبية - خيال
واجهة
ذهبي
مهيِّب / كبير
مُخفي / مُخْبأ
اللغة الهيروغليفية
مبدئي
يُلهم - يُحفِّز

procession(n)
rebuild - rebuilt (v)
refreshing(adj)
reviewer(n)
royal(adj)
rule(d) (v)
ruler(n)
section(n)
shopkeeper(n)
shy(adj)
sight(n)
spectacular(adj)
spices(n)
survey(ed) (n/v)
talkative(adj)
tour(ed) (v/n)
transport(ed) (v/n)
variety(n)
willing(adj)

مُركَّب
يُعيد بناء
مُنعش
ناقد
مُلكي
يحكم
حاكم
قسم
صاحب محل
خجول
مُشاهد / مَعلم - البصر
باهر / مُذهِل
توابل
بحث استطلاعي - يُجرى
بحث استطلاعي
ثرائر
يتجول في - جولة
ينقل - النقل /
المواصلات
التنوع - التعددية
مُستعد / راغب في

3 Definitions تعريفات

dam(n)	a special wall built across a river or stream to stop the water from flowing, especially in order to make a lake or produce electricity
dedicated (to) (adj)	made for or used for only one particular purpose
elaborate(adj)	very complicated and detailed; carefully prepared and organized
gateway(n)	a place through which you can go to reach another larger place
highlight(n)	the most important, interesting, or enjoyable part of something such as a holiday, performance, or sports competition
mausoleum(n)	a large stone building made specially to contain the body of a dead person, or the dead bodies of an important family

moving(adj) حُزِنٌ / مُعْرَكٌ للشاعر

must-see(n) جدير بالرؤية

making you feel strong emotions, especially sadness or sympathy التعاطف
- something that is so good, exciting, or interesting that you think people should see it
- highly recommended as worth seeing

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

- As a student, all my time is to my study.
a. aware b. authentic c. intricate d. dedicated
- Moving and are synonyms.
a. beneficial b. emotional c. absolute d. royal
- Salah's incredible goal is the of the game.
a. alleyway b. dam c. highlight d. maze
- The Ancient Egyptians used a special way to the dead bodies.
a. preserve b. captivate c. display d. highlight
- Planning is to achieving one's goal.
a. practical b. entire c. preserved d. essential
- The final match is an absolute Don't miss it.
a. parade b. must-see c. mausoleum d. coffin
- This is a/an digital system that needs an expert to deal with.
a. elaborate b. practical c. medieval d. moving
- The Suez Canal is a major to world trade.
a. aspect b. healing c. gateway d. procession
- It is not the kind of event to be Everybody is careful to take part in it.
a. well worth b. mysterious c. prehistoric d. missed
- A good citizen is of the challenges that face their society.
a. aware b. authentic c. intricate d. dedicated
- The giant controlled the flow of the river.
a. alleyway b. dam c. highlight d. maze
- I think corona virus has the need to reorganize the healthcare sector in the whole world.
a. preserved b. captivated c. toured d. highlighted

- Following a good diet is surely to your health.
a. beneficial b. emotional c. absolute d. royal
- The royal was ready for the dead queen.
a. parade b. must-see c. mausoleum d. coffin
- The mother's tears were so that I myself started to cry.
a. elaborate b. initial c. medieval d. moving
- Taking a complete rest is an important part of the process.
a. aspect b. healing c. gateway d. procession
- Your goal is exerting every effort to achieve it.
a. well worth b. mysterious c. prehistoric d. missed

2 Important Vocabulary

- A team of scientists have managed to the human gene.
a. heal b. decipher c. establish d. hide
- Thousands of people joined the to celebrate the National Day.
a. parade b. must-see c. mausoleum d. coffin
- Scientists have found out some pots that are thousands of years old.
a. one-third b. open-air c. prehistoric d. absolute
- I have no doubt that the document is a/an copy of the original one.
a. aware b. authentic c. intricate d. dedicated
- I go lost into the of narrow streets of old Cairo.
a. alleyway b. dam c. highlight d. maze
- I got a/an from him to join our team, but he said he needed to take his time.
a. elaborate b. initial c. medieval d. moving
- We hope Egypt will soon achieve progress in all of science and technology.
a. aspects b. healings c. transports d. processions
- It is known that death is a/an fact. Everybody will die sooner or later.
a. beneficial b. emotional c. absolute d. royal
- This party of explorers have all over Africa.
a. transported b. inspired c. toured d. survived

27. Customers' attitudes have been
a. done b. made c. toured d. surveyed
28. This shop customers according to their age.
a. categorises b. deciphers c. establishes d. rules
29. Cairo has a/an network of railways.
a. aware b. talkative c. intricate d. shy
30. He was apprenticed to a maker.
a. parade b. must-see c. mausoleum d. coffin
31. He sold the farm to his neighbour and moved to the city.
a. practical b. entire c. preserved d. essential
32. Don't let day dreams you to a world of unreal success.
a. transport b. inspire c. tour d. survey
33. President Sadat Egypt for about ten years.
a. categorised b. deciphered c. established d. ruled
34. The Arabic 'Ziqaq' translates as something like
a. alleyway b. dam c. highlight d. maze
35. I was by his politeness and good manners.
a. preserved b. captivated c. displayed d. highlighted
36. This is a valuable palace that belongs to architecture.
a. hidden b. initial c. medieval d. moving
37. There's a secret that no one of us is able to find out about.
Why are things unclear?
a. well worth b. mysterious c. prehistoric d. missed
38. He is the throne prince. He is
a. beneficial b. emotional c. absolute d. royal
39. Internship gives you experience.
a. practical b. well-preserved c. preserved d. talkative
40. In addition to the Egyptian flag, a group of football fans raised the
Palestinian flag to their support of the Palestinian issue.
a. miss b. captivate c. display d. negotiate
41. The of the King moved towards the airport.
a. aspect b. healing c. gateway d. procession
42. After long years of hard work, Mr Ayman himself as a good manager.
a. categorised b. deciphered c. established d. ruled

3 Definitions

43. A is something that is so good, exciting, or interesting that you think people should see it.
a. highlight b. must-see c. mausoleum d. gateway
44. means making you feel strong emotions, especially sadness or sympathy.
a. Selfish b. Dedicated c. Elaborate d. Moving
45. A is a large stone building made specially to contain the body of a dead person, or the dead bodies of an important family.
a. highlight b. must-see c. mausoleum d. gateway
46. A is the most important, interesting, or enjoyable part of something such as a holiday, performance, or sports competition.
a. highlight b. dam c. mausoleum d. gateway
47. means very complicated and detailed; carefully prepared and organized.
a. Selfish b. Dedicated c. Elaborate d. Moving
48. A is a place through which you can go to reach another larger place.
a. highlight b. dam c. mausoleum d. gateway
49. means made for or used for only one particular purpose.
a. Selfish b. Dedicated c. Elaborate d. Moving
50. A is a special wall built across a river or stream to stop the water from flowing, especially in order to make a lake or produce electricity.
a. highlight b. dam c. mausoleum d. gateway

Part II Vocabulary Study

توليه ساعد معلمك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مسبقاً بشكل جيد.

1 Verbal Collocations متلزمات لفظية

be	aware	يكون حنراً	hold	sporting events يقيم أحداث رياضية
conduct/do	a survey	يُجري بحث استطلاعي	negotiate	conference يعقد مؤتمر
follow	the direction	الأسهم التوجيه	show	the price يتفاوض حول السعر
get	lost	يتوه		respect to يُظهر الاحترام لـ

Mini Test 1 Collocations

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- A useful survey has been by a team of researchers.
a. done b. got c. conducted d. a & c
- One should aware of the dangers that threatens their society.
a. be b. follow c. negotiate d. hold
- In open-air markets, sellers expect their price to be
a. shown b. got c. negotiated d. held
- Our organisation is an educational conference next summer.
a. being b. getting c. doing d. holding
- respect to other people is good behaviour.
a. Showing b. Getting c. Negotiating d. Holding
- Mariam lost in the city centre.
a. did b. got c. negotiated d. held
- Just the directions step by step and everything will be OK.
a. be b. follow c. negotiate d. hold

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
aware(adj) علي علم بـ	conscious of, acquainted with, informed
highlight (n) الجزء الأبرز	about/of, familiar with, alert to
highlight (v) يُبرز	best part
moving(adj) مؤثر / مُحرك للمشاعر	focus on, focus attention on, spotlight
not to be missed لا يُفوت	emotional, affecting, touching
worth (n) قيمة - جدارة	essential
(well) worth (adj) يستحق - جدير بـ	value
	beneficial, valuable, useful

3 Antonyms متضادات

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)
aware(adj) علي علم بـ	unaware, ignorant جاهل
moving(adj) مؤثر / مُحرك للمشاعر	unemotional غير عاطفي
(well) worth (adj) يستحق - جدير بـ	worthless, valueless عديم القيمة

Mini Test 2 Synonyms & Antonyms

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- "This film has a moving end." In this context, the word 'moving' is a synonym of
a. emotional b. unemotional c. changing d. practical
- "I am aware of your problem." The word 'aware' here is an antonym of
a. ignorant b. familiar c. alert d. informed
- "I am aware of your problem." The word 'aware' here can be replaced by
a. ignorant b. familiar c. alert d. informed
- "I watched only the highlights of the game." The word 'highlights' here is a synonym of
a. focus on b. concentrate on c. best part d. a & b
- means the opposite of well worth.
a. valuable b. valueless c. worthwhile d. worthy

4 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a real feel for إحساس حقيقي بـ	powerful smells of spices روائح التوابل النفاذة
entry tickets تذاكر الدخول	practical information معلومات عملية
feel as though يشعر كما لو أن	refreshing coffee قهوة منعشة
from prehistoric times من عصور ما قبل التاريخ	royal family الأسرة الملكية
get ... for one-third of the initial price يشتري ... بثُلث السعر المبني	sporting events أحداث رياضية
go on holiday يسافر في إجازة	the hidden treasures of الكنوز المخفية
in large numbers بأعداد كبيرة	The National Museum of Egyptian المتحف القومي للحضارة المصرية
maze of alleyways متاهة الأزقة	Civilisation حتى الوقت الحاضر
medieval Egypt مصر في العصور الوسطى	to the present day
Pharaoh's Golden Parade العرض الفرعوني الذهبي	transport you to another world تأخذك إلى عالم آخر
	well worth visiting يستحق الزيارة فعلاً

5 Synonymous idioms تعبيرات مترادفة

a moving sight
= an emotional sight
absolute must-see
= be worth seeing

all in all = on the whole, taking everything
into account/consideration
open-air market = outdoor market

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

look for
provide ... for

sell ... for
transport (...) from / to

Mini Test 3 Expressions, Prepositions & Idioms

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- I got the tablet half the initial price.
a. from b. to c. on d. for
- Something that is an absolute must-see is
a. unavailable to see b. unseen by nature
c. worth seeing d. worth not seeing
- Children like it when we go holiday.
a. to b. on c. from d. by
- A sight is one that is emotional.
a. beautiful b. essential c. beneficial d. moving
- This farmer raises sheep large numbers.
a. up b. out c. in d. on
- This romantic poem will transport you another world.
a. to b. from c. by d. of
- The expression 'all in all' means
a. on the whole b. taking everything into account
c. taking everything into consideration d. a, b & c

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

moving - movable - unmoved

• moving (adj)

- The final scene of the film is deeply moving. The heroine (البطلة) loses her son.

• movable (adj)

- I bought a toy with movable parts for my daughter.

• unmoved (adj)

- We all were affected by losing the match, but Ali seemed unmoved.

worth - worthwhile

تستخدم كلمة (worth) كصفة بمعنى (ذو قيمة/ يستحق قيمة) بعد الأفعال التقريرية فقط:

• be / seem / look ... + worth = having a particular value

- This villa is worth half a million pounds.

لاحظ أن:

• be + worth + inf. + ing = useful or important enough to do

- Joining the faculty of medicine is worth studying hard.

تستخدم كلمة (worthwhile) كصفة بمعنى (مفيد/ هام/ مجزي) قبل اسم أو بعد الأفعال التقريرية:

• worthwhile + noun

- Working as a doctor is a worthwhile career.

• be / seem / look ... + worthwhile

- For a newly married couple, having a big car is not worthwhile.

Mini Test 4 Clear the confusion

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- This camera 15,000 dollars.
a. worth b. is worth c. worthwhile d. is worthwhile
- I think teaching is career.
a. worth b. a worth c. worthwhile d. a worthwhile
- The scene of the mother finding her little daughter at the end of the film me to tears.
a. moved b. moving c. movement d. movable
- The scene of the mother finding her little daughter at the end of the film was so that I burst into tears.
a. moved b. moving c. movement d. movable

Part III

1 Reading Texts

A new modern museum in Old Cairo

I decided to visit The National Museum for Egyptian Civilisation⁽¹⁾ after watching a YouTube video of the spectacular⁽²⁾ Pharaoh's Golden⁽³⁾ Parade⁽⁴⁾. This was a grand⁽⁵⁾ procession⁽⁶⁾ in which 22 mummies of Ancient Egyptian rulers⁽⁷⁾ were transported⁽⁸⁾ from the

old Egyptian Museum to the new National Museum or Egyptian Civilisation in the ancient⁽⁹⁾ city of Fustat.

It was one of the most moving⁽¹⁰⁾ sights⁽¹¹⁾ I have ever experienced⁽¹²⁾, so much heritage⁽¹³⁾ and culture⁽¹⁴⁾ in one single parade! The museum, which opened after the parade in May 2021 is very beautiful and impressive. The mummy section⁽¹⁵⁾, located⁽¹⁶⁾ in the Royal⁽¹⁷⁾ Mummies Hall⁽¹⁸⁾ beneath⁽¹⁹⁾ the main hall, is not to be missed⁽²⁰⁾. For me, it was definitely the highlight⁽²¹⁾.

The displays⁽²²⁾ contain 18 kings and four queens that ruled⁽²³⁾ Ancient Egypt over 3,000 years ago. Visitors can follow the direction arrows⁽²⁴⁾ on the floor to go through the passages⁽²⁵⁾, tour⁽²⁶⁾ the entire⁽²⁷⁾ hall and see all the mummies which are displayed next to the coffins⁽²⁸⁾ they were found in. In the main museum you can see more than 50,000 artefacts⁽²⁹⁾ showing Egyptian Civilisation from prehistoric⁽³⁰⁾ times to the present day.

The museum is an absolute⁽³¹⁾ must-see⁽³²⁾ for anyone travelling to Egypt. It's open from 9 am to 5 pm, but it's well worth⁽³³⁾ visiting early in the morning, so you can appreciate⁽³⁴⁾ the museum best when it's quiet.



29 reviews

Excellent	10
Very good	8
Average	3
Poor	1
Terrible	0

WB page 49
Check
Vocabulary

- (1) حضارة
- (2) مذهل
- (3) ذهبي
- (4) مسيرة
- (5) عظيم
- (6) موكب
- (7) حكام
- (8) ينقل
- (9) قديم
- (10) منظر للمشاهد
- (11) منظر / مشاهد
- (12) عظيم / يمر بـ
- (13) التراث
- (14) الثقافة
- (15) قسم
- (16) يقع / يوجد
- (17) ملكي
- (18) ديوان / قاعة
- (19) أسفل
- (20) يفوت
- (21) الجزء الأبرز
- (22) عرض
- (23) يحكم
- (24) سهم
- (25) ممر / دهليز
- (26) يتجول في
- (27) كامل
- (28) تابوت
- (29) تحف
- (30) ما قبل التاريخ
- (31) مطلق
- (32) لا بد من رؤيته
- (33) يستحق
- (34) تفر / يُفهم

Entry⁽³⁵⁾ tickets cost 60 LE for Egyptians and LE for non-Egyptians. There's a small café that sells tea, coffee and sandwiches. Make sure you go early since traffic can become difficult after 12 noon.

(35) دخول

The wonderful⁽¹⁾ hidden⁽²⁾ treasures of Khan el-Khalili (WB page 29)

I have always loved looking for souvenirs in markets and small shops, so when I was in Cairo, the Khan el-Khalili bazaar was a must-see for me!

Today it is an open-air⁽³⁾ market where you can find local crafts⁽⁴⁾ and souvenirs⁽⁵⁾

but it has a long history and used to be a mausoleum⁽⁶⁾ for the Fatimid⁽⁷⁾ royal family before being rebuilt⁽⁸⁾ in 1511. As you enter the narrow streets you feel as though⁽⁹⁾ you have been transported⁽¹⁰⁾ to medieval⁽¹¹⁾ Egypt. The colourful products⁽¹²⁾ displayed⁽¹³⁾ in shop fronts⁽¹⁴⁾, the sellers and powerful smells⁽¹⁵⁾ of spices⁽¹⁶⁾ and traditional food captivate⁽¹⁷⁾ you and transport you to another world.

The bazaar opens at 9.00 am and most shops close quite late. Nobody seems to know just how many shops there are and it's quite easy to get lost⁽¹⁸⁾ in the maze⁽¹⁹⁾ of alleyways⁽²⁰⁾ so you should wear comfortable shoes. If you need a rest, a refreshing⁽²¹⁾ coffee or sweet tea at the historic El-Fishawi café (established⁽²²⁾ in the 1770s) is well worth it.

All in all, I loved the variety⁽²³⁾ of local products and the chance⁽²⁴⁾ to get a real feel⁽²⁵⁾ for the authentic⁽²⁶⁾ Egyptian experience. The highlight for me was getting some wonderful souvenirs for my friends and family back home. The only thing I didn't like was that I had too many souvenirs to carry! My advice to you is to make sure you buy a large backpack to put all your gifts in and carry them easily!

Check
Vocabulary

- (1) رائع
- (2) مخفي / مخبأ
- (3) الهواء الطلق
- (4) مهن يدوية
- (5) هدايا تذكارية
- (6) ضريح
- (7) فاطمي
- (8) يُعيد بناء
- (9) كما لو أن
- (10) ينتقل / ينقل
- (11) من العصور الوسطى
- (12) منتجات
- (13) يُعرض
- (14) واجهة
- (15) رائحة
- (16) توابل
- (17) ياسر - يخلب
- (18) يتوه
- (19) متاهة
- (20) زقاق
- (21) مُنعش
- (22) يُنشئ
- (23) التنوع
- (24) الفرصة
- (25) شعور
- (26) حقيقي

part Habits (would + inf.) Vs (used to + inf.)

1. used to أن اعتاد أن + inf.

(used to) باستخدام

تذكر أهم النقاط الخاصة باستخدام (used to + inf.) كفعل شبه ناقص للدعير عن عادات وأحوال الماضي التي لم تعد موجودة في الحاضر كالتالي:

- Rodayna used to eat cheese for breakfast. (إثبات مبني للمعلوم)
- Rodayna didn't use to eat cheese for breakfast. (نفي)
- Did Rodayna use to eat cheese for breakfast? («سؤال به «هل»)
- What did Rodayna use to eat for breakfast? («أداة استفهام»)
- Cheese used to be eaten for breakfast (by Rodayna). (مبنى للمجهول)

⚠ لاحظ أن الصيغ التالية لا تعطي نفس المعنى السابق:

1. be + used to + noun / (inf. + ing) ...

تستخدم (used to) في هذه الصيغة كصفة بمعنى (معتاد علي) لوصف حالة أو وضع:

- Omar was used to getting up early. (كان معتاداً)

2. get / become / grow ... + used to + noun / (inf. + ing) ...

تستخدم (used to) في هذه الصيغة كصفة بمعنى (يصبح معتاداً علي) للدلالة على التعود (الانتقال من حالة عدم التعود إلى حالة التعود):

- Mr Abdulrahman got used to living in Tanta. (تعود علي)

⚠ لاحظ التساوي في المعنى بين الصيغ الثلاثة التالية:

- subj. + used to + inf.
- subj. + no longer + inf. / (inf. + s/es/ies)
- subj. + don't/doesn't + inf. ... any more / any longer

- Leen used to ride a bike.
- = Leen no longer rides a bike.
- = Leen doesn't ride a bike any more.
- I used to smoke.
- = I no longer smoke.
- = I don't smoke any longer.

2. would + inf. Vs used to + inf.

1. تُستخدم (would + inf.) بمعنى (اعتاد أن) مثل (used to + inf.) للتعبير عن الأحداث والعادات المتكررة في الماضي والتي لم تعد موجودة في الحاضر:

- When she was young, she would go to bed early.
- = When she was young, she used to go to bed early.

في المثال السابق استخدام (used to go / would go) صحيح وذلك لأن الذهاب إلى الفراش مبكراً كان حدثاً متكرراً يحدث مرات ومرات.

2. تُستخدم (used to + inf.) وليس (would + inf.) لوصف وضع أو موقف في الماضي:

- Mr Mohammed used to live in Assuit. Now he lives in Aswan. (✓)
- Mr Mohammed would live in Assuit. Now he lives in Aswan. (X)

في المثال السابق لا يمكن استخدام (would live) وذلك لأن الحياة في مكان ما (أسيوط هنا) ليست حدثاً متكرراً يحدث مرات ومرات، بل إنها حالة كانت موجودة في الماضي ولم تعد موجودة الآن.

3. لا يمكن استخدام (would + inf.) إذا كان الفعل الأساسي أحد الأفعال التقريرية لأن الأفعال التقريرية تصف حالة أو موقف وليس حدثاً متكرراً يحدث مرات ومرات، ومن أمثلة هذه الأفعال:

be	يكون/ يوجد	hear	يسمع
cost	يتكلف	like	يحب
deserve	يستحق	love	يحب
dislike	يكره	own	يمتلك
enjoy	يستمتع به	possess	يمتلك
exist	يوجد	understand	يفهم
feel	يشعر به	want	يريد
hate	يكره	weigh	يَزن
have	يمتلك	wish	يَتمنى

- I would have a red bike when I was a little child. (X)
- I used to have a red bike when I was a little child. (✓)

في المثال السابق لا يمكن استخدام (would have) وذلك لأن امتلاك شيء ما (دراجة حمراء هنا) ليست حدثاً متكرراً يحدث مرات ومرات، بل إنها حالة كانت موجودة في الماضي ولم تعد موجودة الآن.

- When she was a child, he used to be naughty. (✓)
- When she was a child, he would be naughty. (X)

في المثال السابق لا يمكن استخدام (would be) وذلك لأن كَوْن الشخص يتصف بصفة ما (الشاغبة هنا) ليست حدثاً متكرراً يحدث مرات ومرات، بل إنها حالة كانت موجودة في الماضي ولم تعد موجودة الآن.

نُستخدم (used to + inf.) وليس (would + inf.) لوصف العادات المنتظمة أو العادات الهامة في الماضي:

- When Omar was a young man, he would work as a fisherman. (X)
- When Omar was a young man, he used to work as a fisherman. (✓)

نشير (used to + inf.) بشكل واضح إلى عادات الماضي، لكن (would + inf.) لا تشير بالضرورة إلى الماضي، لذلك من الضروري أن يسبقها ظرف زمان أو تعبير يدل على الماضي:

- Rodayna used to wear colourful clothes. (✓)
- Rodayna would wear colourful clothes. (X)
- When Rodayna was a student, she would wear colourful clothes. (✓)

يمكن أن تُستخدم ظروف التكرار مثل (always, usually, sometimes) قبل أو بعد (used):

- When I was in primary school, I always used to come first.
- When I was in primary school, I used always to come first.

نُستخدم ظروف التكرار مثل (always, usually, sometimes) بعد (would):

- When I in primary school, I would always come first.

يُستخدم الماضي البسيط وليس (used to/would + inf.) مع الأحداث التي حدثت مرة واحدة فقط:

- I would travel to Paris in 2012. (X)
- I used to travel to Paris in 2012. (X)
- I travelled to Paris in 2012. (✓)

يُستخدم الماضي البسيط وليس (used to + inf.) مع الأحداث التي حدثت في فترة زمنية قصيرة تجعل من الصعب أن يكون الحدث عادة:

- I used to live with my aunt last month. (X)
- I lived with my aunt last month. (✓)

نُستخدم (used to + inf.) فقط وليس (would + inf.) في النفي والاستفهام:

- When she was young, she wouldn't go to bed late. (X)
- When she was young, she didn't use to go to bed late. (✓)
- Would you swim in the sea when you were younger? (X)
- Did you use to swim in the sea when you were younger? (✓)

General Exercise On Language



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

I Getting Started

1. When I was a little child, I watch cartoons.
a. used to b. used c. would d. a & c
2. My mother get me presents very often.
a. uses b. used c. would d. b & c
3. My mother to get me presents very often.
a. uses b. used c. would d. b & c
4. My mother get me presents very often.
a. uses b. used to c. would d. b & c
5. When he was a young man, my grandpa very smart.
a. looked b. used to look c. a & b d. would look
6. While on holidays, I used swimming every day.
a. go b. going c. to go d. to going
7. While on holidays, I used to swimming every day.
a. go b. going c. to go d. to going
8. While on holidays, I grew used to swimming every day.
a. go b. going c. to go d. to going
9. While on holidays, I grew used swimming every day.
a. go b. going c. to go d. to going
10. While on holidays, I would swimming every day.
a. go b. going c. to go d. to going
11. When she was younger, my grandma do the housework on her own.
a. would b. used to c. a & b d. was used to
12. When she was younger, my grandma doing the housework on her own.
a. would b. used to c. a & b d. was used to
13. Sama help mum with the cooking when she was little.
a. no longer b. used to c. was used to d. is used to
14. Sama helping mum with the cooking when she was little.
a. no longer b. used to c. was used to d. is used to

15. Sama helps mum with the cooking as she has travelled abroad.
a. no longer b. used to c. was used to d. is used to
16. Sama helping mum with the cooking whenever she has time.
a. no longer b. used to c. was used to d. is used to
17. She used to go shopping when she young.
a. were b. been c. am d. was
18. What did she to read when she was free?
a. uses b. using c. use d. a & c
19. I used to my current job after only one week.
a. get b. is c. became d. become

II Special Cases

20. do anything else in addition to his study?
a. Did Omar use to b. Was Omar used to
c. Would Omar d. a & c
21. doing anything else in addition to his study?
a. Did Omar use to b. Was Omar used to
c. Would Omar d. a & c
22. When I was a little child, I look skinny and weak.
a. used to b. used c. would d. a & c
23. While on holiday last month, I swimming every day.
a. used to go b. got used to going
c. was used to going d. went
24. In his early youth, my uncle smoke.
a. was used to b. used c. would d. used to
25. When I was younger I swimming, but now I really love it!
a. hadn't used to enjoyed b. wasn't enjoying
c. wouldn't enjoy d. didn't use to enjoy
26. In the past, more people do manual work.
a. didn't use b. were used to c. would d. used to
27. to go to bed early when you were on holiday?
a. Would you use b. Were you used c. Did you use to d. Did you use
28. to going to bed early when you were on holiday?
a. Would you use b. Were you used c. Did you use to d. Did you use

29. Last week, I two conferences.
a. used to attend b. got used to attending
c. would attend d. attended
30. This knife is used food.
a. to cut b. cut c. cutting d. to cutting
31. used to be a big tree here. Now there's a plot of flowers.
a. Those b. These c. There's d. There
32. Rokaya for a walk every day last week.
a. used to go b. didn't use to go c. went d. had gone
33. This chemical is used insecticides.
a. to make b. to making c. making d. being made
34. I don't smoke more.
a. too b. any c. no d. not
35. Buying a flat cost far less money in the past.
a. would b. would to c. used to d. used to have
36. Whenever I saw that my mum was OK, I be over the moon.
a. used to b. was used to c. would d. would always

III Check your understanding

37. I no longer live in Assuit. To me, living in Assuit is
a. a fact b. a present habit
c. a past state d. a past repeated action
38. Which of the following is a correctly structured sentence about a past state?
a. I used to be a fitness trainer. b. I would be a fitness trainer.
c. a & b d. I wouldn't be a fitness trainer.
39. Which of the following is a correctly structured sentence about a past habit?
a. I used to do fitness training. b. I would do fitness training.
c. a & b d. I wouldn't do fitness training.
40. There used to be a cinema in our street. Now,
a. there's a cinema in our street.
b. we have a cinema in our street.
c. we never had a cinema in our street.
d. we don't have a cinema in our street.

41. I used to like salty food. This means
 a. I still like salty food.
 c. I would like salty food.
 42. Sama is no longer a baby. She
 a. used to be a baby.
 c. would be a baby.
 43. There used to be a bookshop here. This means
 a. there was no bookshop here.
 c. a bookshop used to be here.
 44. I don't stay up late any longer. This means
 a. I used to stay up late.
 c. I would stay up late.
 45. "Did she use to work as a secretary?" Which of the following gives the same meaning?
 a. Was she used to working as a secretary?
 b. Would she work as a secretary?
 c. Was it her habit to work as a secretary?
 d. b & c

احرص على اقتناء

EL-MOASSER

في اللغة الإنجليزية

المراجعة النهائية

للفصل الثالث الثانوي

امدح نفسك له يستحق

Part I Vocabulary & Definitions

• هذا الجزء خاص بالمفردات والتعابير الرئيسية للقصة. لقراءة نص القصة المقررة وللمزيد من المفردات اللغوية والتدريبات نهاية الكتاب.

تنويه

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

acquit(ted) (v)	يُبرئ - يُخلي سبيل	murder(ed) (v)	يقتل
coincidence (n)	مصادفة	related(adj)	ذو قرابة
commit a crime	يرتكب جريمة	rowing (n)	التجديف
criminal (n)	مُجرم	take my mind off	أحاول أن أنسى -
lawyer (n)	محامي		أصرف ذهني عن
legal(adj)	قانوني	tears (n)	الدموع

2 Definitions التعريفات

لابد من قراءة التعريفات التالية جيدًا. فهي موضع امتحان.

تنويه

acquit(ted)(v)	يُبرئ - يُخلي سبيل	when a person is told officially رسمي بشكل they did not commit a crime
coincidence (n)	مصادفة	when things happen at the same time in a way that seems surprising or unusual
criminal(n)	مُجرم	someone who commits a crime
lawyer(n)	محامي	a person who can help you with legal problems
murder(ed) (v)	يقتل	to kill a person
related (adj)	ذو قرابة	an adjective to describe that you are part of the same family as another person
rowing (n)	التجديف	the action of moving a boat on water using long sticks
take my mind off	أحاول أن أنسى - أصرف ذهني عن	to stop thinking about something which is negative
tears (n)	الدموع	the drops of water which fall from your eyes when you are sad

الترجمة Translation

① Choose the best Arabic translation :

1. If we give our deserts due care, we can increase our national income and solve many of our problems.

- أ. إذا أعطينا صحارينا العناية السببية، يمكننا زيادة دخلنا القومي وحل العديد من مشاكلنا.
- ب. إذا أعطينا صحارينا العناية الواجبة، يمكننا زيادة دخلنا القومي وحل القليل من مشاكلنا.
- ج. إذا أعطينا صحارينا العناية الواجبة، يمكننا زيادة دخلنا القومي وحل العديد من مشاكلنا.
- د. إذا لم نعط صحارينا العناية الواجبة، يمكننا زيادة دخلنا القومي وحل العديد من مشاكلنا.

2. Big dams are built across rivers and their tributaries to control high floods in the rainy season.

- أ. تقام السدود الكبيرة بطول الأنهار وروافدها للسيطرة على الفيضانات العالية في الموسم المطير.
- ب. تقام السدود الكبيرة عبر الأنهار وروافدها للسيطرة على الفيضانات العالية الموسم المطير.
- ج. تقام السدود عبر الأنهار وروافدها للسيطرة على الفيضانات المنخفضة الموسم المطير.
- د. تقام السدود الكبيرة عبر الأنهار للسيطرة على الفيضانات الطويلة الموسم المطير.

3. With the discovery of agriculture began the story of civilizations, the first of which was the ancient Egyptian civilisation.

- أ. مع اكتشاف الزراعة بدأت قصة الحضارات، ربما أولها الحضارة المصرية القديمة.
- ب. مع اختراع الزراعة بدأت قصة الحضارات، أولها الحضارة المصرية القديمة.
- ج. مع اكتشاف الزراعة بدأت قصة الحضارات، وأولها الحضارة المصرية القديمة.
- د. مع اكتشاف الزراعة تطورت قصة حضارات أولها الحضارة المصرية القديمة.

4. Many people feel motivated to move and they may seek a new and better living conditions. People travel to foreign countries because they believe they would be different form home.

- أ. يشعر الكثير من الناس بالحافز للسفر، وقد يسعون إلى ظروف معيشية جديدة وأفضل، ويسافر الناس إلى دول أجنبية لأنهم يعتقدون أنها ستكون مختلفة عن الوطن.
- ب. يشعر الكثير من الناس بالحافز للتحرك وقد يسعون إلى ظروف معيشية جيدة وأفضل. يسافر الناس إلى دول أجنبية لأنهم يعتقدون أنهم سيكونون مختلفين عن الوطن.
- ج. يشعر الكثير من الناس بالحافز للتحرك وقد يسعون إلى ظروف معيشية جديدة وأفضل. يسافر الناس إلى دول أجنبية لأنهم يعتقدون أنهم سيكونون مختلفين عن الوطن.
- د. يشعر الكثير من الناس بالحافز للحركة وقد يسعون إلى ظروف معيشية جديدة وأكبر. كما يسافر الناس إلى دول أجنبية لأنهم يعتقدون أنهم سيكونون مختلفين عن الوطن.

2 Choose the best English translation :

١. كنت أشاهد فيلماً وثائقياً عن الملك رمسيس الثاني عندما تلقيت اتصالاً من أخي في المملكة العربية السعودية.
a. I have been watching a documentary about King Ramses II when I got a call from my brother in Saudi Arabia.
b. I had watched a documentary about King Ramses II when I got a call from my brother in Saudi Arabia.
c. I was watching a documentary about King Ramses II when I got a call from my brother in Saudi Arabia.
d. I have been watching a documentary about King Ramses II when I got a call from my brother in Saudi Arabia.

٢. إن منظر غروب الشمس فوق سطح البحر يبدو رائعاً، ويجعلك سكون الليل تشعر بالسكينة.
a. The view of the sunset over the sea looks wonderfully, and the silence of the night makes you feel peaceful.
b. The view of the sunset over the sea is wonderful, and the silence of the night makes you feel peaceful.
c. The view of the sunset over the sea is wonderful, and the silence of the night makes you feel peacefully.
d. The view of the sunset over the sea is wonderfully, and the silence of the night makes you feel peacefully.

٣. إن القيام بواجباتك تجاه مجتمعك كمواطن صالح لا بد أن يسبق قيامك بالمطالبة بحقوقك المشروعة.
a. Carrying out your duties towards your community as a good citizen must precede asking for your legitimate rights.
b. As a good citizen, carrying out your duties towards your community must precede asking for your legitimate rights.
c. Carrying out your duties towards your community as a valid citizen must precede asking for your legitimate rights.
d. a & b

٤. لقد أخبرتهم أنني سوف أرافقهم في رحلتهم المدرسية القادمة إلى جزيرة النباتات في أسوان.
a. I told them I would take them on their next school trip to the Island of Plants in Aswan.
b. I have told them I would accompany them on their next school trip to the Island of Plants in Aswan.
c. I told them I would go with them on their next school trip to the Island of Plants in Aswan.
d. I told them I would take them on their next school trip to the Island of Plants in Aswan.

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

تنويه

يمكنك حل الاختبار وتصويبه إلكترونياً



2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- This film has a moving end." In this context, the word 'moving' is an antonym of
a. emotional b. unemotional c. changing d. practical
- Mummies are well- human bodies.
a. practical b. entire c. preserved d. essential
- There are huge of Ramses II in the temple.
a. honours b. interests c. Muses d. sculptures
- I bought this car for a good price, it is really a
a. myth b. heritage site c. bargain d. remain
- To is to remove something from the ground.
a. pick up b. hand in c. come across d. dig up
- This is an elaborate system." The adjective 'elaborate' here is an antonym of
a. simple b. complicated c. complex d. b & c
- Don't up your sadness. Cry it out.
a. display b. decipher c. categorize d. dam
- I sold my car more money than I had bought it for.
a. with b. for c. by d. at
- Let's try to find them. They gone very far. (نموذج الوزارة الثاني ٢٠١٤)
a. must b. mustn't have c. can't have d. could have
- Climbing Mount Everest very difficult. The oxygen is very thin at the top. (LM)
a. must have be b. must been c. mustn't been d. must have been
- Those shoes are gorgeous! They cheap. (LM)
a. can't have been b. can't have c. mustn't have d. mustn't been
- She have remembered our phone number because she called us today. (LM)
a. must b. can't c. mustn't d. might
- The test have been very difficult. You got an A. (LM)
a. can't b. could c. might d. must
- Mariam might have a bone when she was eating the fish. (LM)
a. swallow b. swallowing c. swallowed d. swallows

21. According to the passage, "customers" are people who
 a. repair b. manufacture c. analyse d. buy
22. The best sentence which summarises the passage is
 a. Academic jobs will prevail in the future.
 b. Pilots and astronauts will be the most needed jobs in the future.
 c. Jobs in the future will be connected with computer and technology.
 d. Vocational jobs will not exist in the future.
23. The writer thinks that we should
 a. change our jobs b. prepare children for future jobs
 c. search for new jobs d. refuse our recent jobs
24. According to the passage, who can benefit well from new jobs?
 a. old people b. youth c. retired people d. infants

Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Sometimes, people may be punished for things they didn't do. Do you think that we should stop doing good things in case we feel danger or we should continue doing it? On the night of April 14, 1865 President Abraham Lincoln was attending the theater in Washington. In the middle of the performance, an actor named John Wilkes Booth, seeking to avenge the defeat of the South, slipped into the presidential box and shot the president. Booth escaped the theater, but broke his leg when he leaped from the president's box seat to the stage.

Five hours later, Booth and his companion arrived at the home of a doctor called Samuel Mudd. He knew nothing about the assassination of the president. He set the leg and persuaded the two travelers to stay in his house for the rest of the night. The next morning, Booth and his friend, using false names, paid the bill and departed, but Dr. Mudd was arrested, taken to Washington, and tried on the charge that he was a friend of Booth's and therefore helped plan the assassination. He insisted that he knew nothing of the plot, but the court sentenced the unfortunate doctor to life imprisonment.

He was imprisoned at Fort Jefferson. The warm, humid climate at the fort was a perfect breeding ground for mosquitoes. Again and again, these pests spread yellow fever germs to prisoners and guards alike. Dr. Mudd volunteered his services, because he was the only doctor on

the island. He had to fight the disease, even after he was infected himself. In spite of the fact that the guards and other inmates called him "that Lincoln murderer," and treated him very badly, he worked hard to fight the disease. Meanwhile, his wife was working heroically back in Washington for her husband's cause. After a four-year struggle, she secured a pardon for him for a crime he never committed.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

25. The best title for this passage is
 a. The reasons for Lincoln's Assassination
 b. Lincoln's efforts to free the Americans
 c. A fair trial for an unfair man
 d. An unfair trial for a fair man
26. What was the unfair cause of Dr Mudd's conviction إدانة ؟
 a. He helped Booth get away.
 b. He helped Booth assassinate Lincoln.
 c. He didn't like the President.
 d. He lied to Booth and his fellow.
27. According to the passage, Booth killed Lincoln because
 a. He was one of Lincoln's supporters
 b. He supported the defeated south
 c. Lincoln helped the south a lot
 d. Lincoln defeated the north a lot

The last paragraph represents

- a. the crime of the husband b. the life of the prisoners
 the suffering of the prisoners d. the end of the diseases

Why do you think Dr Mudd fought the yellow fever outbreak at Fort Mifflin?

Because the prisoners and the guards were his friends.

There was no one else to treat the sick prisoners.

He thought it would help get him a pardon.

He didn't want to get sick himself.

Reading the story of Dr Mudd, we can see that he was

..... person.

..... and kind

..... and careless

- b. selfish and greedy
 d. violent and intelligent

31. Which of the following sentences is CORRECT ?

- a. Prisons in poor areas are full of diseases.
 b. Prisons in the developed areas have no care.
 c. Prisoners don't suffer in their cells.
 d. Prisoners lead a healthy life in their cells.

32. The main reason for the spread of fever is

- a. The large number of people at the fort
 b. The bad food and water at the fort
 c. The warm and humid climate there
 d. The wildlife around the fort

Choose the best Arabic translation :

33. The housing problem has forced many young people to reject marriage. This is because it is difficult for a young man to buy or rent a flat.

أ. مشكلة الإسكان أجبرت العديد من الشباب على العزوف عن الزواج. وهذا بسبب أنه من الصعب لشاب أن يشتري أو يستأجر شقة.

ب. إن مشكلة الإسكان أجبرت العديد من الشباب على الإضراب عن الزواج. ويرجع ذلك لأن الشاب لن يشتري أو يستأجر شقة.

ج. مشكلة الإسكان تدعو العديد من الشباب على الإضراب عن الزواج. ولهذا السبب من الصعب لشاب أن يشتري أو يستأجر شقة.

د. تعتبر مشكلة الإسكان من أجبرت العديد من الشباب على الإضراب عن الزواج. وهذا بسبب أنه ليس من الصعب لشاب أن يشتري أو يستأجر شقة.

34. Most of the working women in Egypt shoulder many responsibilities, dividing their time between their work and bringing up their children.

أ. غالبية السيدات العاملات في مصر تأخذن مسؤوليات عديدة موحدة ما بين عملهن وتعليم أطفالهن.

ب. كثيراً من السيدات العاملات في مصر تحملن مسؤوليات عديدة فأوقاتهن منقسمة ما بين عملهن وتربية أطفالهن.

ج. معظم السيدات العاملات في مصر تتحملن مسؤوليات عديدة فيقسمن وقتهن ما بين عملهن وتربية أطفالهن.

د. عددًا من العاملات في مصر قد تتحملن مسؤوليات فأوقاتهن محددة ما بين عملهن وتربية أطفالهن.

Choose the best English translation :

٣٥. رغم التقدم الذي حققه الإنسان في جميع المجالات، إلا أنه ما يزال يقف عاجزاً أمام بعض الكوارث الطبيعية.
- a. Despite of the progress man had achieved in all fields, they still stands helpless in front of some natural disasters.
- b. Despite the progress man has achieved in all fields, they still stands helpless in front of some natural disasters.
- c. In spite the progress man achieved in all fields, they still stands helpless in front of some nature disasters.
- d. In spite of the progress man has achieved in all fields, they steal stands helpless in front of some nature disasters.

٣٦. تعتبر الشائعات أحد العوامل التي تؤدي لعدم استقرار المجتمع، وخاصة إذا كانت تؤدي جميع أفراد المجتمع.

umours are one of the main elements that lead to the society's stability, pecially if they hurt all the society's members.

ars are one of the main elements that lead to the society's instability, ticularly if they hurt all the society's organs.

rs are one of the main elements that lead to the society's instability, etly if they hurt all the social members.

ours are one of the main elements that lead to the society's vility, especially if they hurt all the society's members.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

Which of the following can be attached to an email ?

- a. Photos. b. Text files. c. Videos. d. All of these.

Choose the sentence with the correct punctuation.

a. I ate fish, Hala ate rice and salad.

b. I ate fish; Hala ate rice and salad.

c. I ate fish: Hala ate rice and salad.

d. I ate fish/ Hala ate rice and salad.

Which form is used to describe a "how-to" essay?

a. Descriptive

b. Descriptive

c. Narrative

d. Narrative

Which of the following sentences has the correct punctuation?

a. I call, me please?

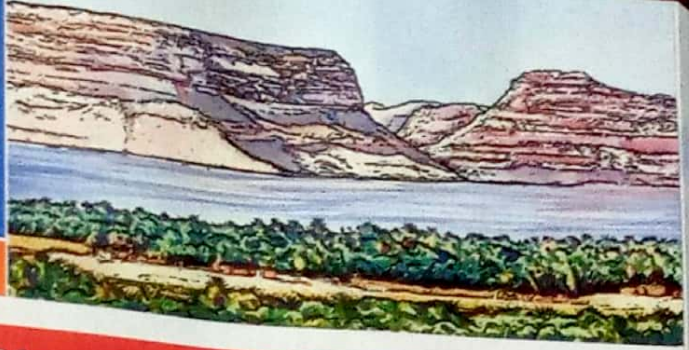
b. Can you call me, please?

c. I call me please,?

d. Can you call me; Please?

تعليمات: ظلل الدائرة المقابلة تماماً للإجابة الصحيحة. إذا ظللت الدائرة أمام الإجابة الخطأ، اشطب عليها بشكل واضح ثم ظلل الدائرة المقابلة للإجابة الصحيحة.

- | | | | | | | | |
|---------|-----|-----|-----|---------|-----|-----|-----|
| 1. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) | 21. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) |
| 2. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) | 22. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) |
| 3. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) | 23. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) |
| 4. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) | 24. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) |
| 5. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) | 25. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) |
| 6. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) | 26. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) |
| 7. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) | 27. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) |
| 8. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) | 28. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) |
| 9. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) | 29. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) |
| 10. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) | 30. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) |
| 11. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) | 31. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) |
| 12. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) | 32. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) |
| 13. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) | 33. (د) | (ج) | (ب) | (أ) |
| 14. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) | 34. (د) | (ج) | (ب) | (أ) |
| 15. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) | 35. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) |
| 16. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) | 36. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) |
| 17. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) | 37. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) |
| 18. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) | 38. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) |
| 19. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) | 39. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) |
| 20. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) | 40. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) |



Part

I

Vocabulary

• اختبر مدى إتقانك للمفردات الرئيسية في كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية.
• المفردات اللغوية باللون الأحمر هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية.

تنويه

1

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

bilingual(adj)	ثنائي اللغة/مُجيد للُغتين	mother tongue(n)	لغة المَنشأ
bilingual(n)	شخص يجيد التحدث بلغتين	multicultural(adj)	مُتعدّد الثقافات
clear-cut(adj)	بَيِّن/ مُحدّد - واضح	multiculturalism(n)	تعدّد الثقافات
deep-seated(adj)	مُتأصّل/ مُتجذّر	multilingual(adj)	متعدد اللغات
dominant(adj)	سائد - مُنتشر - مُسيطر	raise(d) (v)	يُربّي - يرفع - يزيد
identify(ied) (v)	يُحدّد هويّة	well-balanced (adj)	مُتزن عاطفيًا ونفسيًا
identity(n)	هويّة	well-known(adj)	معروف/ مشهور
monolingual(adj)	أحادي اللغة	widely-spoken (adv)	يتم التحدّث بها على نطاق واسع

2

Important Vocabulary

Alzheimer(n)	الزهايمر	kindness(n)	عطف/ طيبة
attend(ed) (v)	يَحْضُر	last(ed) (v)	يستمر
attention(n)	انتباه	limited(adj)	محدود/ مقصور
beneficial(adj)	مفيد	locate(d) (v)	يضع - يحدد موقع
benefit(n)	فائدة/ منفعة	majority(n)	أغلبية
celebration(n)	احتفال	mask(n)	قناع
certain(adj)	مُعَيّن	mayor(n)	حاكم ولاية - عمدة البلدة
classify(ied) (v)	يُصنّف	mental(adj)	ذهني/ عقلي
colourful(adj)	زاهي اللون	minority(n)	أقلّيّة
community(n)	المجتمع	oasis(n)	واحة
confusing(adj)	مُحير/ مُربك	obelisk(n)	مِسلة/ نُصب عَموديّ
consider(ed) (v)	يَعْتَبِر - يُفكّر في	obviously(adv)	بوضوح
convinced(adj)	مُقتنع	official(adj)	رسمي
cultural heritage(n)	الموروث الثقافي	peer(n)	قرين
definitely(adv)	بالتأكيد	perform(ed) (v)	يؤدي
dialect(n)	لهجة/ لُكنة	PhD(n)	الدكتوراه

disappear(ed) (v)
easternmost(adj)
endanger(ed) (v)
endangered(adj)
estimate(d) (v)
event(n)
figure(n)
formally (adv)
forum(n)
function(n)
funeral(n)
including(preposition)
inhabitant(n)
initiative(n)
isolated(adj)

يختفي
أقصى الشرق
يُعرض للخطر
معرض للخطر
يُقدَّر
مناسبة - حدث هام
رقم - شخصية
رسميًا
منتدًى
وظيفة
جنازة
بما في ذلك
ساكن
مبادأة - مُبادأة
مُنْعَزَل

population(n)
precious(adj)
preserve(d) (v)
prince(n)
represent(ed) (v)
Siwi(n)
sociolinguist(n)
suffer(ed) (v)
survive(d) (v)
temporary(adj)
tomb(n)
tour(ed) (v)
unique(adj)
value(d) (v/n)

(عدد) السكان
ثمين / نفيس
يصون / يحافظ علي
أمير
يُمَثِّل / ينوب عن
اللهجة السيوية
عالم لغويات اجتماعية
بعاني
يبقي حيًا - ينجو
مؤقت
مقبرة
يطوف - يتجول في
فريد / مُميَّز
يُعرف / قيمة - القيمة

3 Languages and nationalities

Amazigh(adj)	أمازيغي	Gaelic(n)	اللغة الغيلية (لغة أيرلندية قديمة)
Armenian(adj/n)	أرمني	Mandarin(n)	اللغة الصينية
Bedawi(n)	اللغة البدوية	Nobiin(n)	اللغة النوبية
Bedouin(n)	البدو	Nubian(n/adj)	شخص نُوبي - نوبي
Berber(n)	شخص بربري - أحد لغات البربر	Portuguese(n/adj)	اللغة البرتغالية - شخص برتغالي
Berbers(n)	البربر	Rosetta Stone(n)	حجر رشيد
Catalan(n)	لغة كتالانية	Tamazight(n)	اللغة الأمازيغية

4 Definitions تعريفات

bilingual(adj)	ثنائي اللغة / مُجيد للُغَتَيْن	able to speak two languages well
clear-cut(adj)	بَيِّن / مُحدَّد، مُعَيَّن / وَاضِع	easy to understand or be certain about
deep-seated(adj)	مُتَأَصِّل / مُتَجَدِّر	strong and is very difficult to change
dominant(adj)	سائد - مُنْشَر - مُسَيِّط	more important or noticeable ملحوظ
identity(n)	هوية	who you are as a person
monolingual(adj)	أحادي اللغة	able to speak only one language
mother tongue(n)	لغة المَنشَأ	the first language you learn as a baby

multicultural(adj)	مُتَعَدِّد الثقافات	including people with many different customs and beliefs معتقدات عادات
multilingual(adj)	متعدد اللغات	able to speak a number of languages
raise(d) (v)	يُرفَع - يَرْبِي	to help a child grow up
well-balanced(adj)	مُتَّزِن عاطفيًا ونفسيًا	sensible and does not allow strong emotions to control their behaviour حكيم
well-known(adj)	معروف / مشهور	known by a lot of people

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

- Liverpool is a team. It has players from different nationalities.
a. monolingual b. bilingual c. multilingual d. multicultural
- To your kids well, you need enough money.
a. attend b. raise c. last d. consider
- is a quality of the American society in which all nationalities are represented.
a. Multiculturalism b. Benefit c. Majority d. Identity
- As a writer, Mahfouz is to readers all over the world.
a. isolated b. widely-spoken c. well-known d. well-balanced
- I was born and brought up in Egypt, so my mother is Arabic.
a. dialect b. sociolinguist c. inhabitant d. tongue
- A : In addition to Arabic, I speak English. B : You are then.
a. monolingual b. bilingual c. multilingual d. multicultural
- I have a belief in Allah.
a. convinced b. easternmost c. deep-seated d. beneficial
- He has a/an personality that always seeks to have power and control over others.
a. dominant b. limited c. official d. precious
- If you are, you'll find it difficult to get a good job.
a. monolingual b. bilingual c. multilingual d. multicultural
- Arabic is a/an language. It is the official language of most Arab countries.
a. isolated b. widely-spoken c. well-read d. well-balanced

27. El-Moasser is as a high-quality educational book.
 a. classified b. endangered c. toured d. represented
28. Egypt's to solve the problem was successful.
 a. figure b. event c. initiative d. oasis
29. Luckily, everyone on the bus the accident.
 a. toured b. preserved c. located d. survived
30. I wonder if anyone would visit this site. It is hundreds of miles away.
 a. isolated b. widely-spoken c. well-known d. well-balanced
31. I can't help you as I have very time.
 a. dominant b. limited c. official d. precious
32. After kindergarten, primary stage for six years.
 a. attends b. raises c. lasts d. considers
33. Everyone in the was dressed in black.
 a. function b. forum c. minority d. funeral
34. When sales rise, traders make a lot of money.
 a. figures b. events c. initiatives d. oases
35. Egypt has a/an location. That's why it plays an important strategic role.
 a. temporary b. unique c. endangered d. isolated
36. I am Luxor and Aswan with my family this winter.
 a. touring b. preserving c. locating d. surviving
37. Cycling is highly to both our health and the environment.
 a. convinced b. clear-cut c. deep-seated d. beneficial
38. Despite the long years he spent in Cairo, Abdulrahman Al-Abnody always used to speak in his broad Upper Egyptian
 a. dialect b. sociolinguist c. inhabitant d. mouth
39. Slow down, Hussein. Don't the lives of your passengers.
 a. classify b. endanger c. estimate d. represent
40. My parents live in a remote in the western desert.
 a. figure b. event c. initiative d. oasis
41. This problem is only It will be solved and soon everything will be OK.
 a. temporary b. unique c. endangered d. isolated

Part II Vocabulary Study

ساعد معلمك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مسبقاً بشكل جيد.

تنويه

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

bring	benefits	يجلب منافع	plan	a multicultural festival يُعَدُّ لمهرجان مُتعدِّد الثقافات
do	business	يزاول نشاط اقتصادي	play	music يُشغِّل موسيقي / يعزف موسيقي
focus	attention	يُرَكِّز انتباه	raise	a child يُربِّي طفلاً
hold	a cultural festival	يُقيم مهرجان ثقافي	take	a bit more time يستغرق وقت أطول قليلاً
introduce	reasons	يُقدِّم أسباب		place يحدِّث
perform	mental tasks	يؤدي مهام عقلية	tour	the world يطوف العالم

Mini Test 1 Collocations

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- You need to your attention on what your teacher says.
a. perform b. raise c. bring d. focus
- You can earn more money by business.
a. touring b. taking c. doing d. playing
- We're a multicultural festival.
a. planning b. holding c. taking d. a & b
- You can leave now, Miss Sara. The tasks you've are enough for today.
a. performed b. raised c. brought d. focused
- It will a bit more time if you take this narrow road.
a. tour b. take c. do d. introduce
- That terrible accident place at about midnight.
a. planned b. held c. took d. a & b
- It is not an easy task to a child.
a. perform b. raise c. bring d. do
- Give her the time to the reasons for her sudden decision.
a. tour b. take c. do d. introduce

9. The benefits technology are greater than its drawbacks.
a. performs b. raises c. brings d. focuses
10. I look forward to the whole world one day.
a. touring b. taking c. doing d. introducing

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
clear-cut(adj)	بَيِّن / مُحَدَّد، مُعَيَّن / وَاضِح
deep-seated(adj)	مُتَأَصِّل / مُتَجَذِّر
dominant(adj)	سائد - مُتَسَيِّط - مُسَيِّط
mother tongue(n)	لغة النشأ
raise(d) (v)	يُربِّي
well-balanced (adj)	جيد التوازن - مُتَمَرِّن
well-known(adj)	عاطفيًا ونفسيًا معروف / مشهور
	definite, clear
	deep-rooted, permanent
	ruling, governing, controlling
	native language, native tongue
	bring up
	sensible, rational
	famous, familiar, popular

3 Antonyms متضادات

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)
clear-cut(adj)	بَيِّن / مُحَدَّد، مُعَيَّن / وَاضِح
deep-seated(adj)	مُتَأَصِّل / مُتَجَذِّر
dominant(adj)	سائد - مُتَسَيِّط - مُسَيِّط
mother tongue(n)	لغة النشأ
well-balanced (adj)	جيد التوازن - مُتَمَرِّن
well-known(adj)	عاطفيًا ونفسيًا معروف / مشهور
	indefinite, vague
	temporary
	secondary
	foreign language
	unbalanced, silly
	unknown, obscure

Mini Test 2 Synonyms & Antonyms

- ★ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. "My mother raised three children on her own." The 'verb' raised' in this context is a synonym of
a. collected b. brought up c. lifted d. rose
2. "This device is well-known to farmers." The compound adjective 'well-known' here is synonymous with
a. popular b. unknown c. obscure d. b & c

3. "This is a deep-seated situation." In this sentence, the adjective 'deep-seated' is an antonym of
a. permanent b. deep-rooted c. a & b d. temporary
4. "The dominant male protects its herd قطع." The word 'dominant' here can be replaced by
a. secondary b. controlled c. controlling d. b & c
5. Your mother tongue is your language.
a. native b. second c. foreign d. unspoken

4 Derivatives المشتقات

Verb	Noun	Adjective
	bilingual	bilingual
	شخص يجيد التحدث بلغتين بنفس الكفاءة	ثنائي اللغة / مجيد للّغتين
dominate	domination سيادة - سطوة - نفوذ dominance سيادة - انتشار	dominant/dominating
identify	يُحدد هويّة identification (ID) إثبات شخصية identification تحديد هوية	identifiable
	multiculturalism تعدّد الثقافات	multicultural
		متعدّد الثقافات

Mini Test 3 Derivatives

- ★ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The officer asked me to show him my
a. identification b. identity c. ID d. a, b & c
2. I am trying to who has hacked into my tablet.
a. identify b. identity c. ID d. identifiable
3. I am trying to know the of the person who has hacked into my tablet.
a. identify b. identity c. identifiable d. b & c
4. Mr Ayman's ideas have the whole team.
a. dominating b. dominance c. dominate d. dominated
5. As a company, we are aiming for world-market
a. dominates b. domination c. dominate d. dominated

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات ومصطلحات

a window to another culture	نافذة على ثقافة أخرى	linguistic minorities	الأقليات اللغوية
almost definitely	بشكل مؤكد تقريباً	local Berber dialect	اللهجة البربرية المحلية
be limited to	مقتصر على	mental illnesses	أمراض عقلية
be widely spoken	يتم التحدث بها على نطاق واسع	Portuguese-speaking nation	دولة ناطقة باللغة البرتغالية
brain functions	وظائف المخ	responsible for	مسئول عن
cultural identity	هوية ثقافية	speak to in the first language	يتحدث مع ... بلغته الأولى
date back as far as	يعود تاريخها إلى	Tamazight language	اللغة الأمازيغية

6 Synonymous idioms تعبيرات مترادفة

from birth = from the time ...	من وقت الميلاد	in danger = endangered = in a dangerous situation	في خطر
was born			
in particular = particularly	بصفة خاصة	most important of all	أهم شيء
= especially		= most importantly	
mother tongue = first language	اللغة الأولى		
= native tongue			

7 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

classify ... as	يُصنّف ... كـ	slow down	يُبطئ - يقلل سرعة
grow up	يكبر - يتربّع - يَشِب	stick to	يلتزم بـ ...
learn ... as	يتعلم ... كـ	suffer from	يعاني من
make ... up of	يُكون ... من	teach ... to	يُعَلِّم ... لـ
protect ... from	يحمي ... من		

Mini Test 4 Expressions, Prepositions & Idioms

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- If Arabic is your mother tongue, then English is not your
a. first language b. native tongue c. a & b d. second language
- This device is made three main parts.
a. up b. up of c. out d. out of
- Which of the following expressions precedes an essential piece of information?
a. Most important of all, b. Especially
c. In particular, d. b & c

- Stick your diet if you do not want to put on weight again.
a. into b. on c. in d. to
- When something is at risk, this means it is
a. in danger b. endangered c. a & b d. dangerous
- I learn English a second language.
a. from b. about c. to d. as
- The Great Pyramid dates back as as 26th century BCE.
a. far b. well c. soon d. age
- Entrance is limited the members of the club only.
a. with b. to c. by d. on
- Egypt is an Arabic- nation.
a. speak b. spoke c. speaking d. spoken
- Tourists like it if you speak to them their first language.
a. in b. on c. from d. out

8 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

mono - bi - tri - multi

لاحظ معاني استخدام المقاطع البادئة (mono/bi/tri/multi):

• mono- أحادي = one, single	monolingual monosyllabic monorail	أحادي اللغة أحادي المقطع أحادي الخط
• bi- ثنائي = two, twice, double	bilingual bicycle	مُجيد للغتين دراجة (ثنائية الإطار)
• tri- ثلاثي = three; having three	tricycle triangle trilingual	تريسكل (دراجة بثلاث عجلات) مثلث (ثلاثي الزوايا) يتحدث ثلاث لغات
• multi- مُتعدد = more than one; many	multilingual multicultural multinational	مُتعدد اللغات مُتعدد الثقافات مُتعدد الجنسيات

rise - raise

- rise (v) (بدون مفعول)
- The sun rises in the east.

تُشرق

• **bilingual (in) (adj)**

- Most of my friends are **bilingual**.

يتحدث لغتين

• **bilingual (n)**

- A lot of university graduates are **bilinguals**.

شخص يجيد التحدث بلغتين بنفس الكفاءة

• **trilingual (adj)**

- He speaks Arabic, English and French. He is **trilingual**.

ثلاثي اللغة

- This medicine has a **trilingual** leaflet.

نشرة

• **multilingual (adj)**

- He speaks Arabic, English, French, Italian and Spanish. He is **multilingual**.

متعدد اللغة

• **multilingualism (n)**

- **Multilingualism** in the same society is sometimes a big problem.

تعدد لغوية

dominate

• **dominate(d) (v)**

يَسُود / يُهَيِّم على / يسيطر على

- This company **dominates** the educational book market.

- He **dominated** his children, so they grew up with weak personalities.

- The Egyptian football team **dominated** the second half of the match.

• **dominate(d) (v)**

يكون الأبرز في (أي الأكبر أو ملحوظ بشكل أكبر)

- The skyscraper **dominates** the town.

- The plane crash **dominated** the news.

• **dominance (n)**

النفوذ / الهيمنة / سيادة

- The Chinese economic **dominance** is increasing.

- Some genes have **dominance** over other genes.

• **domination (n)**

السيطرة / فرض النفوذ

- Some people misuse political **domination**.

- The Egyptian football team's complete **domination** over the second half of the match was clear.

• **dominant (adj)**

ذو نفوذ أو سيادة / مُسيطر - هام

- El-Moasser has achieved a **dominant** position in the educational book market.

- The Egyptian football team's complete **domination** over the second half of the match was clear.

- **dominating (adj)**
- Being kind is his most **dominating** quality.

identity

- **identify(ied) (v)** يُحدِّد هويَّة / يتعرَّف علي / يُميِّز
- It was dark, so I couldn't **identify** the face of the thief.
- Scientists have **identified** the gene that causes cancer.
- **Identity = identification (ID) (n)** الهويَّة (اسم الشخص أو من يكون)
- The **identity** of the body hasn't been recognized yet.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- real/true identity الحقيقة الشخصية الحقيقية
- false identity هويَّة غير حقيقية
- assume an identity يُغيِّر هويَّته
- identity card بطاقة تحقيق الشخصية
- identity papers/documents أوراق/وثائق ثبوتية
- identity theft/fraud انتحال شخصية الغير

- **identity (n)** التناغم (التشابه الشديد) / التناغم
- It is clear that the coach feels a strong sense **identity** with his players.

- **identification (n)** تحديد الهويَّة (التعرُّف علي اسم الشخص أو من يكون)
- The **identification** of the two bodies will take time.
- The **identification** of customers' needs is very important.

- **identification (with) (n)** التعاطف مع
- She showed **identification** with this poor child.

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

تتويها: التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- His nose his face.
a. considers b. locates c. raises d. dominates
- The government offers incentives امتيازات for giant businesses to in the new area.
a. locate b. classify c. estimate d. isolate
- The President opened and the new factory.
a. raised b. toured c. identified d. located

- Mr Mohammed's dialect him as an Upper Egyptian.
a. raised b. toured c. identified d. located
- I appreciate your with me during the hard times I passed.
a. identification b. identity c. ID d. a, b & c

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	d	- الفعل (dominates) هنا يعني (يكون الجزء الأبرز في)
2.	a	- الفعل (locate) هنا يعني (يزاول نشاطه في / يتواجد)
3.	b	- الفعل (toured) هنا يعني (قام بجولة في)
4.	c	- الفعل (identified) هنا يعني (ميَّز/ حدد هوية)
5.	a	- الاسم (identification) هنا يعني (تعاطف)، وبهذا المعنى هو لا يساوي (identity) ولا يمكن اختصاره لـ (ID)

Part IV Reading



Tapescript
نصوص
استماع الوحدة

1 Reading Texts

Learning to speak in a multilingual⁽¹⁾ home (SB page 53)

In some countries, it's common to learn two or more languages at home. In fact, some people grow up in places where four or more languages are widely⁽²⁾ spoken, Switzerland and Belgium are examples. In some countries, there may be one dominant⁽³⁾ language - the one used by the government, schools and the community⁽⁴⁾ - and it's obviously⁽⁵⁾ important to learn this language. However, for many parents in multicultural families, it's also important that their kids⁽⁶⁾ learn their mother tongue⁽⁷⁾, the language of their parents. Mohamed Hassan, who left Egypt to live in the UK in the 1970s, loves his first language, Arabic. 'Languages are precious⁽⁸⁾ and being Arab and Egyptian is so deep-seated⁽⁹⁾ in me that I couldn't imagine⁽¹⁰⁾ not teaching the language to my children,' he says.

Check Vocabulary

- متعدد اللغات
- علي نطاق واسع
- سائد
- المجتمع
- بوضوح
- أطفال
- لغة المنشأ
- ثمين/ نفيس
- متأصل/ متجذّر
- يتخيل

The most widely-spoken mother tongue is Mandarin⁽⁴⁾, Chinese, followed by Spanish, English and Arabic in the fifth place. But there is no need to learn only these languages to get the benefits of a bilingual brain⁽⁵⁾. Learning any second language is beneficial⁽⁶⁾ and will also make learning a third language even easier!

However, the benefits are not only limited⁽⁷⁾ to learning. Elderly⁽⁸⁾ bilingual patients⁽⁹⁾ have been shown to suffer⁽¹⁰⁾ from certain⁽¹¹⁾ mental illnesses⁽¹²⁾, such as Alzheimer⁽¹³⁾, less than their monolingual⁽¹⁴⁾ peers⁽¹⁵⁾.

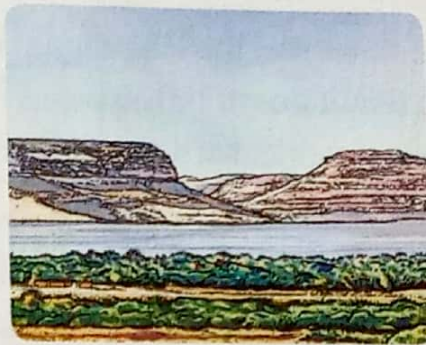
All in all, I think the conclusions⁽¹⁶⁾ are clear-cut. Being bilingual brings benefits!

- (4) اللغة الصينية
- (5) المخ
- (6) مفيد
- (7) محدود/مقصود
- (8) كبير السن
- (9) مرضى
- (10) يعاني
- (11) مُعَيَّن
- (12) أمراض
- (13) الزهايمر
- (14) أحادي اللغة
- (15) الأقران
- (16) استنتاج

An Identity in Danger

(WB page 54)

Diab, a 25-year-old tourist guide, drives his truck, which has a colourful⁽¹⁾ Berber⁽²⁾ flag in his back window, through the oasis⁽³⁾ of Siwa. He sings songs in a local Berber dialect⁽⁴⁾ known as 'Siwi'.⁽⁵⁾



The United Nations(UN) has classified⁽⁶⁾ Siwi, the easternmost⁽⁷⁾ dialect of the Tamazight⁽⁸⁾ language, as 'endangered'.⁽⁹⁾

But Diab is convinced⁽¹⁰⁾ that the dialect will survive⁽¹¹⁾. 'Everyone uses it here,' he said. 'Most adults speak both Siwi and Arabic, and most of the children who can be heard playing in the streets talk and shout in Siwi.'

The Berbers⁽¹²⁾ of Siwi are one of the main linguistic minorities⁽¹³⁾ in Egypt, where more people speak Arabic than in any other country with around a 100,000,000 speakers. Sixteen other languages are also spoken in Egypt, including⁽¹⁴⁾ Nubian⁽¹⁵⁾ spoken by the Nubian⁽¹⁶⁾ people) and Bedawi⁽¹⁷⁾ (spoken by the Bedouin⁽¹⁸⁾ people).

Check Vocabulary

- (1) زاهي اللون
- (2) بربري
- (3) واحة
- (4) لهجة/لكنة
- (5) اللهجة السيوية
- (6) يُصنّف
- (7) أقصى الشرق
- (8) اللغة الأمازيغية
- (9) مُعرّض للخطر
- (10) مُقنّن
- (11) يبقى حيًا - ينجو
- (12) البربر
- (13) أقلية
- (14) بما في ذلك
- (15) اللغة النوبية
- (16) نُوبي
- (17) اللغة البدوية
- (18) البدو

Siwa, whose population⁽¹⁹⁾ is around 30,000, is one of the most isolated⁽²⁰⁾ places on earth, located⁽²¹⁾ in the Western Desert nearly 600 km from Alexandria. 'Because of this, Siwa and its inhabitants⁽²²⁾ have been able to keep their unique⁽²³⁾ language and Amazigh⁽²⁴⁾ traditions,⁽²⁵⁾ that date back⁽²⁶⁾ as far as 3000 BCE,' says sociolinguist⁽²⁷⁾ Valentina Serreli, who wrote her PhD thesis on the language in the oasis.

In 2008 the UN estimated⁽²⁸⁾ that 15,000 people in the oasis, which is around half the population, speak Siwi. But Valentina Serreli estimates that the real figure⁽²⁹⁾ is around 20,000. UNESCO considers⁽³⁰⁾ the language definitely⁽³¹⁾ endangered⁽³²⁾ because the children who live there no longer learn the language as their mother tongue⁽³³⁾ in their home.

Some people think that the language should be taught formally⁽³⁴⁾ so that it doesn't disappear.⁽³⁵⁾ A local organisation⁽³⁶⁾ called 'Children of Siwa' works hard to preserve⁽³⁷⁾ the Siwa's heritage.

- (19) عدد السكان
(20) منعزل
(21) يقع/يوجد
(22) السكان
(23) فريد/مميز
(24) أمازيغي
(25) تقاليد
(26) يعود تاريخها إلى
(27) باحث لغويات اجتماعية
(28) يُقدّر
(29) رقم
(30) يُعتبر
(31) بالتأكيد
(32) يُعرض للخطر
(33) لغة المنشأ
(34) رسميًا
(35) يختفي
(36) مُنظمة
(37) يحون/يحافظ علي

Part V Language

Compound Adjectives الصفات المركبة

What is a compound adjective? ما هي الصفة المركبة؟

- It is an adjective that has two or more words.

- هي صفة تتكون من كلمتين أو أكثر، لاحظ الصفات المركبة في الأمثلة التالية:

- Mohammed Salah is a **well-known** footballer.
- Omar is a **never-to-be-forgotten** leader.
- The USA is an **English-speaking** country.
- I went on a **two-week** holiday.
- Some university students get **part-time** jobs.
- My aunt is a **middle-aged** woman.

فيما يلي شرح مُبسّط للصفات المركبة من خلال تقسيمها إلى أربع تصنيفات رئيسية:

Compound Adjectives

- Starting with numbers
صفات مركبة تبدأ برقم
- Starting with adjectives
صفات مركبة تبدأ بصفة
- Starting with adverbs
صفات مركبة تبدأ بظرف
- Starting with a noun
صفات مركبة تبدأ باسم

1 Compound adjective with numbers الصفات المركبة مع الأرقام

1 استخدم (رقم و بعده اسم مفرد ثم صفة) و بينهما (-) كصفة مركبة لاسم يأتي بعدها

- My son is a **twelve-year-old** child.
- My house is in a **ten-metre-wide** street.

2 استخدم (رقم و بعده اسم مفرد) و بينهما (-) كصفة مركبة لاسم يأتي بعدها

- Mr Omar is an expert on **twentieth-century** history.
- We're going on a **ten-day** trip.
- It's a **four-hour** journey.

3 استخدم (رقم و بعده اسم جمع) كصفة مركبة لاسم يأتي بعدها، وفي هذه الحالة ينتهي الاسم بالجمع بـ (s')

- My work is **two hours' drive** from here.
- وتستخدم هذه الصيغة أيضًا مع الكلمات التي تدل على مسافة وتستخدم كأسماء وأفعال مثل :
(drive - walk - swim - fly - ride...)

- We have **three hours' walk** every weekend.

في هذه الحالة يجب مراعاة ألا يسبق هذا النوع من الصفات المركبة (a / an) :

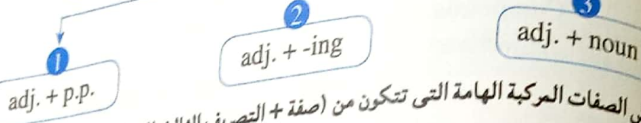
- My work is **a two hours' drive** from here. (X)
- My work is **two hours' drive** from here. (✓)

4 في حالة وجود كلمة time نستخدم (s') في حالة المفرد، و (s') في حالة الجمع.

- She'll be back in a **week's** time.
- In **two weeks' time**, I am travelling to Spain.

2 Compound adjective with adjectives (صفة) المركبة التي تبدأ بـ (صفة) Compound adjective with adjectives (صفة) المركبة التي تبدأ بـ (صفة)

Compound Adjectives Starting with an Adjective



بعض الصفات المركبة الهامة التي تتكون من (صفة + التصريف الثالث للفعل) :

1 adj. + p.p.

absent-minded	شارد الذهن / كثير النسيان	middle-aged	في منتصف العمر
big-eared	كبير الأذنين	narrow-minded	ضيق الأفق / مُنغلق
clear-cut	بَيِّن / مُحدَّد ، مُعَيَّن / واضح	old-fashioned	قديم / عفا عليه الزمن
deep-seated	مُتَأَصِّل / مُتَجَذِّر	open-minded	واسع الأفق / مُنفتح
green-eyed	أخضر العينين	quick-witted	سريع البديهة
high-spirited	ذو معنويات مرتفعة	red-handed	مُذنب
kind-hearted	طيب القلب	short-haired	قصير الشعر
long-haired	طويل الشعر	short-sighted	لديه قَصْر نظر
long-nosed	طويل الأنف	strong-willed	قوي العزيمة
long-sighted	لديه طول نظر	tight-fisted	بخيل

- A **strong-willed** student will surely achieve their goal.
- I have a **deep-seated** love for my parents.
- He wants to marry that **green-eyed** girl.
- I was very sad when my **kind-hearted** grandfather died.

2 adj. + ing.

بعض الصفات الهامة التي تتكون من (صفة + صيغة اسم الفعل)

good-looking	جذاب / حسن المظهر	slow-moving	بطيء الحركة
long-lasting	يدوم لفترة طويلة	far-reaching	بعيد المدى
easy-going	مَرْن		

- Leen is a **good-looking** student.
- Mr Ashraf is **forward-thinking** teacher.
- This law will have **far-reaching** effect on the economy.
- This **long-lasting** perfume is very expensive.

3 adj. + noun.

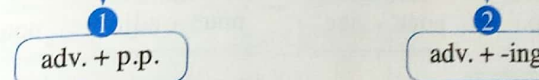
last-minute	في اللحظة الأخيرة	second-hand	مُسْتَعْمَل
full-length	بالطول الكامل		

- I had to make **last-minute** changes to my article.
- He made his last **full-length** film in 2002.

3 Compound adjective with adverbs (ظرف) المركبة التي تبدأ بـ (ظرف) Compound adjective with adverbs (ظرف) المركبة التي تبدأ بـ (ظرف)

هناك نوعان رئيسيان من الصفات المركبة التي تبدأ بظرف وهي :

Compound Adjectives Starting with an Adverb



1 adv. + p.p.

بعض الصفات الهامة التي تتكون من (ظرف + تصريف ثالث)

brightly-lit	ساطع الإضاءة	well-educated	مُتَعَلِّم جيداً
highly-respected	يحظى باحترام كبير	well-known	معروف / مشهور
densely-populated	كثيف السُّكَّان	widely-	معروف على نطاق واسع
well-balanced	جيد التوازن - مُتَّزِن	recognized	يتم التحدُّث بها على
	عاطفياً ونفسياً	widely-spoken	نطاق واسع
well-behaved	حَسَن السلوك	well-informed	مُطَّلِع
well-paid	ذو أجر مرتفع		
badly-written	مكتوب بشكل سيء		

- Mr Ayman is a **well-balanced** manager.
- Arabic is a **widely-spoken** language.
- I live in a **brightly-lit** street.
- Mr Nasser is a **highly-respected** teacher.
- This is a **well-informed** journalist.

2 adv. + ing.

بعض الصفات الهامة التي تتكون من (ظرف + صيغة اسم الفعل)

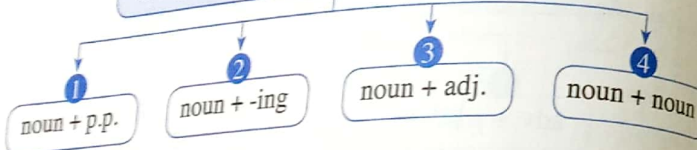
never-ending
forward-thinkingدائم
ever-lasting

- I don't like his **never-ending** inquiries.
- Mrs Maha has an **ever-lasting** smile.

4 Compound adjective with nouns (الصفات المركبة التي تبدأ بـ (الاسم))

هناك أربعة أنواع رئيسية من الصفات المركبة التي تبدأ باسم وهي:

Compound Adjectives Starting with a noun



1 noun. + p.p.

بعض الصفات الهامة التي تتكون من (اسم + التصريف الثالث)

sun-baked	مُجفَّف بالشمس	left-handed	أعسر/يستخدم اليد اليسرى
child - wanted	محبوب من الأطفال	right-handed	يستخدم اليد اليمنى
middle-aged	في منتصف العمر	heart-broken	حزين/منفطر القلب

- No plant will grow in such a **sun-baked** ground.
- He buys the most **child-wanted** toys for his children.
- My mother is a **middle-aged** woman.

2 noun. + ing.

بعض الصفات الهامة التي تتكون من (اسم + صيغة اسم الفعل)

record-breaking	مُحطَّم الرقم القياسي	English-speaking	مُتحدِّث باللغة الإنجليزية
mouth-watering	مُسبِّل للعاب/شهِّي / لذِيذ	time-saving	مُوفِّر للموقت
thought-provoking	مثير للتفكير	labour-saving	مُوفِّر للعمالة
time-saving	مُوفِّر للموقت		

- Omar ran at a **record-breaking** speed.
- The table was covered with **mouth-watering** dishes.

- It was a **thought-provoking** quiz.- To achieve your tasks quickly, follow these **time-saving** techniques.

3 noun. + adjective.

بعض الصفات الهامة التي تتكون من (اسم + صفة)

ice-cold	في برودة الثلج	brand-new	جديد تمامًا
world-famous	ذو شهرة عالمية	self-reliant	مُعتمد على نفسه
fat-free	خالٍ من الدهون	self-centered	أناني
smoke-free	ممنوع التدخين فيه		

- To avoid gaining weight, I prefer **fat-free** food.
- Salah is a **world-famous** footballer.
- I can't live in the **ice-cold** weather of Canada.

4 noun. + noun.

egg-box	صندوق بيض	tea-pot	براد شاي
hair-cream	كريم شعر	eye-drop	قطرة العين

- I had to look for a **part-time** job.

Important Notes

ملحظات هامة

1 تُستخدَم الشرطة الواصلة (-) والتي تُسمَّى (hyphen) لتفصل بين أجزاء الصفة المركبة فقط إذا كانت هذه الصفة المركبة قبل الاسم الموصوف، أما إذا لم يأت الاسم الموصوف بعدها فلا نستخدم (-):

- Mohammed Salah is a **well-known** footballer.
- As a footballer, Mohammed Salah is **well known**.
- To avoid gaining weight, I prefer **fat-free** food.
- To avoid gaining weight, I prefer food which is **fat free**.

2 لا تُستخدَم الشرطة الواصلة (-) بين الظرف (very) والصفة التي تليه حتى وإن جاء بعدهما الاسم الموصوف:

- Ahmed is a **very-clever** student. (X)
- Ahmed is a **very clever** student. (✓)

3 لا تُستخدَم الشرطة الواصلة (-) بين الظرف المنتهي بـ (ly) والصفة التي تليه حتى وإن جاء بعدهما الاسم الموصوف:

- This is a **naturally-dug** cave. (X)
- This is a **naturally dug** cave. (✓)

لكن تُستخدَم الشرطة الواصلة (-) بين الصفة المنتهية بـ (ly) والصفة التي تليها إذا سبقت الاسم فقط:
 - It is a **friendly-looking** dog. (✓)
 - It is a **friendly looking** dog. (X)
 بعض الصفات المركبة لها أكثر من صيغة مقارنة وتفضيل، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
good-looking	better-looking OR more good-looking	best-looking OR most good-looking
well-known	better-known OR more well-known	best-known OR most well-known

تُستخدَم الشرطة الواصلة (-) بين أجزاء الصفة المركبة التي تتكون من أكثر من كلمتين عندما تسبق الاسم الموصوف:

- Sama is a **ten year old** girl. (X)
- Sama is a **ten-year-old** girl. (✓)
- Sama is **ten-year-old**. (X)
- Sama is **ten years old**. (✓)

تُستخدَم الشرطة الواصلة (-) بين أجزاء بعض الصفات المركبة حتى وإن لم يأت بعدها الموصوف تجنباً لغموض المعنى:

- This program is **up to date**. (X)
- This program is **up-to-date**. (✓)

لا يُجمع الاسم بعد الرقم إذا كان جزءاً من صفة مركبة:

- I had a **four-days** holiday. (X)
- I had a **four-day** holiday. (✓)

General Exercises On Language

● Apply

★ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

I Getting Started

- Which of the following is NOT a compound adjective?
 a. old-fashioned b. Multicultural c. Deep-seated d. Clear-cut
- Dr Zewail is a world scientist.
 a. fame b. -fame c. famous d. -famous

- Abdulrahman is my son.
 a. five-year-old b. five year old c. five-years-old d. five years old
- Abdulrahman, my son, is.....
 a. five-year-old b. five year old c. five-years-old d. five years old
- I had a five - holiday to refresh myself.
 a. day b. day's c. days d. days'
- I had a holiday for five
 a. day b. day's c. days d. days'
- I have a middle uncle. He is thirty-five.
 a. age b. -age c. aged d. -aged
- When someone has a strong will, we say they're
 a. strong-willed b. strong willed c. strong-will d. strong will
- When someone has a strong will, we say he or she is a person.
 a. strong-willed b. strong willed c. strong-wills d. strong will
- When someone can't see near things, we say he or she is long
 a. sight b. -sighted c. sighted d. sighting
- When someone can't see near things, we say he or she is a long individual.
 a. sight b. -sighted c. sighted d. sighting
- Mr Ashraf is a man.
 a. good-looking b. well-looking c. good-looking d. good looking
- Mr Ashraf is
 a. good-looking b. well-looking c. good-looking d. good looking
- Asmaa's a green girl.
 a. -eyed b. eyed c. eyes d. -eyes
- Asmaa's green
 a. -eyed b. eyed c. eyes d. -eyes
- He bought a second car.
 a. -hand b. hand c. handed d. -handing
- Mr Mohammed is a respected teacher.
 a. highly b. highly- c. high d. highing
- As a teacher, Mr Mohammed is respected.
 a. highly b. highly- c. high d. highing
- Rodayna is
 a. good-educated b. good educated c. well educated d. well-educated

20. Rodayna is a young lady.
a. good-educated b. good educated c. well educated d. well-educated
21. Rainforest is a never..... source of oxygen.
a. end b. ended c. -ending d. ending
22. Sama is a left little girl.
a. -handed b. handed c. handing d. -handing
23. Egypt is an Arabic country.
a. -spoken b. -speaking c. spoken d. speaking
24. Arabic is a widely language.
a. -spoken b. -speaking c. spoken d. speaking
25. You can't smoke in this carriage as it is smoke.....
a. -freely b. freely c. free d. -free
- II Special Cases**
26. I am travelling abroad in two time.
a. week b. weeks c. week's d. weeks'
27. It is only from here to Alexandria.
a. a two-hour drive b. two-hours' drive c. a & b d. two-hour drive
28. I will join you in an time.
a. hours b. hours' c. hour's d. hours's
29. Mr Baleigh is about the new changes; he has no objection to them.
a. narrow-minded b. tight-fisted c. open-minded d. well-informed
30. You were caught Two people saw you stealing the money.
a. narrow-minded b. absent-handed c. open-minded d. red-handed
31. One should be tolerant of other cultures. They should be
a. narrow-minded b. absent-handed c. open-minded d. red-handed
32. I didn't answer Mr Mohammed's question because I was
a. narrow-minded b. absent-handed c. open-minded d. red-handed
33. Don't expect him to pay for the meal. He is
a. tight-fisted b. narrow-minded c. open-minded d. well-informed
34. To be a TV presenter, you need to be about different topics.
a. tight-fisted b. narrow-minded c. red-handed d. well-informed
35. I felt sorry for the heart woman who had lost her son.
a. -breaking b. -broken c. a & b d. broken

36. The report is
a. bad-writing b. bad-written c. badly-written d. badly written
37. It is a report.
a. bad-writing b. bad-written c. badly-written d. badly written
38. I trust this young man as he is looking.
a. friendly b. friendly- c. friending- d. friended-
39. I trust this looking young man.
a. friendly b. friendly- c. friending- d. friended-
40. My school tablet is
a. up to date b. up-to date c. up-to-date d. a & c
- III Check your understanding**
41. "Rahma is fifteen years old." This means that
a. Rahma is fifteen year old. b. Rahma is fifteen-year-old.
c. Rahma is fifteen-years- old. d. Rahma is a fifteen-year-old girl.
42. Which of the following is correctly structured?
a. He is an old-fashioned man. b. He is an old fashioned man.
c. This man is old-fashioned. d. He is an old and fashioned man.
43. Which of the following is best structured?
a. Windows 2003 is out of date. b. Windows 2003 is out-of-date.
c. Windows 2003 is out of-date. d. Windows 2003 is out-of date.
44. "No other Egyptian footballer is as well-known as Mohammed Salah." This means that
a. Mohammed Salah is more well-known than other Egyptian players.
b. Mohammed Salah is better-known than other Egyptian players.
c. a & b
d. Mohammed Salah is not as well-known as other Egyptian players.
45. "This dish does not have any fat." This means that
a. this dish is free fat. b. this dish is fat-free.
c. this dish is fat free. d. this is a fat free dish.
46. "This dish makes me feel want to eat it." This means that
a. this dish is mouth-watering. b. this dish is mouth-watered.
c. this dish is water mouthed. d. this is a mouth-watering dish.
47. Which of the following is correctly structured?
a. Ibrahim is left hand. b. Ibrahim is hand lefted.
c. Ibrahim is a left-handed student. d. Ibrahim is hand-lefted student.

Part I

Vocabulary & Definitions

اختبر مدى إتقانك للمفردات الرئيسية في كراسة المفردات المتفاعلة.
المفردات اللغوية باللون الأحمر هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية.

تدوينة

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

ancestors(n)	أجداد / أسلاف	passionate(adj)	غافق / متحمس
embrace(d) (v)	يحتضن - يعنق	pride(n)	الفخر - الكبرياء
fortunate(adj)	محظوظ	proud(adj)	فخور - متكبر
humour(n)	الضحك - الفكاهة	root(n)	أصل - منشأ - جذر
lucky(adj)	محظوظ		

2 Important Vocabulary مفردات هامة

abroad(adv)	بالخارج	immigrant(n)	مهاجر
aspect(n)	جانب - منحنى	impact(n)	أثر / انطباع
author(n)	مؤلف	influence(d) (n/v)	تأثير - يؤثر في
beauty(n)	الجمال	Irish(n/adj)	أيرلندي
Cantonese(n)	اللغة الكانتونية	laugh(ed) (v)	يضحك
carriage(n)	عربة	likes(n)	أشياء المفضلة
case(n)	قضية - حالة / موقف	mixture(n)	خليط / مزيج
celebrate(d) (v)	يحتفل به	participate(d) (v)	شارك
childhood(n)	مرحلة الطفولة	patriot(n)	وطني
chopsticks(n)	عصيان الأكل	personality(n)	شخصية
classmate(n)	زميل دراسة	profession(n)	مهنة / وظيفة
describe(d) (v)	يصف	range(n)	نطاق / مدى
difference(n)	اختلاف	relatives(n)	أقارب
dislikes(n)	الأشياء غير المفضلة	rent(ed) (v/n)	يستأجر - إيجار
explore(d) (v)	يستكشف	ride(n)	رحلة
extended(adj)	ممتد	sense(n)	إحساس
familiar(adj)	معتاد - مألف	shape(d) (v/n)	شكل - شكّل
fascinating(adj)	خلاب / رائع	sight(n)	منظر - مشهد - البصر
fluent(adj)	مفوه / طليق اللسان	similar(adj)	مشابه - متشابه
		similarity(n)	تشابه

gap(n)
generation(n)
great-grandfather(n)
homesick(adj)

فجوة - ثغرة
جيل
الجد الأكبر
لديه حنين للوطن

teenager(n)
tend(ed) (v)
traditions(n)
typical(adj)

مراهق
يسعى / يتجه
تقاليد
نموذجي / نمطي

3 Definitions تعريفات

ancestor(n)	جد	a member of your family who lived a long time ago
embrace(d) (v)	يحتضن - يعنق	to eagerly accept a new idea, opinion, religion etc.
pride(n)	الفخر - الكبرياء	a feeling that you are proud of something that you or someone connected with you has achieved
root(n)	أصل - منشأ	the origin or main part of something such as a custom, law, activity etc, from which other things have developed

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

- I am of my country's great history.
a. pride b. proud c. gap d. generation
- I take in my country's great history.
a. pride b. proud c. gap d. generation
- The Ministry of Education has the concept of online learning side by side with face-to-face learning.
a. risen b. participated c. influenced d. embraced
- We are to have such a fatherly teacher.
a. extended b. fascinating c. fortunate d. home-sick
- I am very to have a close friend like you.
a. lucky b. similar c. relative d. definite
- Lions, tigers and home cats have a common
a. patriot b. range c. ancestor d. mixture
- It is his sense of that makes us enjoy his company.
a. Cantonese b. humour c. chopsticks d. traditions

8. Each country has its national that is always connected to it.
a. similarity b. senses c. immigrant d. identity
9. My family has deep in Upper Egypt.
a. roots b. aspects c. cases d. impacts
10. I am about ancient Egyptian history.
a. typical b. fluent c. passionate d. famous

Important vocabulary

- He is never happy abroad. He is person.
a. extended b. fascinating c. fortunate d. homesick
- is a Chinese language spoken in Hong Kong and Southern China.
a. Cantonese b. Humour c. Chopsticks d. Traditions
- Your are the things you don't enjoy.
a. likes b. dislikes c. relatives d. classmates
- In general, girls to be better at languages than boys.
a. tend b. rent c. explore d. celebrate
- The political decision is by the economic situation.
a. tended b. participated c. influenced d. embraced
- Are you with the side effects of this medicine?
a. typical b. fluent c. passionate d. familiar
- It is expected from your to support you in hardships.
a. likes b. dislikes c. relatives d. carriages
- I've enjoyed my stay in Luxor.
a. extended b. fascinated c. fortunately d. home-sick
- This antibiotic is used to treat a wide of diseases.
a. patriot b. range c. ancestor d. root
- The fans their team's win in the streets all night.
a. tended b. rented c. explored d. celebrated
- The plays of Adel Imam have our sense of humour.
a. shaped b. participated c. tended d. laughed
- My friend Ismail has a high of humour. When he is with us, we never stop laughing.
a. similarity b. sense c. immigrant d. identity

23. Young people don't usually pay much attention to They enjoy everything fast and new.
a. Cantonese b. humour c. chopsticks d. traditions
24. This novel is of Naguib Mahfouz's style.
a. typical b. fluent c. passionate d. familiar
25. This is a /an book by a great writer.
a. extended b. fascinating c. fortunate d. home-sick
26. I'll the possibility of finding another job.
a. tend b. rent c. explore d. celebrate
27. I was given the chance to in the survey done by a team of researchers.
a. shape b. participate c. influence d. embrace
28. You want to work part-time. In this, you will have to apply for another job.
a. root b. aspect c. case d. impact
29. We all noticed the in appearance between Sama and Rodayna.
a. similarity b. sense c. immigrant d. relative
30. The Chinese use instead of spoons.
a. Cantonese b. humour c. chopsticks d. traditions
31. There was a good of talents in the party.
a. patriot b. pride c. ancestor d. mixture
32. Many young people flats to get married in.
a. tend b. rent c. explore d. celebrate
33. There was a big between exports and imports.
a. pride b. proud c. gap d. generation
34. Things we learn in are difficult to forget.
a. likes b. dislikes c. relatives d. childhood
35. My sister is Words just roll down her tongue.
a. typical b. fluent c. passionate d. familiar
36. We all suffer from the negative pollution has had on the environment.
a. root b. aspect c. case d. impact
37. As a/an, she is ready to do anything for her country.
a. patriot b. range c. ancestor d. mixture

38. We need to save natural resources for the coming
 a. prides b. proud c. gaps d. generations
39. Some of the illegal were lost in the sea.
 a. similarities b. senses c. immigrants d. identities

3 Definitions

40. To is to eagerly accept a new idea, opinion, religion etc.
 a. shape b. participate c. influence d. embrace
41. is a feeling that you are proud of something that you or someone connected with you has achieved.
 a. Pride b. Proud c. Gap d. Generation
42. A/An is a member of your family who lived a long time ago.
 a. patriot b. range c. ancestor d. mixture
43. A/An is the origin or main part of something such as a custom, law, activity etc., from which other things have developed.
 a. root b. aspect c. case d. impact

Part II Vocabulary Study

توبه ساعد مُعلمك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مُسبقًا بشكل جيد.

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

be	proud of	فخور بـ	leave	a comment	بِرك تعليقًا
bring	... closer to	يُقرَّب ... من	make	friends	يُصادق
build	a sense of pride	يُوجد إحساس بالفخر	reach	the top	يصل للقمة
do	activities	يُمارس أنشطة	rent	a flat	يُستأجر شقة
embrace	change	يتبنى التغيير	shape	personality	يُشكِّل الشخصية
explore	a culture	يُستكشف الثقافة	stay	connected to	يُبنى مرتبطًا / مُتصلاً
give	a reason	يُعطي سبب	take	a carriage ride	يُذهب في جولة بالعربة
give	the situation	يُوضِّح الموقف	take	pride in	يُفتخر بـ

Mini Test 1 Collocations

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. No one reasons for such a sudden decision.
 a. was b. took c. gave d. made
2. We a lot of activities at school.
 a. embrace b. do c. build d. leave
3. Travel to other countries and their cultures.
 a. make b. reach c. stay d. explore
4. I proud to be the first to raise this issue for discussion.
 a. am b. take c. give d. make
5. It is necessary to a sense of national pride in your children.
 a. embrace b. do c. build d. leave
6. It is easy to the top, but it is not that easy to maintain it.
 a. bring b. reach c. stay d. explore
7. All the friends I have in my new school are toppers.
 a. been b. taken c. gave d. made
8. Some people change; others fight it.
 a. embrace b. do c. build d. leave
9. Try to connected to your friends after you leave school.
 a. bring b. reach c. stay d. explore

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
ancestor (n)	جَدّ - سَلَف
embrace (v)	يَتَّبِعِي - يُؤدِّد
embrace (v)	يُعَانِق / يُحْتَضِن
embrace (v)	يُضَمِّن - يَضَع ... ضمن
lucky (adj)	مُحْظُوظ
passionate (adj)	شَغُوف / مُتَحَمِّس
pride (n)	الفخر - الكبرياء
pride (n)	التَّكَبُّر - الغرور
proud (adj)	مُتَكَبِّر
root (n)	أَصْل - مُنْشَأ
	forebear, forefather
	welcome, take up
	hug
	include, take in, cover
	fortunate
	very keen on, very enthusiastic about, addicted to, devoted to
	self-esteem
	arrogance, vanity
	arrogant, conceited
	source, origin, starting point

3 Antonyms متضادات

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)
ancestor (n)	جَدّ - سَلَف descendant, successor
embrace (v)	يَتَّبَعِي - يُوَدِّد reject
embrace (v)	يَضْمَن - يَضَع ... ضَمَن exclude
lucky (adj)	مَحْظُوظ - مَحْظُوظ un lucky, unfortunate
pride (n)	الفَخْر - الكِبْرِيَاء shame
pride (n)	التَّكْبُر - الغُرُور modesty, humility
proud (adj)	فَخُور بِه ashamed
proud (adj)	مُتَكَبِّر humble

Mini Test 2 Synonyms & Antonyms

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- "We are proud of our great forebears." The word 'forebears' in this context is a synonym of
a. identities b. humours c. ancestors d. embraces
- "He is too proud to say he is wrong." In this sentence, the word 'proud' is a synonym of
a. arrogant b. humble c. conceited d. a & c
- To an idea is antonymous with to reject it.
a. embrace b. refuse c. oppose d. object to
- "He is passionate about my suggestion." In this sentence, we can replace 'passionate about' with
a. enthusiastic about b. addicted of c. devoted in d. b & c
- 'Lucky' is to as 'embrace' is to 'hug'.
a. unlucky b. fortunate c. unfortunate d. sad
- "Loving money is the root of all evil." The word 'root' here can be replaced by
a. trunk b. origin c. source d. b & c

4 Derivatives المشتقات

Verb	Noun	Adjective
	ancestor	جَدّ/سَلَف ancestral
embrace	يَتَّبَعِي - يُوَدِّدِي	عِناق
pride (yourself) on	يَتَّبَعِي - يُوَدِّدِي	فَخْر - كِبْرِيَاء - تَكْبُر proud

Mini Test 3 Derivatives

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The calculator is the of the computer.
a. celebrates b. celebrities c. ancestral d. ancestor
- There are arguments about the family house. Some members want to sell it against the desire of other members.
a. celebrates b. celebrities c. ancestral d. ancestor
- The two brothers had warmly before one of them got on his car and raced away.
a. embrace b. embraced c. proud d. pride
- The two brothers had been in a warm before one of them got on his car and raced away.
a. embrace b. embraced c. proud d. pride
- I am to know a good friend like you.
a. embrace b. embraced c. proud d. pride
- I take in having a good friend like you.
a. embrace b. embraced c. proud d. pride

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات ومصطلحات

a sense of humour	حَسَّ الفكاهة	It's thanks to	إنه بفضل ...
a sense of identity	الشَّعُور بالهوية	make me laugh	يُضْحِكُنِي
a wide range of	نطاق واسع من	nation's pride	فخر الأمة
at an early age	في سن مبكرة	national heritage	التراث القومي
because of	بسبب	once a week	مرة واحدة أسبوعياً
cultural influence	تأثير ثقافي	open-minded about	منفتح علي
cultural roots	الأصول الثقافية	passionate about	شغوف بـ
culture gap	الفجوة الثقافية	similar to	مشابه لـ
go for a walk with	يذهب في نزهة سير مع	thanks to	بفضل/بسبب
in English	باللغة الإنجليزية	The best thing about	أفضل شيء في ...

6 Synonymous idioms تعبيرات مترادفة

connected with/to	fall in love with
= in touch with	= to develop very strong feelings of love for someone
	مُرتَبَط/مُتَّصِل بِه يُعْرَم بِه

familiar with = to have a good knowledge or understanding of	علي علم به / معتاد علي	I am fortunate to = I am lucky to	أنا محظوظ بأن
in some cases, = sometimes	في بعض الحالات	participate in = take part in	يشارك في
take pride in = be proud of	يفتخر به		

7 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

belong to	يُخَصُّ / ينتمي إلي	sign up	يسجل دخول
end up	ينتهي به الأمر إلي	speak to	يتحدث إلي
meet up	يلتقي / يتقابل	talk about	يتحدث عن
move away from	يُغْزَلُ من / ينتقل بعيداً من	talk to	يتحدث إلي
shape ... into	يُشَكِّلُ ... إلي	tend to	يميل لأن
share ... with	يشارك / يتقاسم ... مع		

Mini Test 4 Expressions, Prepositions & Idioms

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- My cousins and I once a week in my grandparents' house.
a. meet b. meet up c. a & b d. end up
- When someone starts to develop strong feelings for someone else, we say they
a. fall in love b. are not in touch c. take part in d. are unlucky
- It is your support that I've passed these difficult times.
a. similar to b. thanks to c. thank to d. tend to
- Your teacher has to me about your low grades.
a. told b. spoke c. talked d. b & c
- When you participate in an activity, you it.
a. fall in love with b. are in touch with
c. take part in d. are lucky to
- To move a place is to leave it.
a. away b. away from c. in d. into
- My parents' ideas have shaped me the person who I am now.
a. from b. into c. by d. with

- When you are connected with others, you them.
a. fall in love with b. are in touch with c. take part in d. are lucky with
- Temperatures tend be high at this time of the year.
a. to b. as c. like d. from
- To be fortunate means nearly the same as to be
a. in love b. in touch c. part of d. lucky

8 Clear the Confusion لاحظ الفرق

abroad - aboard - broad

- abroad** بالخارج / خارج البلاد
- I first travelled **abroad** last year. I travelled to Paris on business.
- aboard** علي متن سفينة / طائرة
- My plane had 125 passengers **aboard**.
- broad** فسيح / واسع / عريض
- The New Administrative Capital الجديدة الإدارية العاصمة has **broad** streets.

ancestors - descendants

- ancestors (n)** أجداد / أسلاف
- The great Arabs are our **ancestors**.
- descendants (n)** أحفاد
- We are the **descendants** of the great Arabs.

root - route

- root (n)** جذر - منشأ - أصل
- Palm trees have deep **roots**.
- Love of money is the **root** of all evil.
- route (n)** مسار - طريق
- Buses follow fixed **routes**.

be proud of / to = take pride in

- be proud of (something / someone)** فخور به
- Her parents are very **proud of** her.
- be proud to do something** فخور أن
- I am **proud to receive** this award.
- take / have pride in** يفتخر به
- She **takes / has pride in** her respectable family.

Mini Test 5 Clear the Confusion

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Modern cities have streets.
a. abroad b. board c. aboard d. broad
- The flight attendants made sure that all passengers have fastened their seat belts.
a. abroad b. board c. aboard d. broad
- He travels every summer, namely to Europe.
a. abroad b. board c. aboard d. broad
- Trees absorb water from the ground through their
a. bark b. fruits c. roots d. routes
- Sailing ships follow fixed
a. walks b. motorways c. roots d. routes
- The pharaohs are our
a. descendants b. ancestors c. successors d. children
- We are the of the pharaohs.
a. descendants b. ancestors c. successes d. forebears

9 Master your Key Vocabulary

ancestor

• **ancestor (n)**

- Mr Mohammed's **ancestors** settled down استقروا in Assuit.
- It is said that some types of dinosaurs and farm hens have developed from the same **ancestors**.

ancestor = forerunner (n) باكورة (أول شكل أز صيغة لشيء تطور بعد ذلك)
The steam engine is the **ancestor** of all modern engines.

ancestral (adj)

Our family's **ancestral** house is about 150 years old.

embrace

embrace = hug (v) يُعانق (فعل مُتَعَدٍ يأخذ مفعول بهذا المعنى)
A woman **embraced** her son warmly.

embrace = hug (v) يتعانق (فعل لازم لا يأخذ مفعول بهذا المعنى)
A woman and her son **embraced** warmly.

- **embrace (v)** يعتنق - يتحمس لـ - يتبنّى
We hope all countries will **embrace** healthcare reforms. إصلاحات
- **embrace (v)** يضمّ - يضمّن
The school trip **embraces** visiting different places of interest.
- **embrace (n)** عناق - حُضْن
There's nothing like my mother holding me in a tender **embrace**. حنون

root

- **root (n)** جذر النبات
Some trees have deep **roots**.
- **root (n)** منشأ - سبب
Poverty الفقر and need is the **root** of child labour عمالة الأطفال.
- **root (n)** أصل - منشأ
Corona virus is the **root** of your respiratory problems. المشاكل التنفسية.
- **root causes** أسباب جهرية
- **put down roots** يستقر/يستوطن
- **take roots** يشتد/يرسخ
- **root (v)** يُكوّن جذور
Trees **root** easily and quickly in fertile soil التربة الخصبة.

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

تنويه: التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Her feelings of loneliness are in her unhappy childhood.
a. removed b. rooted c. managed d. extracted
- The Egyptian government has the concept of digitalism. الرقمنة
a. risen b. participated c. tended d. embraced
- The agenda of the meeting does not your presentation.
a. embrace b. extend c. tend d. consist
- The old man and his son held each other in a long
a. aspect b. embrace c. root d. case
- The clever mechanic was able to get the of the problem with my car.
a. aspect b. embrace c. root d. case
- He has been living in England since 2001. He seems to have there.
a. lived b. travelled c. left d. put down roots

Answer & Explanation

No.	Answer	Explanation
1.	b	التعبير (be rooted in) يعني (نشأت في / تأصلت منذ)
2.	d	الفعل (embraced) هنا يعني (يتبنى / يتحمس لـ)
3.	a	الفعل (embrace) هنا يعني (يتضمن)
4.	b	كلمة (embrace) هنا اسم يعني (عناق)
5.	c	التعبير (the root of the problem) يعني (السبب الرئيسي في المشكلة)
6.	d	التعبير (put down roots) يعني (يستقر / يستوطن)

Part V Reading

1 Reading Texts

5 ways to stay connected with your cultural roots

- Speak it-try to learn some of the language.
- Eat it - you can learn a lot about the culture through its food. Cook it and share it with others.
- Learn it - Read about your heritage. Knowing about your family's roots⁽¹⁾ helps build a sense⁽²⁾ of identity and bring you closer to older relatives⁽³⁾.
- Embrace⁽⁴⁾ your culture - take pride in⁽⁵⁾ your family identity. That's the beauty⁽⁶⁾ of life; we are all different.
- Travel to where your ancestors⁽⁷⁾ come from.

My Extended⁽¹⁾ stay in Luxor

Robert Murphy

n years ago, when I thought about going on a short y to Egypt, I never realised I would end up making it me but here I am!

en I first arrived in Luxor on a Saturday morning in was amazed by the sights⁽²⁾, sounds and smells of the y centre. I took a carriage⁽³⁾ ride⁽⁴⁾ around town and tely fell in love with⁽⁵⁾ the place. After two weeks, I decided to lat and look for work. After a while, I was teaching English and ts were very interested in learning about my culture.

(SB page 55)

Check Vocabulary

- أصول
- إحساس
- أقارب
- يعانق
- يفتخر بـ
- الجمال
- أجداد/أسلاف

(WB page 32)

Check Vocabulary

- ممتد
- مناظر
- عربة
- جولة
- يفرغ بـ
- يستأجر

But I soon realised that I was a little home-sick⁽⁷⁾. I found a great website to find other people living abroad⁽⁸⁾. If you sign up, you can search for people of different nationalities living in cities all around the world. I found other Irish expatriots⁽⁹⁾ living in Luxor and a few of us arranged to meet up once a week. I now have a great mixture⁽¹⁰⁾ of friends and I do different activities with different groups. With my Irish⁽¹¹⁾ friends we play traditional Irish music together and share stories and memories of our childhood⁽¹²⁾. I also have a group of Egyptian friends, who I go for long walks with, to discover the city and countryside.

What really helped me to find friends in Luxor was participating⁽¹³⁾ in different multicultural groups and doing different activities. I now have a wide range⁽¹⁴⁾ of friends from many countries and while I love the Egyptian culture. I am still in touch with my roots through my Irish friends here in the city.

- لديم حنين للوطن
- بالخارج
- وطنيون سابقون
- خليط/مزيج
- أيرلندي
- طفولة
- يشارك
- نطاق/أمدي

Class forum⁽¹⁾

Please leave your comment

(WB page 57)

My father is Irish and my mother is Chinese, so I am fortunate⁽²⁾ to have two cultures to explore⁽³⁾. The best thing about being part of a multicultural family is that we tend⁽⁴⁾ to be open-minded about new cultural experiences. My parents have shaped⁽⁵⁾ me into the person I am today, and the cultures they have shared with me have a big impact⁽⁶⁾ on how I see the world and what I am passionate⁽⁷⁾ about.



Check Vocabulary

- مُنتدى
- محموظ
- يستكشف
- يميل/يتجه
- يُشكّل
- أثر/انطباع
- شغوف/مُتحمّس
- بالتأكيد
- الفكاهة/السخرية
- مؤلفين
- يضحك
- نموذجي/النمطي

My mum says that I am definitely⁽⁸⁾ my father's daughter because we both love soup and rock music, which are popular in Ireland, and we share the same Irish sense of humour⁽⁹⁾. I've never been to Ireland, but I've read a lot about it. One of my favourite authors⁽¹⁰⁾ is Roddy Doyle, an Irish writer, who makes me laugh⁽¹¹⁾. Through his books, I've learned about the typical⁽¹²⁾ Irish sense of humour.

Thanks to my mum, I am lucky to have grown up using chopsticks⁽¹³⁾ and eating rice. I am familiar⁽¹⁴⁾ with the traditions⁽¹⁵⁾ of the Chinese culture, not only because my mum celebrates⁽¹⁶⁾ them, but because my parents introduced them to me at an early age. I have also started to learn Cantonese⁽¹⁷⁾ due to my mum, who is from Hong Kong. What are your main cultural influences⁽¹⁸⁾?

- (13) عيدان الأكل
(14) متعارف على
(15) تقاليد
(16) تحتفل به
(17) لغة الكانتونية
(18) تأثيرات

Part IV Language

Relative Clauses عبارات الوصل

1 Relative Pronouns ضمائر الوصل

Pronoun	Notes
who / whom / that الذي / التي / الذين / اللاتي (مع العاقل)	<p>يمكن أن يأتي بعد (who / that) فعل وفي هذه الحالة لا يمكن حذفهم:</p> <p>- The boy who / that won the race is my son.</p> <p>يمكن أن يأتي بعد (who / whom / that) فاعل وفي هذه الحالة يمكن حذفهم:</p> <p>- The boy who / whom / that you met with me in the party is my cousin.</p> <p>- The boy you met with me in the party is my cousin.</p>
which / that الذي / التي / الذين / اللاتي (مع غير العاقل)	<p>يمكن أن يأتي بعد (which / that) فعل وفي هذه الحالة لا يمكن حذفهما:</p> <p>- The car which / that hit the old man was very fast.</p> <p>يمكن أن يأتي بعد (which / that) فاعل وفي هذه الحالة يمكن حذفهما:</p> <p>- The mobile which / that I bought yesterday has a very good camera.</p> <p>- The mobile I bought yesterday has a very good camera.</p>
whose الملكية (مع العاقل وغير العاقل)	<p>يأتي بعد (whose) اسم يخصص الاسم الذي قبلها ولا يأتي بعدها فعل مطلقا:</p> <p>- The woman whose son had come first was very happy.</p> <p>- The horse whose leg has been broken won't run in the next race.</p>

<p>where حيث / حيثما / المكان الذي (مع المكان)</p>	<p>تشير إلى المكان ولا يأتي بعدها فعل:</p> <p>- The town where I live is very crowded.</p> <p>- She likes the school where she works.</p>
<p>when حين / حينما / الوقت الذي (مع التعبيرات الزمنية)</p>	<p>تشير إلى الوقت ولا يأتي بعدها فعل:</p> <p>- I go to Aswan in January when the weather there is warm and sunny.</p> <p>- Six o'clock is the time when I get up.</p>

Mini Test 1 Apply

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- I admire the person helps others in difficulties.
a. who b. whom c. that d. a & c
- My uncle is the man Omar wants to work for.
a. who b. whom c. that d. a, b & c
- He doesn't like the clothes I wear.
a. whose b. whom c. which d. where
- He asked me about the name of the perfume I used.
a. that b. which c. a & b d. whom
- I get up at six o'clock it is time to get ready for school.
a. where b. when c. which d. whose
- My mobile alarm rings at six o'clock is the time for me to get up.
a. where b. when c. which d. whose
- I live in a flat balcony overlooks the Nile.
a. whose b. which c. where d. whom
- I always buy my things from the supermarket is at the corner.
a. where b. which c. when d. no word
- At the corner, there is a supermarket I always buy my things.
a. where b. which c. when d. no word

Important Notes

ملاحظات هامة

١) تُستخدم (what) كضمير وصل وهي لا تعود على اسم محدد وتكون الجملة الموصولة كلها إما فاعل أو مفعول أو مجرور :

- What you achieve will help my project. (فاعل)
- Listen to what your parents say. (مجرور)
- I didn't understand what he said. (مفعول)

٢) تُستخدم (who / whom / which) وليس (that) في الجمل الاعتراضية - أي بعد الفاصلة التحية (,) :

- Sadat, who was a president of Egypt, took the war decision in 1973. (Not: that was)
- Cairo, which is the capital of Egypt, is very crowded. (Not: that is)

٣) يفضل أن تُستخدم (that) وليس (which) أو (who) في الحالات التالية :

(أ) إذا كانت أي من الكلمات التالية تصف الاسم الذي يعود عليه ضمير الوصل :

all - any - one - some - every - only - many - much - few - no

- I lent her all the money that she needed.
- Ahmed was the only friend that helped me.
- لكن إذا جاءت (of) بعد أي من الكلمات السابقة نستخدم (which / whom) وليس (that) :
- I took three pictures, all of which are not clear. (Not: all of that)
- I met a group of professors, some of whom work in foreign universities. (Not: all of that)
- (ب) بعد صفات التفضيل :

- The fox is the cleverest animal that I have ever seen.

٤) يأتي بعد (whose) اسم لكن انتبه لبعض الكلمات التي تُستخدم كفعل واسم، ومن أمثلة ذلك :

imports - أجر pay - زيارة visit - إقامة stay - أمنية wish - أمل hope - مساعدة help - etc. ... الأشياء غير المفضلة dislikes - الأشياء المفضلة likes - صادرات exports - واردات imports

- I respect parents whose hope in life is to bring up their children well.
- I'm thankful to my friend whose help was very necessary.

٥) لاحظ أن :

- with = who / which / that + have / has / had ...

- I live in a house which has three floors.
- = I live in a house with three floors.
- I met a man who has a degree from Oxford University.
- = I met a man with a degree from Oxford University.

Mini Test 2

Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Sama doesn't stop crying until she gets she wants.
a. that b. what c. which d. when
2. She isn't used to others telling her she should do.
a. whose b. which c. that d. what
3. Mr Ayman, is our manager, is a clever negotiator.
a. that b. who c. whom d. a & b
4. Egypt, is an African country, has a strategic location.
a. which b. where c. that d. a & c
5. I have a lot of friends, some of are famous footballers.
a. who b. that c. whom d. whose
6. These are very important instructions many of tell you how to protect yourself from coronavirus.
a. whose b. whom c. that d. which
7. I like the company of those friends likes are similar to mine.
a. who b. that c. whose d. whom
8. I prefer to live in a villa a large garden.
a. that b. with c. which d. a & b

2 Prepositions with relative pronouns

حروف الجر مع ضمائر الوصل

١) لا تأتي حروف الجر قبل كل من (who / that) بل تأتي بعدهما في نهاية جملة الوصل :

- This is my colleague who I work with. (Not: with who)
- This is my key that I open my front door with. (Not: with that)

٢) يمكن أن تأتي حروف الجر قبل أو بعد كل من (whom / which) :

- Ahmed is my colleague with whom I work.
- = Ahmed is my colleague whom I work with.
- This is my key with which I open the front door.
- = This is my key which I open the front door with.

٣) لا تستخدم حروف جر تشير إلى المكان قبل أو بعد (where) :

- I went to the room in which I sleep. (Not: the room in where)
- I went to the room which I sleep in. (Not: the room where in)

يمكن أن تستخدم حروف الجر قبل (where) بمعنى (a place / the place) :
 - He asked the driver to bring the children from where the bus had broken down.
 = He asked the driver to bring the children from the place where the bus had broken down.
 - I took the laptop to where it was repaired.
 = I took the laptop to the place where it was repaired.

هناك طريقة رائعة للاختيار بين (where) و (which) مع اسم المكان كالتالي:
 (أ) قم بوضع حرف جر (in مثلاً) بعد الفعل الموجود في عبارة الوصل.
 (ب) انقل اسم المكان بعد حرف الجر الذي وضعته.
 (ج) إذا كانت العبارة صحيحة يكون الاختيار الصحيح (where).
 (د) إذا كانت العبارة خاطئة يكون الاختيار الصحيح (which / that).

- This is the house we live. (✓)
 a. which b. where c. what d. whose
 : (which / that) my father has built.
 - This is the house my father has built. (x)
 a. which b. where c. what d. whose
 - My father bought in the house. (x)
 a. which b. where c. what d. whose

لا تستخدم حروف جر تشير إلى التعبير الزمني قبل أو بعد (when) :

- Friday is the day on which my son was born. (Not: the day on when)
 - Friday is the day which my son was born on. (Not: the day when on)

Mini Test 3 Apply

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- This is the man for he wants to work.
 a. who b. whom c. that d. a, b & c
- This is the man he wants to work for.
 a. who b. whom c. that d. a, b & c
- I washed the knife I cut my food with.
 a. that b. which c. no word d. a, b & c
- I washed the knife with I cut my food.
 a. that b. which c. no word d. a, b & c
- I am going to the restaurant I usually have my meals.
 a. that b. which c. a & b d. where

- I am going to the restaurant I usually have my meals in.
 a. that b. which c. a & b d. where
- Aswan is the city I live.
 a. which b. where c. whose d. whom
- Aswan is the city I visit at least twice a year.
 a. which b. where c. whose d. whom

3 حذف ضمائر الوصل Omission of relative pronouns

1 يمكن حذف كل من (who - which - whom - that) إذا جاء بعدهم فاعل :

- This is the woman who I helped. = This is the woman I helped.

2 يمكن حذف كل من (who - which - that) في حالة وجود فعل بعدهما في الحالات التالية :

أ. في المبني للمعلوم يتم حذف ضمير الوصل ويضاف للفعل (ing) :

- The boy who is wearing a white shirt is my son.

= The boy wearing a white shirt is my son.

ب. إذا جاء بعدهم صيغة مبني للمجهول وهنا نحذف ضمير الوصل و (verb to be) ويبقى التصريف الثالث للفعل :

- The criminal who was arrested yesterday had killed two people.
 - The criminal arrested yesterday had killed two people.

Notes for advanced level ملاحظات للمتفوقين

1 تستخدم (which) فقط وليس (that) عندما تشير إلى مضمون الجملة التي تسبقها :

- He came first, which made his parents very happy. (Not: that made)

2 يُفضل أن تُستخدم (that) وليس (who / which / whom) بعد (It + verb to be ...)

- It's the manager that we want to see at once.
 - It was fish that we ordered for lunch.

3 يمكن أن تستخدم (which) مع المكان إذا كان المكان مفعول لجملة الوصل :

- This is the house which we built. (Not: where we built)

4 لاحظ أن الفعل يتحكم أحياناً في حرف الجر الذي يسبق أو يأتي بعد ضمير الوصل :

- He said something very impolite, for which he should apologise.
 (apologise for)
 - He says he's busy, by which he really means he doesn't want to go out this evening. (mean by)

يمكن استخدام (to + inf.) بدلاً من عبارة الوصل إذا كان ضمير الوصل في الجملة يعمل محل الفاعل مع كلمات مثل :

The first / the second / the last / the only

- I was the first person that left the ship.

= I was the first person to leave the ship.

يمكن استخدام (inf. + ing) بدلاً من (who / which / that + verb) في الحالات التالية :

- Passengers who travel on this bus always complain about its seats.

= Passengers travelling on this bus always complain about its seats.

ب. إذا كان الفعل في عبارة الوصل أحد أفعال التمني مثل (wish / desire / want / hope) :

- Students who wish to take part in the competition must get 90 % at least.

= Students wishing to take part in the competition must get 90 % at least.

Mini Test 4 Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- This is all the money for.
a. that asked b. which asked c. you asked d. a & c
- I prepared everything for the guests
a. whom you invited them b. who you invited them
c. you invited them d. you invited
- The scientist yesterday had discovered an important medicine.
a. honoured b. who honoured
c. he honoured him d. honouring
- The man in the garden is my uncle.
a. he works b. working c. that work d. worked

General Exercise On Language Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

Getting Started

- Have you seen she bought from the book fair?
a. which b. when c. what d. that
- This is the table on I put my books.
a. that b. which c. where d. when

Finding your culture

- The man, car was stolen, called the police.
a. who b. whom c. whose d. that
- This is the house we lived when I was young.
a. where b. which c. when d. who
- The manager, secretary is seriously ill, has to type the letters by himself.
a. who b. whose c. where d. that
- That is the school in I had my primary education.
a. which b. where c. whose d. when
- The teacher students passed the exam was so proud of himself.
a. that b. which c. whose d. where
- That's the house my parents used to live in.
a. where b. that c. in which d. what
- This is my son Ahmed looks after the family when I am away.
a. whose b. that c. whom d. which
- Give your sister she needs.
a. that b. what c. when d. whose
- Was that the time you went to Aswan together?
a. when b. what c. which d. where
- I don't like people never stop talking.
a. whom b. who c. which d. whose
- He loves food and eats is put on the table in front of him.
a. whom b. where c. that d. what
- Rodayna, surname is Mohammed, is a clever student.
a. that b. whose c. who d. who's
- The summer I graduated from university was long and hot.
a. which b. when c. that d. whom

II Special Cases

- At the corner, there is a supermarket I always buy my things from.
a. where b. which c. no word d. b & c
- You had better make up your mind on you need to buy.
a. whom b. who's c. what d. that

18. My little sister made a mistake which she had to apologize.
a. about b. to c. for d. in (دور ثان - ٢٠١٩)
19. The man wearing the white shirt is Ahmed's uncle.
a. who b. who's c. whose d. that (المودج الوزارة الاول - ٢٠١٩)
20. She used to go with her father to meetings she learned to read and write.
a. at which b. who c. when d. for which (المودج الوزارة الثالث - ٢٠١٨)
21. Can I talk to the man on the bench near you?
a. is sitting b. whom sits c. who sitting d. sitting (المودج الوزارة الثاني - ٢٠١٩)
22. The book had many pictures.
a. I gave you b. that I gave you it c. that I gave it to you d. which gave you (المودج الوزارة الثاني - ٢٠١٩)
23. Yesterday, I played a long game of tennis with my brother, made me very tired.
a. whom b. whose c. which d. when (دور اول حديث - ٢٠١٥)
24. Amir was the third the office.
a. to leave b. leaves c. leaving d. left
25. The tour guide showed me round town, was very kind of him.
a. who b. whose c. where d. which (المودج الوزارة الاول - ٢٠١٨)
26. He is the one the prize should be given to.
a. who's b. that c. which d. when
27. A palace is a big house many rooms where a king or queen lives.
a. whose has b. where has c. what has d. with
28. This is the picture with natural colours.
a. we painted it b. which we painted it c. painting d. painted
29. The restaurant she is having dinner has a great salad bar.
a. for b. which c. where d. that
30. She asked me where I had been, I replied, "It's a secret".
a. to which b. at which c. for which d. by which
31. Countries imports are more than their exports have economic problems.
a. whose b. which c. that d. when

32. Cities have an underground system are much easier to visit.
a. which b. where c. in which d. at which
33. The residents stay ended, have to renew it.
a. whose b. who c. that d. when (السودان - ٢٠١٧)
34. In 1983, Graham Greene travelled to Mexico, is where I met him.
a. which b. where c. when d. what (المودج الوزارة الاول - ٢٠١٧)
35. Name the actor plays Salah El Deen.
a. which b. whose c. whom d. who (دور ثان - ٢٠١١)
36. It is said he was a man to have the sight of an eagle and the courage of a lion.
a. who appeared b. he appeared c. that appears d. when appears (دور اول - ٢٠١٢)
37. I don't know with about the loan.
a. who I should speak b. whom I should speak c. who should I speak d. whom should I speak (دور اول - ٢٠١٤ نظام حديث)
38. He lost the book him last week.
a. which lent b. which I lent it c. who lent d. I lent (السودان - ٢٠١٢)
39. We'll give a prize to the company exports are good.
a. who b. which c. who's d. whose (السودان - ٢٠١٥)
40. Five of the girls, names I don't remember, won awards in maths.
a. those b. which c. whom d. whose

III Check your understanding

41. "I helped the injured man". This means
a. I helped the man who he was injured
b. I helped the man who was injured
c. I helped the man was injured
d. I helped the man that he was injured
42. "I haven't read your last email yet". This means
a. I haven't read the last email which you sent it yet
b. I haven't read the last email you sent it yet
c. I haven't read the last email you sent yet
d. a & c

43. "I know this man. He has a scar on his face". This means
 a. I know this man who he has a scar on his face
 b. I know this man whose a scar on his face
 c. I know this man with the scar on his face
 d. I know this man with the scar on his face
44. "Do as I have told you, please." Please,
 a. do what I told you
 b. do which I told you
 c. do that I told you
 d. b & c
45. "I met some friends. Two of these friends live abroad". This means
 a. I met some friends two of them live abroad
 b. I met some friends who two some of them live abroad
 c. I met some friends, two of whom live abroad
 d. I met some friends, two of who live abroad
46. "I have three employees in my office. Their pay is more than I can afford". This means
 a. I have three employees in my office who pay more than I can afford
 b. I have three employees in my office whose pay is more than I can afford
 c. I have three employees in my office who they pay more than I can afford
 d. I have three employees in my office where I pay more than I can afford
- "I have lived in this flat since I was born", this means ".....".
 This is the flat where I have lived since I was born
 This is the flat where I have lived in since I was born
 This is the flat I have lived in since I was born
 a & c
- "I take my annual holiday in August." This means
 August is the month which I take my annual holiday
 August is the month in which I take my annual holiday
 August is the month when I take my annual holiday
 c

49. "The little girl in the green dress is my daughter." I want to say that
 a. the little girl wearing the green dress is my daughter
 b. the little girl worn the green dress is my daughter
 c. the little girl she is wearing the green dress is my daughter
 d. the little girl who she is wearing the green dress is my daughter

Advanced Exercise on Language

▶ تنويه : التدرجات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- The meetings I attended were long and boring.
 a. at which b. where c. of which d. which
- The meetings I was invited were long and boring.
 a. at which b. where c. to which d. which
- I always buy my things from the supermarket at the corner.
 a. where b. which c. when d. no word
- I know for he married her? For her money.
 a. what b. that c. why d. which
- I have no idea was at the door.
 a. where b. whom c. who d. that

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	d	- كلمة (meetings) غير عاقل وهي مفعول للفعل (attend) الذي لا يأخذ حرف جر في هذا السياق، لذلك استخدمنا (which)
2.	c	- كلمة (meetings) غير عاقل وهي مفعول للفعل (invited) الذي يتطلب حرف الجر (to) قبل المكان، لذلك استخدمنا (to which)
3.	d	- المعنى وبناء الجملة صحيحين بدون ضمائر وصل نظرًا لعدم وجود فعل قبل حرف الجر (at)، والعبرة الموصولة هنا مختصرة، وبالصيغة الكاملة تكون : - supermarket which is at
4.	a	- الجملة ينقصها مفعول والذي يحل محله هنا الضمير (what) وليس أي اختيار آخر
5.	c	- الضمير (who) مُستخدم بمعنى استفهامي ويحل محل الفاعل

Exercise

On Vocabulary

● Understand

● Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. This painting is Well done, Leen!
a. tight b. fierce c. deliberate d. incredible
2. Sama loudly when she saw a rat in her bedroom!
a. tied b. screamed c. spoilt d. fainted
3. This jacket is too for me. I need a bigger size.
a. tight b. fierce c. deliberate d. incredible
4. The cyclist fell on his head and
a. tied b. guided c. spoilt d. fainted
5. We crossed the canal by
a. handle b. spark c. steamer d. guide
6. The little boy who was playing in the street the guests to their flat.
a. tied up b. guided c. spoilt d. fainted
7. Somebody started the fire It was not an accident.
a. tightly b. incredibly c. fiercely d. deliberately
8. Don't say anything about Amir's birthday present. I don't want you to the surprise.
a. tie up b. guide c. spoil d. faint
9. The of the knife broke and I couldn't use it any longer.
a. handle b. spark c. steamer d. guide
10. One can cause a big fire.
a. handle b. spark c. steamer d. guide
11. The big fire burnt as the firefighters tried to stop it.
a. fiercely b. fierce c. deliberately d. deliberate
12. The criminals were and taken to the police station.
a. tied up b. guided c. spoilt d. fainted

المهارات الخاصة بالوحدة تم شرحها متبوعة بالتدريبات في ملحق (Master your skills) كل وحدة علي حدة.

تدوين

الترجمة Translation

1 Choose the best Arabic translation :

1. Egypt has always been the lighthouse of science and civilisation since the dawn of history. It has a strong cultural background. Some of the greatest Arab writers, musicians and craftsmen are Egyptians.

أ. لقد كانت مصر منارة العلم والحضارة منذ أسفل التاريخ، ولديها خلفية ثقافية قوية، وبعض أعظم الكتاب والموسيقيين والحرفيين العرب مصريون.

ب. لطالما كانت مصر منارة للعلم والحضارة منذ فجر التاريخ، ولديها خلفية ثقافية قوية، وبعض أعظم الكتاب والموسيقيين والحرفيين العرب مصريون.

ج. لقد كانت مصر على فترات منارة للعلم والحضارة منذ فجر التاريخ، ولديها خلفية ثقافية رادعة، وبعض أعظم الكتاب والموسيقيين والحرفيين العرب مصريون.

د. لطالما كانت مصر منارة للعلم والحضارة منذ فجر التاريخ، ولديها خلفية ثقافية قوية، وبعض أعظم الكتاب والموسيقيين والحرفيين المصريين عرب.

2. English is a tool to break down barriers in international communication. It may become the common language of communication among a group of immigrants coming from different countries.

أ. إن اللغة الإنجليزية هي أداة لتدمير الحواجز في الاتصال الدولي، وقد تصبح لغة التواصل المشتركة بين مجموعة من المهاجرين القادمين من بلدان مختلفة.

ب. اللغة الإنجليزية هي وسيلة لاقتحام الحواجز في الاتصال الدولي، ولا بد أن تصبح لغة التواصل المشتركة بين مجموعة من المهاجرين القادمين من بلدان مختلفة.

ج. إن اللغة الإنجليزية هي أداة لبناء الحواجز في الاتصال الدولي، وهي تصبح لغة التواصل المشتركة بين مجموعة من المهاجرين القادمين من قري مختلفة.

د. إن اللغة الإنجليزية هي أداة لكسر الحواجز في التواصل الدولي، وهي لن تصبح لغة التواصل المشتركة بين مجموعة من المهاجرين القادمين من بلدان مختلفة.

3. If we don't look after our heritage, it could easily disappear like most of the wonders of the world. It is not the responsibility of the government alone to protect our heritage but of individuals as well.

أ. إذا لم نعتني بتراثنا، فقد يختفي بسهولة مثل معظم عجائب العالم، وليست مسؤولية الحكومة وحدها حماية تراثنا ولكنها مسؤولية الأفراد أيضًا.

ب. إذا لم نعتني بثروتنا، فقد تختفي بسهولة مثل معظم غرائب العالم، وليست مسؤولية الحكومة وحدها حماية تراثنا ولكنها مسؤولية الأفراد أيضًا.

ج. إذا لم نعتني بتراثنا، فقد يختفي بسهولة مثل معظم عجائب العالم، وليست مسؤولية الحكومة وحدها حماية تراثنا ولكنها مسؤولية الأفراد.

د. إذا لم نعتني بتراثنا، فقد يختفي بسهولة مثل معظم عجائب العالم، وليست من مسؤوليات الحكومة حماية تراثنا ولكنها مسؤولية الأفراد.

4. One should not learn a foreign language merely to achieve an immediate professional or academic aim and then give it up. We should carry on learning it as it is a valuable experience that enriches our life.

أ. لا ينبغي للمرء أن يتعلم لغة أجنبية لمجرد تحقيق هدف مهني أو أكاديمي فوري ثم التوقف عن ذلك، بل يجب أن نستمر في تعلمها لأنها تجربة قيمة تثري حياتنا.

ب. لا ينبغي للمرء أن يتعلم لغة أجنبية لمجرد تحقيق هدف مهني أو أكاديمي فوري ثم التخلي عنه. يجب أن نستمر في تعلمه لأنه تجربة قيمة تثري حياتنا.

ج. ألا ينبغي للمرء أن يتعلم لغة أجنبية لمجرد تحقيق هدف مهني أو أكاديمي فوري ثم الإقلاع عنه. يجب ألا نستمر في تعلمها لأنها تجربة قيمة تثري حياتنا.

د. لا ينبغي للمرء أن يتعلم لغة أجنبية لمجرد تحقيق هدف مهني أو أكاديمي فوري ثم التخلي عنه، بل يجب أن نستمر في تعلمها لأنها تجربة غير ذات قيمة تثري حياتنا.

2 Choose the best English translation :

١. نحن أمة لها تاريخ عريق وحضارة عظيمة أورثتنا كنوز أثرية قيمة، لذلك تنفق الدولة ملايين الجنيهات على ترميم وصيانة المواقع الأثرية القديمة لكونها جزء هام من تراثنا الثقافي والحضاري.

a. We are a nation where has a long history and a great civilization that took us valuable archaeological treasures. Therefore, the state spends millions of pounds on the restoration and maintenance of ancient archaeological sites, as they are an important part of our cultural and civilizational heritage.

b. We are a nation that has a tall history and a great civilization that bequeathed us valuable archaeological treasures. Therefore, the state spends millions of pounds on the restoration and maintenance of modern archaeological sites, as they are an important part of our cultural and civilizational heritage.

c. We are a nation that has a long history and a great civilization that bequeathed us valuable archaeological treasures. Therefore, the state spends millions of pounds on the restoration and maintenance of ancient archaeological sites, as they are an important part of our cultural and civilizational heritage.

٤. إن الطريقة الأفضل لمواجهة جائحة كورونا هي الإلتزام بالإجراءات الاحترازية مثل التباعد الاجتماعي وارتداء الكمامات واستخدام المطهرات.

- a. The best way to confront the Corona pandemic is to adhere to preventive measures such as social distancing, wear masks and use disinfectants.
- b. The best way to face the Corona pandemic is to follow the precautionary measures such as social distancing, wearing masks and using disinfectants.
- c. The best way to gain the Corona pandemic is to follow the precautionary measures such as social distancing, wearing tusks and using disinfectants.
- d. The best way to face the Corona panic is to follow the precautionary measures such as sociable distancing, wearing masks and using disinfectants.

MASTER YOUR SKILLS

اتقن المهارات اللغوية



اللغة الانجليزية

في

امنح ثقتك لمن يستحق

14. Anything she says makes us annoyed.
 a. why b. whom c. that d. what
15. A famine was the reason so many African people emigrated to the USA.
 a. no pronoun b. where c. when d. what
16. She always asks me to say I've said again. That's really boring.
 a. which b. that c. what d. whose

Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

In 1961, John Kennedy became president. The world was then introduced to his beautiful wife Jacqueline Bouvier Kennedy. She was intelligent, **graceful**, and beautiful. Americans and the world fell in love with her. She was born in 1929. She lived in New York City and East Hampton, Long Island. She loved riding horses and had lessons at a very early age. She went to private schools. Her interests were writing poems and stories, ballet, and drawing.

Jacqueline traveled all over the world. She became a photographer for a Washington D.C. newspaper and soon met Senator John Kennedy. She married John Kennedy in 1953. They had two children, Caroline, and John Jr., who was born just before John Kennedy became president in 1960. The family moved into the White House. They had another child Patrick, who was born prematurely and died. A president's wife is called the First Lady. As First Lady, Jackie promoted the "arts". She introduced the world to the White House by conducting tours for visitors. She had many responsibilities, but her children always were her top priority.

Tragedy struck with the assassination of President Kennedy. Jacqueline Kennedy had to care for her children alone. She moved to New York City. She protected the children from all the publicity. She wanted as much privacy as possible, but the people and press always wanted to know about her life. She married Aristotle Onassis in 1968 and lived in Greece. After his death she moved back to New York City and was the editor for Doubleday. She died in 1994. She is remembered for her grace and beauty, her love of words and her family.

Jumping spiders feast on a variety of insects, as well as other spiders. Some varieties climb as well, giving them a wide range of potential prey. These arachnids do not build webs to catch prey. They hunt on foot by sneaking up and pouncing on their victims. Even though jumping spiders only grow to be between one-quarter and one-half inches long, they can leap amazing distances for their size. Additionally, their excellent eyesight makes them very accurate. Jumping spiders are also one of the fastest arachnids. Scientists claim they are very smart.

In addition to using silk for safety lines when jumping, jumping spiders also use this thread to create shelter under leaves and to encase eggs until hatching. Insects should be wary of this spider without a web that can stealthily approach, keenly observe, and leap.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

25. The main idea of the passage is
 - a. The special skills the spider uses to catch its preys
 - b. The different kinds of insects the spider catches
 - c. The various environments in which the spiders live
 - d. The difference between various kinds of spiders
26. Which of the following sentences is CORRECT ?
 - a. Jumping spiders are as smart as bees.
 - b. Jumping spiders are as lazy as some bats.
 - c. All spiders are jumping.
 - d. All spiders are safe.
27. Why does the author say these spiders have distinctive appearance?
 - a. They have large eyes to observe their prey.
 - b. They spin out a line to construct a web and catch prey.
 - c. They enclose their eggs in a silk sack.
 - d. They create a shelter under a leaf.
28. The spiders use their silk to

a. kill their victims	b. build shelter
c. fly in the air	d. encase their babies
29. The spider hasdifferent colours.

a. four	b. three	c. two	d. five
---------	----------	--------	---------

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

- 337 **المحاضر** لغة إنجليزية / ٣٣ / ترم ٢ (م : ٢٢)

اسم الطالب (رباعياً) :
تعليمات: ظلل الدائرة المقابلة تمامًا للإجابة الصحيحة. إذا ظلت الدائرة أمام الإجابة الخطأ، اشطب عليها بشكل واضح ثم ظلل الدائرة المقابلة للإجابة الصحيحة.

- | | | | | | | | |
|-------|---|---|---|-------|---|---|---|
| 1. a | b | c | d | 21. a | b | c | d |
| 2. a | b | c | d | 22. a | b | c | d |
| 3. a | b | c | d | 23. a | b | c | d |
| 4. a | b | c | d | 24. a | b | c | d |
| 5. a | b | c | d | 25. a | b | c | d |
| 6. a | b | c | d | 26. a | b | c | d |
| 7. a | b | c | d | 27. a | b | c | d |
| 8. a | b | c | d | 28. a | b | c | d |
| 9. a | b | c | d | 29. a | b | c | d |
| 10. a | b | c | d | 30. a | b | c | d |
| 11. a | b | c | d | 31. a | b | c | d |
| 12. a | b | c | d | 32. a | b | c | d |
| 13. a | b | c | d | 33. د | ج | ب | ا |
| 14. a | b | c | d | 34. د | ج | ب | ا |
| 15. a | b | c | d | 35. a | b | c | d |
| 16. a | b | c | d | 36. a | b | c | d |
| 17. a | b | c | d | 37. a | b | c | d |
| 18. a | b | c | d | 38. a | b | c | d |
| 19. a | b | c | d | 39. a | b | c | d |
| 20. a | b | c | d | 40. a | b | c | d |

UNIT 12

Myths and fables

SB pages 62 : 71

WB pages 36 : 41

Learning Outcomes :

o Reading :
Read a myth and a fable; Understand a legend

o Writing :
Write your own myth

o Listening :
Listen to guests on a radio show discussing the relevance of myths in modern day society

o Speaking :
Debate about the relevance of myths;
Re-tell a story

o Language :
Reported speech

o Life skills :
Learn from the past and understand our origins



لإتقان الوحدة

- بنك الأسئلة والامتحانات التدريبية.
- دليل المعاصر في المهارات.
- قاموس المعاصر اللغوي.
- دليل المعاصر للأزهر الشريف.



Part I

Vocabulary & Definitions

• اختبر مدى اتقانك للمفردات الرئيسية في كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية.
• المفردات اللغوية باللون الأحمر هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية.

تنويه

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

boast (ed) (v)	يتفاخر	humble (adj)	متواضع
cause (d) (n/v)	سبب - يُسبب	knight(n)	فارس
cheer (ed) (v)	يُهَلِّل - يبتهج	legend (n)	أسطورة
chop (ped) (v)	يُقطّع - يُجزئ	legendary (adj)	أسطوري
chivalry(n)	شُهامة / فروسية / مِروءة	look(ed) back (phr. v)	ينظر للخلف - يذكّر فيما مضى
fable (n)	الحكاية الرمزية	myth (n)	أسطورة
flood(ed) (v/n)	يفيض - يغمر بالمياه - الفيضان	steady (adj)	ثابت / رصين
honourable (adj)	شريف / مُبجّل	stretch(ed) out (v)	يتمدّد - يمتدّ
eternal(adj)	أزلي / أبدي	tear (n)	دُمعة العين
evidence(n)	دليل		

2 Important Vocabulary

aloud(adv)	بصوت مسموع	monster(n)	وحش
armour(n)	درع	musical(n)	فيلم غنائي
behave(d)(v)	يسلك / يتصرّف	obey(ed) (v)	يطيع
beloved(adj)	محبوب	occur(red) (v)	يحدث
brave (adj)	شجاع	overall(adj)	إجمالي / كُلّي
castle(n)	قلعة	pace(n)	خطوة - وتيرة
centre(d) (v/n)	يتمركز - مركز	path(n)	مشي - ممر
code(n)	قاعدة / دستور - مُلونة	pause(d) (v/n)	يتوقف - وقفة
contest(n)	منافسة - صراع	perseverance(n)	دأب / مُثابرة
debatale(adj)	مُشير للجدل - محل نقاش	plenty(adv/pron)	كثير
debate(d) (v/n)	يتناقش - مناقشة / مناظرة	proof(n)	دليل / برهان
defeat(ed)(v/n)	يُهزم - هزيمة	prove - proved - proven(v)	يُثبت / يُبرهن
defend(ed)(v)	يدافع عن	polite (adj)	مُؤدّب / مُهذّب
donate(d)(v)	يتبرّع به	purpose(n)	غرض
dragon(n)	تنين		

emergency(n)	حالة طوارئ	real-life(adj)	حقيقي - واقعي
encouragement(n)	تشجيع	relevance(n)	ملائمة
exaggerate(d)(v)	يبالغ في	rescue(d) (v)	يُنقذ
fair(adj)	عادل / مُنصف	retell - retold(v)	يُعيد سرد
fierce(adj)	عنيف / شرس	risk(ed) (n/v)	مُخاطرة / خطر - يخاطر
fit(n)	نوية	ruler(n)	حاكم
force(d) (n/v)	قوة - يُجبر	similarity(n)	تشابه
gather(ed) (v)	يتجمع / يحتشد	stony(adj)	حجري
grateful(adj)	مُمتنّ / شاكر	storyteller(n)	قصاص / حاكمي
generation(n)	جيل	strict(adj)	صارم - حازم
generous (adj)	كريم	tale(n)	حكاية
hare(n)	أرنب بريّ	throughout(adv)	في كل أرجاء - طوال
holy(adj)	مُقدّس	verbally(adv)	شفهياً
honest(adj)	أمين	version(n)	نُسخة
jealous(adj)	غيور	wealth(n)	ثروة
youth(n)	الشباب	wealthy(adj)	ثري
modern-day(adj)	مُعاصر - من الوقت الحاضر	while(n)	فترة

3 Definitions تعريفات

boast (v)	يتفاخر	to talk too proudly about your abilities, achievements, or possessions	ممتلكات
cheer (v)	يُهَلِّل - يبتهج	to give a shout of encouragement	
chivalry (v)	الشهامة	to cut into pieces	
chop (n)	يُقطّع - يُجزئ	behaviour that is honourable, kind, generous, and brave, especially men's behaviour towards women	
eternal (adj)	أبدى - أزلي	continuing for ever and having no end	
evidence (n)	دليل	facts or signs that show clearly that something exists or is true	
fable (n)	الحكاية الرمزية	a traditional short story that teaches a moral lesson, especially a story about animals	
flood (v)	يفيض - يغمر بالمياه	to cover land with a large amount of water	
honourable (adj)	شريف / مُبجّل	behaving in a way that is morally correct and shows you have high moral standards	معايير

humble (adj)	متواضع	not considering yourself or your ideas to be as important as other people's
knight (n)	فارس	a man with a high rank in the past who was trained to fight while riding a horse
legend (n)	أسطورة	an old well-known story, often about brave people, adventures, or magical events
look back (phr. v)	يُنظر للخلف - يفكر فيما مضى	- to look at something behind you - to think about something that happened in the past
myth (n)	أسطورة	an ancient story, especially one invented in the past to explain natural or historical events
steady (adj)	ثابت/رصين	keeping the same regular pace
stretch out (v)	يتمدد - يمتد	to extend your arms and legs
tear (n)	دُمعة العين	a drop of liquid which comes from the eye when you are sad

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

- Rodayna when she heard that she got 99% in the final exam.
a. chopped b. flooded c. looked back d. cheered
- This film about human gods is based on Greek
a. myths b. armours c. paces d. tears
- Teaching is undoubtedly a/an profession. It is the career of prophets.
a. honourable b. debatable c. steady d. grateful
- If you want to succeed in life and work, don't The past is history, not destiny.
a. chop b. flood c. look back d. cheer
- Messi, Ronaldo and Mo Salah are eternal football
a. chivalries b. legends c. perseverance d. relevance
- Muslims and Christians believe in life after death.
a. humble b. generous c. polite d. eternal
- Be careful not to cut your fingers while the meat.
a. chopping b. flooding c. looking back d. cheering

- My little Sama likes the of the rabbit and its mother.
a. myth b. legend c. fable d. tear
- You can see in armour in historical films.
a. evidence b. knights c. chivalry d. causes
- The River Nile used to its banks before the High Dam had been built.
a. chop b. flood c. look back d. cheer
- Scientifically, clean and refresh your eyes.
a. myths b. armours c. paces d. tears
- Despite his wealth and social position, Mr Omar is a man.
a. humble b. generous c. eternal d. fed up
- I on my bed for a few minutes to relax.
a. looked back b. stretched out c. cheered d. boasted
- My son is making a/an progress in his post-graduate studies.
a. jealous b. generous c. steady d. grateful
- It wasn't polite of him to about his wealth in the presence of the poor couple.
a. look back b. stretch out c. feed up d. boast
- There is enough that he is guilty.
a. chivalry b. knight c. evidence d. cause
- Antra Ibn Shadad is a/an knight.
a. legendary b. jealous c. steady d. weak

2 Important vocabulary

- He divorced his wife in a/an of anger.
a. myth b. armour c. fit d. legend
- It is not easy to defeat such a brave knight in
a. myth b. armour c. piece d. tear
- is behaviour that is honourable, kind, generous, and brave.
a. Chivalry b. Legend c. Perseverance d. Relevance
- Arab were known for their bravery, honour and skill.
a. hares b. versions c. whiles d. knights
- I was over the moon due the success of my daughter.
a. beloved b. overall c. real-life d. fierce

23. Being polite to women and old people is part of our moral
a. emergency b. code c. contest d. proof
24. Modern technology has made the of change in our life very fast.
a. myth b. armour c. pace d. tear
25. She is both beautiful and polite. You're just of her.
a. jealous b. generous c. polite d. fed up
26. In the past, economic activity was mainly around farming.
a. obeyed b. occurred c. paused d. centred
27. It is difficult to the importance of getting enough sleep to your health.
a. donate b. risk c. exaggerate d. gather
28. Our teacher never allows anyone to talk without permission.
a. fair b. strict c. honest d. wealthy
29. You have to pay the printed price. The prices in this shop are not
a. honourable b. debatable c. steady d. grateful
30. Most children like the fable of the and the tortoise.
a. hare b. version c. while d. knight
31. The police launched a/an attack on the terrorist cell.
a. beloved b. grateful c. real-life d. fierce
32. Mr Mohammed Omar held a/an to see who was able to solve some difficult maths problems.
a. emergency b. code c. contest d. proof
33. Manchester United was by 5 goals to 0.
a. defended b. defeated c. proven d. rescued
34. They are not good sons or daughters those who are not to their parents.
a. overall b. debatable c. steady d. grateful
35. There will never be an end to the arguments between the two sisters unless one of them gets married and leaves the house.
a. humble b. generous c. eternal d. fed up
36. This disease mainly in hot African countries.
a. obeys b. occurs c. debates d. feeds up
37. Some passers-by have to see what the man was selling.
a. donated b. risked c. exaggerated d. gathered

38. He kept his opinion even after it turned out to be inaccurate.
a. defending b. defeating c. attacking d. endangering
39. is determination to keep trying to achieve something in spite of difficulties.
a. Chivalry b. Legend c. Perseverance d. Relevance
40. My children like the 1994 of the 'Lion King' cartoon, not the 2019 one.
a. hare b. version c. while d. knight
41. When giving a presentation, for a few seconds after saying something important to let your audience think about it.
a. obey b. occur c. pause d. centre
42. The cost of my new laptop is LE 25,000.
a. beloved b. overall c. real-life d. fierce
43. In case of, call 122.
a. emergency b. code c. contest d. proof
44. is the quality of directly relating to something that is being discussed or considered.
a. Chivalry b. Legends c. Perseverance d. Relevance
45. Wait a moment, please! I will be back in a
a. hare b. version c. while d. knight
46. People who volunteer to blood are good citizens.
a. donate b. risk c. exaggerate d. burn
47. My experienced lawyer could easily I was innocent. برى
a. defend b. defeat c. prove d. rescue
48. It is not play if you go on playing while a player is badly injured.
a. fair b. strict c. dishonest d. wealthy
49. Traffic congestion is a problem.
a. legendary b. generous c. modern-day d. fed up
50. A good citizen the law.
a. obeys b. occurs c. pauses d. centres
51. People who are not sociable have very little experience.
a. beloved b. overall c. real-life d. fierce
52. Scientists have found a strong of the existence of life on Mars.
a. emergency b. code c. contest d. proof

53. He his life rescuing the child from the burning house.
a. donated b. risked c. exaggerated d. gathered
54. To be, Ali did nothing wrong.
a. unfair b. strictly c. honest d. wealthy
55. In ancient times, stories were told
a. verbally b. throughout c. unfairly d. debatably

3 Definitions

56. To is to give a shout of encouragement.
a. chop b. flood c. look back d. cheer
57. A is an ancient story, especially one invented in order to explain natural or historical events.
a. myth b. legend c. fable d. tear
58. Being means behaving in a way that is morally correct and shows you have high moral standards.
a. honourable b. humble c. steady d. generous
59. To is to think about something that happened in the past.
a. chop b. flood c. look back d. cheer
60. A is an old well-known story, often about brave people, adventures, or magical events.
a. myth b. legend c. fable d. tear
61. Being means continuing forever and having no end.
a. humble b. generous c. polite d. eternal
62. To is to cut into pieces.
a. chop b. flood c. look back d. cheer
63. is a traditional short story that teaches a moral lesson, especially a story about animals.
a. myth b. legend c. fable d. tear
64. means facts or signs that show clearly that something is or is true.
a. lights b. evidence c. chivalry d. causes
65. is to cover land with a large amount of water.
a. chop b. flood c. look back d. cheer
66. is a drop of liquid which comes from the eye when you are sad.
a. myth b. legend c. fable d. tear

67. Being means not considering yourself or your ideas to be as important as other people's.
a. humble b. generous c. polite d. fed up
68. To is to extend your arms and legs.
a. look back b. stretch out c. cheer d. boast
69. Being means keeping the same regular pace.
a. honourable b. humble c. steady d. generous
70. To is to talk too proudly about your abilities, achievements, or possessions.
a. look back b. stretch out c. cheer d. boast

Part II Vocabulary Study

تنبیه ساعد فملمك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مُسبقاً بشكل جيد.

1 Verbal Collocations متلزمات لفظية

apply	a lesson	يُطبَّق درساً مستفاداً	...	responsibility	يُكَلَّف ... بمسئولية
be	debatable	يكون مثيراً للجدل	give	a shout	يُطلِّق صيحة
bring	eternal youth	يَجْلِبُ الشباب الدائم		examples	يُعْطِي أمثلة
create	a charity	يُنْشِئُ جمعية خيرية	have	the power to	لديه القوة لـ
cross	the finishing line	يعبر خط النهاية	make	a note	يُدوِّن ملاحظة
cry	tears	يُنْزِف الدمع/ يبكي	pay	attention	يُنْتَبِه - يولي اهتمام
defend	himself	يدافع عن نفسه	support	an argument	يدعم رأياً
develop	new skills	يُنْمِي مهارات جديدة	take	the risk	يغامر/ يخاطر
find	proof	يجد دليل	teach	a lesson	يُلَقِّن درساً
get	bored	يسأم/ يمل	wear	a heavy armour	يرتدي درعاً ثقيلاً

Mini Test 1 Collocations

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. She a loud shout once she heard the good news.
a. applied b. gave c. taught d. found
 2. attention to what your teacher says.
a. Take b. Support c. Bring d. Pay
 3. It was just a myth to think that the Nile flooded because Isis tears into it.
a. defended b. made c. cried d. developed
 4. The investigator has a proof that the man is not guilty.
a. applied b. given c. taught d. found
 5. He has the risk of driving along the desert road alone at night.
a. taken b. supported c. brought d. paid
 6. I use my pencil to notes when studying.
a. defend b. make c. cry d. wear
 7. It is good to the useful lesson you have learnt from the story.
a. apply b. give c. do d. make
 8. Don't believe the TV commercials about health products that can eternal youth.
a. take b. apply c. bring d. pay
- Everyone has the right to themselves.
a. defend b. listen c. care d. tell
- Fables like the hare and the tortoise are used to lessons to little children.
a. apply b. bring c. teach d. find

مترادفات Synonyms

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
eternal (adj)	أزلي / أبدي forever
dishonourable (adj)	شريف / مبجل decent, respectable, polite
humble (adj)	متواضع respectful, polite
legendary (adj)	مشهور famous, well-known
steady (adj)	ثابت / رصين stable, balanced, firm, fixed

3 Antonyms متضادات

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)
eternal (adj)	أزلي / أبدي temporary مؤقت
honourable (adj)	شريف / مبجل dishonourable شائن - مبجل
humble (adj)	متواضع proud مُتَكَبِّر
legendary (adj)	مشهور unknown, obscure غير معروف / نكرة
steady (adj)	ثابت / رصين unstable, loose غير مستقر / مهلهل

Mini Test 2 Synonyms & Antonyms

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. "Mo Salah is a legendary footballer." In this utterance, the adjective 'legendary' is a synonym of
a. unknown b. obscure c. a & b d. well-known
2. "The base was not steady, and the model fell over." In this sentence, the word 'steady' is an antonym of
a. stable b. unstable c. balanced d. firm
3. "Steady" is to as "legendary" is to "obscure".
a. loose b. open-handed c. free-handed d. b & c
4. "The economic situation is steady." Here, we can replace 'steady' with
a. unstable b. loose c. firm d. contented
5. When you are 'humble', you are not
a. respectful b. proud c. polite d. a & c

4 Derivatives المشتقات

Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
boast	boast مصدر فخر boaster شخص متكبر boastfulness التفاخر - التَّكَبُّر	boastful متفاخر - مُتَكَبِّر	boastfully بتفاخر - بغطرسة

	fable	حكاية رمزية	fabled = legendary أسطوري / خرافي	
chop	chopper	ساطر		
cheer	cheer	صيحة فرح	cheering - مُفرح - مُبهج cheerful - سعيد / مُبتهِج	بانتهاج
flood	flood	فيضان		
	flooding	الفيضان		
	legend	أسطورة	legendary legend	أسطوري جيد جدا
steady(ied)	steadiness	ثبات - استقرار على وتيرة واحدة	steady - ثابت - مستقر على وتيرة واحدة	steadily بثبات - باستمرار

Mini Test 3 Derivatives

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Rivers when there's very heavy rain.
a. flood b. floods c. flooding d. a & c
- The of rivers occurs when there's very heavy rain.
a. flood b. floods c. flooding d. a & c
- as when their team scores a goal.
a. cheer b. cheers c. cheering d. cheerful
- re heard several Has the National Team scored more goals.
a. cheer b. cheers c. cheering d. cheerful
- over the moon. She must have received a piece of news.
a. cheer b. cheers c. cheering d. cheerfully
- person.
a. cheer b. cheers c. cheerfully d. cheerful
- en the fire to rescue the family who were trapped inside.
a. braved b. braved c. bravery d. bravely

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

according to	طبقاً لـ / حسب	in an emergency	في حالة طوارئ
as possible	قدر الإمكان	Middle Ages	العصور الوسطى
be based partly on	قائمة جزئياً على	modern-day society	المجتمع المعاصر
charity work	العمل الخيري	National Cancer Association	الجمعية القومية للسرطان
code of behaviour	قواعد السلوك / مذبنة أخلاقية	overall purpose	الغرض الكلي
daily life	الحياة اليومية	real-life people	أشخاص حقيقيين
eternal youth	الشباب الدائم	Round Table	المائدة المستديرة
forces of nature	قوى الطبيعة	sporting contests	منافسات رياضية
happiness maker	صانع السعادة	through hard work	عن طريق العمل الجاد
hunting contests	منافسات الصيد		

6 Synonymous idioms تعبيرات مترادفة

at a slow pace = slowly	ببطء - بوتيرة بطيئة	in charge of = responsible for	مستول عن
at a steady pace = steadily	بخطي ثابتة - بوتيرة منتظمة	keep on = go on = continue	يستمر في
be fed up with = annoyed with = bored with	يسأم / يمل من	make up = invent	يؤلف / يخلق
for a while = for a (short) period of time	لفترة قصيرة من الوقت	manage to = succeed in	يتمكن أن
in a fit of anger = in an outbreak of anger	في نوبة غضب	teach a moral = teach a lesson	يؤصل مغزى أخلاقي
		the dead = dead people	الموتى
		throughout the world = all over the world	في كل أرجاء العالم

7 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

boast about/of	يتباهى بـ	hear of	يعرف بـ / يسمع عن
bring ... back to	يُعيد ... إلى	help with	يساعد في
centre around	تتمركز حول	look back	يعيد التفكير في
challenge ... to	يتحدى ... في	pass on/down	ينظر للخلف - يترك
chop ... into	يُجزئ ... إلى	pay for	يُنقل - يُورث
consider ... to be	يعتبر أن ... يكون	pull ... out	يُدفع ثمن
debate about	يتناقش بشأن	stretch out	يُنزع / يستخرج
fight for	يقاتل من أجل	throw ... into	يُتسدد
find out	يكشف	wake up	يُلتقي بـ ... في
			يستيقظ - يوقظ

Mini Test 4 Expressions, Prepositions & Idioms

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- "He fired his secretary in a fit of anger." 'A fit' here can be replaced by
a. an outbreak b. a match c. a similarity d. an agreement
- She is always boasting her role in the company.
a. with b. about c. that d. off
- "Public spending continues to rise at a slow pace." In this context, the expression 'at a slow pace' gives an antonymous meaning to
a. slow b. slowly c. quiet d. quickly
- Most of his speech is centred his family.
a. to b. at c. around d. with
- "He made up this story to justify his failure." The phrasal verb 'made up' here means
a. invented b. published c. wrote d. copied
- "Stop boasting, man! We are all fed up with it." Here, the adjective 'fed up' is a synonym of
a. annoyed b. bored c. a & b d. full
- Myths used to pass from one generation to the next verbally.
a. up b. down c. on d. b & c
- He challenged me a chess game.
a. to b. from c. onto d. about

- "At last, he could relax for a while." In this sentence, the expression 'for a while' is a synonym of
a. since then b. for some time c. for ages d. for long
- He stretched in the warm sunshine on the beach.
a. with b. of c. out d. at

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

Myth - legend - fable

What is the difference between a myth, a legend and a fable?

ما الفرق في المعنى بين (myth - legend - fable) ؟
في اللغة العربية، تُعطي كلمة "أسطورة" المعنى الذي تدل عليه كلمتي (myth) و (legend)، أما كلمة (fable) فتعني (حكاية رمزية)، وفيما يلي التوضيح الخاص بالفرق في المعنى بين الكلمات الثلاث:

الأساطير

Myths are stories that were made up by people who wanted to explain how our world works, such as how natural events occurred. They are a bit like our ancient ancestor's version of science. These myths are generally passed on from one generation to the next.

الأساطير عبارة عن قصص اختلقها أشخاص أرادوا تفسير آلية عمل عالما، مثل آلية وقوع الأحداث الطبيعية، وهي تُعتبر إلى حد ما نسخة أجدادنا القدماء من العلم، وتنتقل هذه الأساطير عموماً من جيل إلى الجيل الذي يليه.

The word myth actually comes from the Greek 'mythos' meaning 'word of mouth'. Myths were shared among different groups of people throughout the world, and some became a big part of their community. تأتي كلمة أسطورة في الواقع من الكلمة اليونانية "mythos" التي تعني "كلمة الفم"، ولقد تم تبادل الأساطير فيما بين الجماعات المختلفة من الناس في جميع أنحاء العالم، وأصبح بعضها جزءاً كبيراً من مجتمعاتهم.

legends

Legends are stories that people made up. However, legends are usually about real-life people and what they did. Generally, although the person really did exist the events never happened like they did in the story. The facts are exaggerated to make the story more interesting and exciting.

الأساطير هي قصص اختلقها الناس، ومع ذلك عادة ما تدور الأساطير حول أشخاص حقيقيين وما فعلوه، وبشكل عام، وعلى الرغم من أن الشخص موجود بالفعل، إلا أن الأحداث لم تقع أبداً كما وقعت في القصة، والحقائق مبالغ فيها لجعل القصة أكثر تشويقاً وإثارة.

الحكايات الرمزية
• Fables are also stories that are passed down from one generation to the next. However, their overall purpose is to teach a lesson or a 'moral'. They are often about animals, plants or forces of nature.
الحكايات الرمزية هي قصص تنتقل من جيل إلى جيل. ومع ذلك، فإن الغرض العام منها هو تعليم درس مستفاد "أخلاقي"، وغالباً ما تكون عن الحيوانات أو النباتات أو قوى الطبيعة.

be based (on - in)

• be based in

- Our office is based in 157 Ramses Street, Cairo.

• be based on

- This film was based on a novel by Charles Dickens.

loudly - aloud

• loudly = in a loud voice (adv) بصوت عال

- He shouted at the child loudly, which frightened her.

= He shouted at the child in a loud voice, which frightened her.

• aloud = out loud (adv) بصوت مسموع

- Something made him laugh aloud in the meeting, which was very embarrassing.

from now on / from then on

• from now on

من الآن فصاعداً (تُستخدم في سياق مضارع أو مستقبل)

- You are always making mistakes. From now on, you will be punished for anything wrong you do.

• from then on

منذ ذلك الحين (تُستخدم في سياق ماضي وأحياناً مضارع تام)

- I left university in 1998. From then on, I haven't seen Mr Bahaa.

Mini Test 5 Clear the Confusion

★ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. My business is based Aswan.

a. on b. in c. to d. from

2. His objection is based his busy schedule.

a. on b. in c. to d. from

3. You need to speak quite for the people at the back.

a. aloud b. a loud c. loudly d. a & b

4. I don't think anybody has heard me while I was thinking
The nearest person was three metres away.

a. aloud b. a loud c. loudly d. a & b

5. We moved to Aswan in 2002., I haven't seen my friend Magdy.

a. From now b. From now on c. From on d. From then on

6. A is a traditional short story that teaches a moral lesson, especially a story about animals.

a. myth b. legend c. fable d. a & b

7. A is an old well-known story, often about brave people, adventures, or magical events.

a. myth b. legend c. fable d. a & b

8. A is an ancient story, especially one invented in order to explain natural or historical events.

a. myth b. legend c. fable d. a & b

8 Master your Key Vocabulary كل ما يخص المفردات

boast

• boast (that/about/of) (v)

يتباهى - يتفاخر (بـ)

- He boasts that he is the best footballer ever.

- She boasts of/about her uncle who is a famous scientist.

• boast (v)

يضم - يحتوي علي (لا يُستخدم في أزمنة مستمرة بهذا المعنى)

- My team boasts the best players in the world.

• boast (n)

مصدر فخر

- My boast is that I have always depended on myself.

• boaster (n)

متفاخر - متباهي

- You're being a boaster. Stop talking about your achievements all the time.

• boastful (adj) متفاخر - متكبر

≠

modest/humble متواضع

- When he got angry, he started to be boastful.

• boastfulness (n)

التفاخر - التكبر

- I can't stand his boastfulness.

chop

- **chop = chop up (v)**
- I want you to **chop** the meat. يُنْطَع - يُجَزَّى - يُخَرِّط
- **chop ... into (v)**
- I want you to **chop** the meat into very small cubes. يُنْطَع - يُجَزَّى - يُخَرِّط ... إلى مكعبات
- **chop ... down (phr. v)**
- I am completely against **chopping** this tree down. يُنْطَع شجرة
- **chop ... off (phr. v)**
- The gardener **chopped** some branches off. يزيل بالقطع
- **chopper (n)**
- Butchers use heavy **choppers** to cut the meat. ساطور
- **choppers (n)**
- Her row of bright white **choppers** dominates her face. أسنان

cheer

- **cheer (up) (v)**
- The fans **cheered** when Salah started to warm up. يُهَلِّل - يتهيج
- **cheer (up) (v)**
- The last-minute goal **cheered** fans. يُرِّدُه عن - يبهج
- **cheer (n)**
- We gave a **cheer** to the player who won man of the match. صيحة فرح
- **cheering (adj)**
- Thanks to your **cheering** news, I forgot all about my worries. مُفْرِح - مبهج
- **cheerful (adj)**
- She is a **cheerful** person whose smile always illuminates her face. سعيد - مبهج

fed up (with)

- **fed up (v)**
- I am exhausted and a bit **fed up**. ضَجِر - شاعر بالملل
- **fed up (with) (v)**
- Hurry up, Rodayna! We are **fed up** with waiting. ضَجِر - فاض به الكيل (من)

flood

- **flood (v)**
- Before we built the High Dam, the River Nile used to **flood** all agricultural land every year. يغمر بالمياه - تَغْمُرُه المياه
- **flood (v)**
- Before we built the High Dam, all agricultural land **flooded** with the Nile water every year. يغمر بالمياه
- **flood (v)**
- The river **floods** in the rainy season. يفيض / يطغي (النهر)
- **flood = pour/flow (v)**
- The refugees **flooded** across the borders. يجتاح / يتدفق (يصل إلى مكان بأعداد كبيرة)
- **flood ... with (v)**
- China has **flooded** the world **with** cheap goods. يُغْرِق / يملأ به
- **flood ... over/back (v)**
- Happiness **flooded over** my mother when she knew I had come first. يغمر - ينتاب
- **flood (n)**
- The high **floods** destroyed the village's mud-brick houses. فيضان
- **flood (n)**
- The **flood** of refugees **flooded** across the borders can't be controlled. اجتياح / تدفق (الوصول إلى مكان بأعداد كبيرة)
- **in flood (n)**
- You should avoid swimming in the river when it is **in flood**. في حالة فيضان
- **flooding (n)**
- The **flooding** of rivers is partly good and partly bad. الفيضان

steady

- **steady (adj)**
- Ahmed is making a **steady** progress at school. ثابت - مستقر علي وتيرة واحدة
- **steady (adj)**
- Hold the camera **steadily** while taking the shot.

- hold/remain steady
- My blood pressure remained steady at 140/90.

- steady job/work / income
- My father has a steady income from his work as a teacher.

- steady(ied) (v)
- The prices of gold have steadied after a week of losses.

- steady(ied) (v)
- It is said that lemon juice helps you steady your nerves.

- steadiness (n)
- The steadiness of his income makes life easier for him.

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Omar's is that he is a self-made man.
a. pace b. myth c. fable d. boast
- I am taking the underground to work. I can't the heavy traffic.
a. brave b. boast c. chop d. defend
- The villages by the River Nile regularly before Egypt built the High Dam.
a. has flooded b. is flooded c. flooded d. flood
- I took a deep breath to my nerves.
a. steady b. boast c. chop d. stretch
- This table all the irregular verbs in English.
a. consists b. boasts c. feeds up d. chops

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	d	- كلمة (boast) هنا اسم يعني (مصدر للفخر/مدعاة للفخر)
2.	a	- كلمة (brave) هنا فعل يعني (يتحدى يتحمل)
3.	c	- الفعل (flooded) هنا يعني (غمرتها المياه) وباقي الاختيارات في المضارع والسياق ماضي
4.	a	- كلمة (steady) هنا فعل يعني (يُهدئ)
5.	b	- الفعل (boast) هنا يعني (يتضمن/يشتمل علي)



Tapescript
نصوص
استماع الوحدة

1 Reading Texts

What is the difference between a myth, a legend and a fable? (SB page 62)

Myths⁽¹⁾ are stories that were made up⁽²⁾ by people who wanted to explain how our world works, such as how natural events occurred⁽³⁾. They are a bit like our ancient ancestor's version⁽⁴⁾ of science. These myths are generally⁽⁵⁾ passed on⁽⁶⁾ from one generation⁽⁷⁾ to the next.

The word myth actually⁽⁸⁾ comes from the Greek 'mythos' meaning 'word of mouth'. Myths were shared among different groups of people throughout⁽⁹⁾ the world, and some became a big part of their community⁽¹⁰⁾.

Legends⁽¹¹⁾ are also stories that people made up. However, legends are usually about real-life⁽¹²⁾ people and what they did. Generally, although the person really did exist⁽¹³⁾ the events⁽¹⁴⁾ never happened like they did in the story. The facts are exaggerated⁽¹⁵⁾ to make the story more interesting and exciting.

Fables⁽¹⁶⁾ are also stories that are passed down⁽¹⁷⁾ from one generation to the next. However, their overall⁽¹⁸⁾ purpose⁽¹⁹⁾ is to teach a lesson or 'moral'. They are often about animals, plants or forces⁽²⁰⁾ of nature.

Check Vocabulary

- أساطير
- يؤلف/يخلق
- يُحدث
- نُسخة
- بصفة عامة
- ينتقل/يتم توارثه
- جيل
- في الواقع
- في كل أرجاء - طوال
- المجتمع
- أساطير / خرافات
- حقيقي - واقعي
- يوجد
- أحداث
- يبالغ في
- الحكايات الرمزية
- ينتقل/يتم توارثه
- إجمالي/كُلّي
- غرض
- قوي

The hare and the tortoise

(SB page 63)

All the animals were fed up with⁽¹⁾ Hare boasting⁽²⁾ about how fast he could run. One day, Slow and Steady the tortoise said, "I can challenge⁽³⁾ you to a race⁽⁴⁾ now. It was a hot day. All the animals had gathered⁽⁵⁾ to watch. Hare ran along the road for a while⁽⁶⁾, then paused⁽⁷⁾ and looked round. He said, "I'm getting bored⁽⁸⁾". He looked back⁽⁹⁾ at Slow and Steady and shouted, 'You'll never win this race when you are walking at your slow pace⁽¹⁰⁾'.



Check Vocabulary

- يسأم/يمل من
- يتفاخر
- يتحدى
- سباق
- يتجمع/يحتشد
- فترة
- يتوقف
- يمل
- ينظر للخلف
- خطوة/وتيرة

Hare stretched out⁽¹¹⁾ in the sun to have a little sleep thinking, "There is plenty⁽¹²⁾ of time to relax⁽¹³⁾". While Hare was sleeping, Slow and Steady kept walking. He never stopped until he came to the finish line. The animals cheered⁽¹⁴⁾ loudly for the tortoise. Hare woke up and saw the tortoise crossing the finishing line.

- (11) يتمدد
(12) كثير
(13) يسترخي
(14) يهتف

Isis and Osiris

Osiris was the king of Egypt. He had a wife called Isis and a son called Horus. Osiris's brother, Seth, was very jealous⁽¹⁾. He said, "I want to be king himself". In a fit of anger⁽²⁾, he killed his brother Osiris, turned⁽³⁾ him into little pieces and threw him into the Nile. Isis managed to find the pieces and she brought them to her good friend Anubis, who was very clever. He said, "I could put the pieces back together again, but I don't have the power⁽⁴⁾ to bring him back to life.



When Osiris' grandfather Ra found out⁽⁵⁾ what happened, he was furious. He said, "I'm going to give Osiris a new job." He made Osiris the god of the dead⁽⁶⁾. Finally, Osiris's son Horus defeated⁽⁷⁾ Seth and became the ruler⁽⁸⁾ of Egypt. From then on, Isis travels to the banks⁽¹¹⁾ of the Nile every year, and remembers her husband, crying tears⁽¹²⁾ into the Nile. This is why the Nile rises⁽¹³⁾ each year, and sometimes floods⁽¹⁴⁾.

The legend of Setanta

A long time ago, a brave knight⁽¹⁾ had a son who was called Setanta. As he was growing up, he loved to stretch out and listen to his father boast about the different adventures⁽²⁾ he had had. While he was listening to these stories, they would cheer⁽³⁾ and laugh.

(WB page 38)

- Check Vocabulary
(1) فارس
(2) مغامرات
(3) يهتف - يبتهج

One story was about a group of knights called the Red Knights who were the bravest knights in the country. "I really want to join them!" Setanta thought. He practised hard, even though he was still a young boy, and he had developed many new skills which helped him win hunting and sporting contests⁽⁴⁾. He wanted to join the Red Knights so much that one night he left to find them. He had to walk for a long time and it was dangerous. However, as he had learnt how to defend⁽⁵⁾ himself, he thought, "If, I keep on⁽⁶⁾ walking at a steady⁽⁷⁾ pace, I won't face many problems." Finally, he arrived at the castle⁽⁸⁾ of the Red Knights. But they told him "You are too young to join us". And as he was leaving the castle, he was attacked by a very large and fierce⁽⁹⁾ dog. The big dog was not a problem for him and when the Knights saw what had happened they invited Setanta to be in charge⁽¹⁰⁾ of protecting the castle.

- (4) منافسة
(5) يدافع عن
(6) يستمر في
(7) ثابت/ارصين
(8) قلعة
(9) عنيف/شرس
(10) مسئول

Legend of King Arthur

(SB page 64)

Have you ever heard of the legend of king Arthur? King Arthur is a legendary⁽¹⁾ king in ancient Britain. The story of King Arthur is based partly⁽²⁾ on myth and partly on fact. Many people think King Arthur did exist and there are many ideas about who he was, but there isn't enough evidence⁽³⁾ to prove⁽⁴⁾ if any of them is correct.



In ancient times, stories about King Arthur were told aloud⁽⁵⁾. Later, in the Middle Ages⁽⁶⁾, authors⁽⁷⁾ began to write the stories down. The first story was written by Geoffrey of Monmouth in the 12th century book History of the Kings of Britain. The stories about King Arthur usually centre⁽⁸⁾ around a few main characters: King Arthur, Queen Guinevere, and the Knights of the Round Table who helped King Arthur fight⁽⁹⁾ for good causes and protect the weak. Knights were fighters in Europe during the Middle Ages. They rode horses and carried swords, and wore heavy armour⁽¹⁰⁾.

- Check Vocabulary
(1) أسطوري
(2) جزئياً
(3) دليل
(4) يُثبت/يبرهن
(5) بصوت مسموع
(6) العصور الوسطى
(7) مؤلفين
(8) يتركز
(9) يقاتل/يحارب
(10) جرع

Knights also followed a code⁽¹¹⁾ of behaviour⁽¹²⁾ called chivalry⁽¹³⁾. This asked knights to be brave⁽¹⁴⁾, humble⁽¹⁵⁾, honourable⁽¹⁶⁾, generous⁽¹⁷⁾ and polite, especially to women. One of the greatest knights was Sir Lancelot, who was such a brave knight that he defeated⁽¹⁸⁾ many monsters⁽¹⁹⁾ and dragons⁽²⁰⁾.

The reader might ask, "How has King Arthur become such a legend?" According to⁽²¹⁾ one story, a wise old man called Merlin put a sword in a stone, and said that Whoever pulled the sword out would be the king of England. Arthur pulled the sword out and that's how he became king. He was only fifteen years old and many people said he was too young to be king, so they refused to obey⁽²²⁾ him.

A French poet called Chretien de Troyes wrote five stories about King Arthur in the 1100s. He introduced the 'Holy⁽²³⁾ Grail' into the legend, which was a cup that was so powerful that it could bring eternal⁽²⁴⁾ youth⁽²⁵⁾ and happiness. In the 1400s, an English writer, Sir Thomas Malory, wrote The Death of Arthur, which became famous, and in the 1900s, another English writer, T. H. White, wrote four novels based on Malory's books. There were also two very well-known films made about King Arthur in the 1960s; a musical⁽²⁶⁾ called Camelot, and The Sword in the Stone, a Walt Disney film.

Ziad Sabri's daily blog

It's debatable⁽¹⁾ whether a person from the present can also be a legend. Personally⁽²⁾, if I had to choose someone today, I'd consider⁽³⁾ Mohamed Salah to be a legend. He's an honourable Egyptian footballer and he is also so generous that he has helped lots of people in his country. Although he is famous, he is such a humble person and he has never forgotten his roots. "I am lucky enough to be able to help as many people as possible" he says, "but I wish I had more time in the day to help more people. "To reach as many people as possible⁽⁵⁾, he has created a charity⁽⁶⁾ and helped with specific⁽⁷⁾ projects too.



(WB page 39)

Check Vocabulary

- (1) مُتَبَايِنٌ
- (2) شَخْصِيًّا
- (3) يَعْتَبِرُ
- (4) مُنْزَعَجٌ
- (5) قَدْرُ الْإِمْكَانِ
- (6) جَمْعِيَّةٌ خَيْرِيَّةٌ
- (7) مُخْتَصِدٌ

For example, in an emergency⁽⁸⁾, when he saw there were not enough ambulances⁽⁹⁾ to bring people to hospital, he paid for a new ambulance centre⁽¹⁰⁾ in Gharbia. Also, he realised that girls in Nagrig had to walk too far to go to school every day so he helped pay⁽¹¹⁾ for a girl's school in Nagrig. He also donated⁽¹²⁾ 50 million Egyptian pounds to the National Cancer Association. He is well known in Egypt for his charity work and we call him 'the happiness maker' and that's why for me Mohamed Salah is a legend.

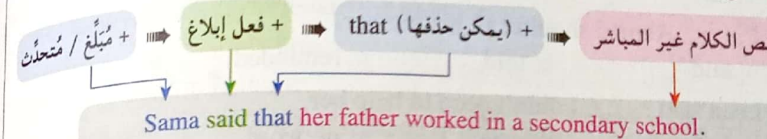
Myths and fables

- (8) حالة طوارئ
- (9) عربيات إسعاف
- (10) مركز
- (11) يدفع مال
- (12) يتبرع بـ

Part IV Language

Reported Statement الجملة الخبرية في الكلام غير المباشر

١ تتكون الجملة الخبرية في الكلام غير المباشر من :



٢ تبدأ جملة الكلام غير المباشر بالمُبَلِّغ (المتحدث) :

- Mr Omar said that he was travelling to Cairo the next day.

٣ يوضع فعل الإبلاغ بعد المُبَلِّغ، وهناك نوعان من أفعال الإبلاغ :

أ. أفعال إبلاغ لا بد أن يأتي بعدها المُخَاطَب مثل :

أقنع persuaded / convinced - ذَكَرَ reminded - أكد assured - أخبر / قال told -
.....المُخَاطَب. obj. + حَذَرَ warned.

والمُخَاطَب يكون اسم أو ضمير مفعول (me - him - her - it - you - us - them) :

- Mohammed told Omar that he wanted to go swimming.

- Nada reminded me that we had to get up early the day after.

ب. أفعال قول لا يأتي بعدها المُخَاطَب مثل :

أبدي ملاحظة remarked - صاح shouted - أقر admitted - قال said -
أوضح explained - رد replied - أجاب answered - أبلغ / ذكر reported -
... هس whispered - هتف cried - قال شاكياً complained.

- Yara said that her mother was very busy.

- The worker complained that the weather had been too hot the day before.

- لا تُستخدم علامات التنصيص (".....") في الكلام غير المباشر:
- "I want to buy a new tablet", said Rodayna. (مباشر)
 - Rodayna said that she wanted to buy a new tablet. (غير مباشر)
 - يمكن أن تُستخدم (that) أو تُحذف مع الفعل (say) ويُعطل وجودها بعد أعمال الإيلاج الأخرى:
 - Leen said (that) she could help me.
 - Bassem explained that he had an important meeting.

Mini Test 1 Apply

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Rania me that I should buy mom a present.
a. said b. told c. reminded d. b & c
2. Mr Ayman that Mostafa was polite.
a. said b. told c. reminded d. b & c
3. I Ahmed should call his mother.
a. said b. told c. reminded d. b & c
4. Leen said I didn't need to help her.
a. that b. what c. no word d. a & c

تتحول الضمائر حسب المتكلم والمُخاطَب:

- Karim said, "My mother will give me a nice present". (مباشر)
 - Karim said that his mother would give him a nice present. (غير مباشر)
 - Mariam said, "My mother will give me a nice present". (مباشر)
 - Mariam said that her mother would give her a nice present. (غير مباشر)
- ويمكن الاستعانة بالجدول التالي للمساعدة في فهم تحويلات الضمائر حسب السياق:

مباشر	غير مباشر	مباشر	غير مباشر
I	he / she / you / I	mine	his / hers / yours / mine
we	they / we	ours	theirs / ours
me	him / her / you / me	you (فاعل)	I / he / she / they / we / you
us	them / us	you (مفعول)	me / him / her / them / us
my	his / her / your / my	your	my / his / her / their / our
our	their / our	yours	mine / his / hers / theirs / ours / yours

Mini Test 2 Apply

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Noha said that was in grade three secondary.
a. I b. she c. her d. we
2. I told Ashraf that house was
a. he b. my c. him d. mine
3. "I'd like to borrow your bike."
- Ayman said that he would like to borrow bike.
a. his b. her c. my d. mine
4. "The red book is not yours, Rodayna."
- Ahmed told Rodayna the red book was not
a. hers b. his c. mine d. ours
5. "We are leaving now."
- Omar said were leaving then.
a. she b. him c. I d. they
6. "You refused to help me."
- Mum said that had refused to help her.
a. you b. I c. me d. my

تختلف بعض ظروف الزمان والمكان في الكلام غير المباشر عن الكلام المباشر:

- "These chairs will be moved here tomorrow", said Nada. (مباشر)
- Nada said that those chairs would be moved there the following day. (غير مباشر)
- "I haven't finished this report yet", explained Youssef. (مباشر)
- Youssef explained that he hadn't finished that report by then. (غير مباشر)

ويحتوي الجدول التالي على أهم تحويلات الظروف (تساعدك على تحديد الزمن في أسئلة الاختياري):

Direct	Reported	Direct	Reported
now	then / at that time	tonight	that night
this	that	today	that day
these	those	yet	by then
here	there	the day before yesterday	two days before
ago	before / earlier	the day after tomorrow	in two days' time

last week	the week before the previous week	next week	the week after the following week
yesterday	the day before the previous day	tomorrow	the day after the following day

Mini Test 3

Apply

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- "I am doing my homework now.", said Ali
Ali said that he was doing his homework
a. now b. today c. then d. tonight
- Last Monday, Amira said she would visit us
a. today b. tonight c. the day before d. the day after
- She said that she hadn't called her uncle two weeks
a. before b. after c. earlier d. a & c
- Omar said that he didn't go very often.
a. here b. there c. her d. their
- Omar said that he didn't come very often.
a. here b. there c. her d. their

أ. تتحول الأزمنة للأبعد - أي يتحول كل زمن إلى الزمن المقابل له في الماضي:

- "My wife **likes** green salad", said Magdi. (مباشر - مضارع بسيط)
- Magdi said that his wife **liked** green salad. (غير مباشر - ماضي بسيط)
- "My cousin said, 'I **am watching** an action film'". (مباشر - مضارع مستمر)
- My cousin said that she **was watching** an action film. (غير مباشر - ماضي مستمر)

ويحتوي الجدول التالي علي ملخص تحويلات الأزمنة:

Direct مباشر	Reported غير مباشر
play / plays (مضارع بسيط)	played (ماضي بسيط)
played (ماضي بسيط)	had played / played (ماضي تام / بسيط)
am / is / are	was / were
was / were (فعل أساسي)	was / were / had been
have / has (فعل أساسي)	had

had	had / had had
can / will / may	could / would / might
shall	should / would
must	must / had to / would have to
needn't	didn't have to / wouldn't have to

لاحظ الأزمنة في الجمل التالية :

- He explained that he **ate** fish on Friday. (NOT: eats)
- She said (that) she **was having** lunch. (NOT: is having)
- Rody said that she **had done** the shopping. (NOT: has done)
- Bassem said that they **had been living** there for five years. (NOT: have been)
- He said that he **had met** his boss. (NOT: has met)
- I told Ali that he **had to take** his medicine on time. (NOT: must take)
- I promised Laila that I **would help** her. (NOT: will help)
- He said that he **arrived / had arrived** on Friday.

يمكن أن يبقى الماضي البسيط كما هو بشرط ألا يؤدي ذلك إلى غموض في المعنى :

- لاحظ تحويلات الفعل الناقص (must) في الكلام غير المباشر :
- أ. تبقى (must) كما هي عند التعبير عن القوانين :
"Drivers **must hold** a driving licence", said Omar. (مباشر)
Omar said that drivers **must hold** a driving licence. (غير مباشر)
- ب. تتحول (must) إلى (had to) إذا كانت تدل على ضرورة في المضارع :
"You **must call** the manager **now**", Ali", said Aya. (مباشر)
Aya told Ali that he **had to call** the manager **then**. (غير مباشر)
- ج. تتحول (must) إلى (would have to) إذا كانت تدل على ضرورة في المستقبل :
"I **must return** home **next month**", said Tom. (مباشر)
Tom said that he **would have to return** home the following month. (غير مباشر)

Mini Test 4

Apply

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Rami promised me that he buy me a bike the following week.
a. can b. must c. would d. may

2. "I'm exhausted," said Eman.
- Eman said that she exhausted.
a. is b. would be c. will be d. was
3. We told him that we after school the day before.
a. played b. had played c. was played d. had been played
4. "I had lunch outdoors." - My father said he lunch outdoors.
a. had b. had had c. was had d. a & b
5. "I must leave now." - He said that he leave then.
a. had to b. must c. would have to d. will have to
6. "I must leave tomorrow." - He said that he the following day.
a. had to b. must c. would have to d. will have to
7. "I must leave now." - He said that he leave now.
a. had to b. must c. would have to d. will have to
8. "I must leave tomorrow." - He said that he tomorrow.
a. had to b. must c. would have to d. will have to

Important Notes

ملاحظات هامة

- 1 لا يوجد تحويل لأزمنة الماضي التام والتام المستمر:
(مباشر - ماضي تام)
- "I **had returned** home by midday", said Ahmed.
(غير مباشر - ماضي تام)
- Ahmed said that he **had returned** home by midday.
- 2 لا يوجد تحويل لصيغة الماضي من الأفعال الناقصة:
would - could - might - should - would rather - had better
(مباشر)
- "You **should study** hard, Samar", said mum.
(غير مباشر)
- Mum told Samar that she **should study** hard.
- 3 يبقى الماضي البسيط كما هو بعد التعبيرات التالية:
If - would rather - I wish - It is time ...
(مباشر)
- "It is time you **went** home, Tarek", said Uncle Yahia.
(غير مباشر)
- Uncle Yahia told Tarek that it was time he **went** home.
- 4 تبقى (used to) الدالة على العادة دون تحويل:
- She said, "I **used to get up late**".
- She said that she **used to get up late**. (NOT: had used)

- 5 من الأنفل ألا يتغير الزمن إذا كانت الجملة تعبر عن حقيقة:
- "The Nile is the longest river in the world," said the teacher. (مباشر)
- The teacher told us that the Nile is the longest river in the world. (غير مباشر)
- 6 لا تتغير ظروف الزمان والمكان والأزمنة إذا كان المدي الزمني أو المكان لم يتغير:
- Ten minutes ago, Aya said to me, "I **will call you next Friday**".
- Ten minutes ago, Aya told me that she **will call me next Friday**.
في المثال السابق، أوضح وجود التعبير (ten minutes ago) أن الجمعة القادمة لم تأت بعد.
فلم يتغير ظرف الزمان (next Friday) ولا الزمن (will call).
- 7 لا تتغير الأزمنة إذا كانت الجملة قبلت منذ فترة وجيزة وبدل على ذلك تعبيرات مثل:
(said a moment ago / said a minute ago / said a short time ago /
said just now / etc.)
- "We **will go** out soon", Areej said a **moment ago**.
- A **moment ago**, Areej said that they will go out soon.
- 8 لا تتغير الأزمنة إذا كان فعل الإبلاغ في المضارع أو المستقبل:
- Walid **says to** me, "My parents **work** hard."
- Walid **tells** me that his parents **work** hard.
- 9 تُحذف عبارات الموافقة أو الاتفاق مثل (Yes / Sure / Of course ...) ويستخدم فعل
إبلاغ يدل على الموافقة أو الاتفاق مثل:
- agreed / approved / answered in affirmative etc.
(مباشر)
- "Yes, I have received your email," said Sama.
(غير مباشر)
- Sama **agreed** that she had received my email.
- 10 تُحذف عبارات الرفض أو عدم الاتفاق مثل (No / Sorry...) ويستخدم فعل إبلاغ يدل على
الرفض أو عدم الاتفاق مثل:
- denied / disapproved / answered in negative etc.
(مباشر)
- "No, I didn't see Ali today," said Ahmed.
(غير مباشر)
- Ahmed **denied** that had seen Ali that day.

Mini Test 5

Apply

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Omar said a moment ago that he'll see the dentist
a. the next day b. that day
c. tomorrow d. the following day

2. Ahmed that he had stolen my biscuits, but I am sure he did it.
a. agreed b. approved c. denied d. answered
3. "It is time we went home." - He said it was time they home
a. went b. had gone c. was gone d. had been gone
4. "As a child, I used to like cartoons."
- He said that he to like cartoons as a child.
a. had used b. used c. was used d. had been used
5. "Lions eat meat." - She said that lions meat.
a. eat b. ate c. had eaten d. were eaten
6. "Cairo is the largest city in Africa."
- He said that Cairo the largest city in Africa.
a. is b. was c. had been d. a & b
7. "I will call you tomorrow."
- Ten minutes ago, I told Sami that I him tomorrow.
a. would call b. called c. will call d. had called
8. Esraa says she tired. Will you let her go home?
a. is b. was c. had been d. have been

Multiple choice Notes ملاحظات تفيد في حل أسئلة الاختيار من متعدد
التعبيرات الزمنية التالية في جمل الكلام غير المباشر تدل على أن الاختيار الصحيح ماضي تام:

(day / week / ...) before - the previous (day / week / ...)

last (day / week / ...) - by then - before

old man said that he abroad by then.

he travelled b. didn't travel c. hadn't travelled d. wasn't travelling

١ لاحظ التعبيرات الزمنية التالية :

(day / week / ...) after - the following (day / week / ...)

(day / week / ...)

تدل هذه التعبيرات في جمل الكلام غير المباشر أن الاختيار الصحيح قد يكون:

(was / were + inf. + ing) - (was / were + going to + inf.)

he us the following Friday.

b. had visited c. was visiting d. is going to visit

٢ تدل (then) في جمل الكلام غير المباشر تدل على أن الاختيار الصحيح ماضي مستمر:
- Reham said that she the housework then.
a. is doing b. was doing c. would do d. had done

General Exercise On Language

Apply

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1 Getting Started

1. Rana told us that her party the next week.
a. would be b. will be c. is d. was
2. Yesterday's newspaper said that he a three - year contract.
a. had signed b. would be signed c. is signing d. has signed
3. She said that she to Paris the next week.
a. will travel b. was travelling c. were travelling d. had travelled
4. He said that it was raining
a. here b. then c. now d. tomorrow
5. Dalia me that she needs my help.
a. says b. told c. said d. tells
6. My parents promised me that they me a laptop if I succeeded.
(نموذج الوزارة الرابع ٢٠١٦)
a. might buy b. will buy c. buy d. have bought
7. Mahmoud promised he would not tell anyone what said.
(دور ثان ٢٠١٢)
a. had I b. I had c. have I d. I have
8. He said that he be able to sleep until he had finished the story.
(نموذج الوزارة ٢٠١٥)
a. won't b. didn't c. hasn't d. wouldn't
9. He wondered how many goals they had scored week.
a. this b. that c. the d. it
10. The air hostess asked if we could fasten seat belts.
a. his b. her c. our d. ours

11. The journalist that Al- Ahly had won the match the previous night.
a. says b. told c. reported d. inquired
12. He added that wait to run.
a. he can't b. I can't c. he couldn't d. I couldn't
13. He said the lesson usually at half-past nine.
a. has started b. started c. is starting d. start
14. Sara said she to see her grandparents the next day.
a. has gone b. is going c. was going d. will go
15. Mustafa that he had already written that paragraph four times.
a. advised b. complained c. told d. wondered
16. Sally everyone that her father had bought a new car.
a. wanted to know b. asked c. said d. told
17. Rokaya explained that she was really sorry but she come to my party.
a. can b. can't c. could d. couldn't
18. Mohammed said, "I've just bought a flat."
- Mohammed said that he a flat.
a. have just bought b. had just bought
c. just bought d. has just bought
19. Ahmed said, "I am very upset." - Ahmed said that very upset.
a. he was b. he is c. he had been d. he would be
20. Ayman said, "I work in an office."
- Ayman told me worked in an office.
a. him b. he c. his d. himself
21. The school manager Mr Moataz to be in time.
a. told b. said c. remarked d. reported

II Special Cases

22. The teacher told us that the earth round the sun. (السودان ٢٠١٩)
a. go b. went c. goes d. going
23. Mona promised that she home tomorrow. (لبنان ٢٠١٩)
a. be b. would have been
c. will have been d. will be

24. Monera has just told Amira that they to their friend's wedding tonight.
a. would go b. have gone c. were going d. are going (دور ثان ٢٠١١)
25. He said a moment ago that he his car last month. (نموذج الوزارة السادس ٢٠١٦)
a. sold b. had sold c. would sold d. did sell
26. He said just now that he a new story. (السودان ٢٠١٥)
a. is reading b. was reading c. had read d. was read
27. "It's rather late and it's time for you to go to sleep."
- The mother that the children are still awake. (دور اول ٢٠١٢)
a. remembered b. inquired c. promised d. complained
28. At the wedding party yesterday, the bride said the happiest day of her life. (دور اول ٢٠١٤ نظام حديث)
a. today was b. that day was c. yesterday had d. that day had
29. The hostess inquires if we coffee.
a. liked b. had liked c. like d. likes
30. Basma has just remarked that she yet.
a. decided b. had decided c. has decided d. hasn't decided
31. Amr says he in a bank in the city centre. He enjoys his job.
a. had worked b. worked c. works d. would work
32. A short time ago, my wife said that she shopping tonight.
a. will go b. would go c. is going d. was going
33. Ibrahim says that he soon.
a. is coming b. was coming c. had been coming d. came
34. Mr Mohammed says he his new flat.
a. doesn't like b. like c. was liking d. isn't liking
35. Leen tells me that she chocolate at all.
a. doesn't like b. didn't like c. hadn't liked d. haven't liked

III Check your understanding

36. "You refused to help me, Omar." The pronoun 'me' refers to
a. he b. Omar c. the addressee d. the speaker
37. "You refused to help me, Omar." -
a. Omar said that I had refused to help him.
b. Omar said that I have refused to help him.
c. I said that Omar had refused to help me.
d. I said that I had refused to help Omar.

38. He said he was travelling to Paris the following day.
- ".....", he said.

- a. I was travelling to Paris yesterday.
- b. I am travelling to Paris today.
- c. I will travelling to Paris tomorrow.
- d. I am travelling to Paris tomorrow.

39. "I might take two days off." - Maha said

- a. she might take two days off.
- b. she might have taken two days off.
- c. she had taken two days off.
- d. a & c

40. "I had returned home before midnight." - Ali said that he

- a. he had been returning home by midnight.
- b. he had returned home by midnight.
- c. he was returning home by midnight.
- d. he was being returned home by midnight.

41. "I will lend you the money you need, Esraa."

- Ahmed told Esraa that

- a. he will lend her the money she needs.
- b. she will lend him the money he needs.
- c. he would lend her the money she needed.
- d. he would lend her the money she needs.

42. An hour ago, Menna said, "I am going shopping next Friday."

- An hour ago, Menna said

- a. she was going shopping next Friday.
- b. she is going shopping next Friday.
- c. she was going shopping the next Friday.
- d. she was going shopping the following Friday.

Advanced Exercises on Language

تنويه: التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Sama inquired who I had been talking to.

- a. was the man
- b. the man was
- c. the man had been
- d. the man is

2. I had you where I saw the criminal and you wrote down his name on a piece of paper.

- a. said
- b. wondered
- c. inquired
- d. told

3. He didn't say he would do next. He hadn't made up his mind by then.

- a. that
- b. what
- c. if
- d. weather

4. Can you tell me your plans for ?

- a. the last summer
- b. the summer before
- c. the previous summer
- d. next summer

5. I wanted to know what on his head.

- a. did Ali hit
- b. Ali hit
- c. hit Ali
- d. Ali had hit

Answer & Explanation

الإجابة والتوضيح

No.		الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	a	- ضمير الإستفهام (who) يحل محل الفاعل فيأتي بعده الفعل (was)، كما أن وجود عبارة الوصل (I had been talking to) يستلزم وجود الأسم الذي تعود عليه (the man) قبلها مباشرة
2.	d	- لا يمكن استخدام (said/inquired) لأنه لا يأتي بعدهم المخاطب - سياق الجملة يدل على أن المتحدث (I) هو من أخبر (told) وليس من سأل (asked)
3.	b	- الجملة بعد النقط تحتاج إلى مفعول، وضمير الإستفهام (what) يسأل عن المفعول ويحل محله
4.	d	- هذه الجملة ليست كلام غير مباشر فلا يتم تحويل ظروف الزمان إلى الأبعد
5.	c	- ضمير الإستفهام (what) يحل محل الفاعل (الشئ الذي ضرب على رأسه)، لذلك يأتي بعده الفعل

Vocabulary & Definitions

Part I

• اختبر مدى إتقانك للمفردات الرئيسية في كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية.
• المفردات اللغوية باللون الأحمر هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية.

تنويه

1 Key Vocabulary

conclusion(n)	خاتمة - استنتاج	perspective(n)	منظور / مفهوم
conflict(n)	صراع	reflect(ed) (v)	يعكس / يُعكّل
context(n)	سياق النص	relate(d) (v)	يتعلق بـ - يتفهّم
creature(n)	مخلوق / كائن	relevance(n)	ملائمة / فائدة
entertaining(adj)	مُسلي / ممتع	relevant(adj)	ملائم
humour(n)	سخرة - فكاهة	setting(n)	إعداد / تهيئة
moral(n)	مَغْزِي أخلاقي	solution(n)	حلّ
mythology(n)	علم الأساطير / أسطوريات	universal(adj)	شائع - عامّ

2 Important Vocabulary

approach(ed) (v)	يقترّب / يدنو	illustrate(d) (v)	يُوضّح
argument(n)	رأي / طرّح	intend(ed) (v)	ينوي
balance(n)	الاتزان / التوازن	ladder(n)	سلم مُتَنقّل
band(n)	شريط	linkers(n)	روابط
beneath(adv/prep)	أسفل / تحت	nearby(adj)	قريب / مجاور
bite - bit - bitten (v)	يعض	old-fashioned(adj)	قديم الطراز / عتيق
bounce(d) (v)	يرتد / يَرُدّ (يتنطط - يُنطط)	outdated(adj)	عفا عليه الزمن
character(n)	شخصية	pull(ed) (v)	يجذب / يسحب
collect(ed) (v)	يجمع - يُحضِر	represent(ed) (v)	يُعلّل - يُقدّم
complex(adj)	مُعقّد	safety(n)	الأمان
deserve(d) (v)	يستحق	sharp(adj)	حادّ
dove(n)	حمامة	slip(ped) (v)	ينزلق
educate(d) (v)	يُعلّم	stretch(ed) (v)	يُطّ - يتمدد
elastic(n/adj)	المطاط - مطاطي	stuck(adj)	عالق - متورّط
escape(d) (v)	يهرب	tale(n)	حكاية

expression(n)
float(ed) (v)
flow(ed) (v)
hunter(n)

تعبير
يطفو
يتدفق
صياد

trap(ped) (n/v)
trick(ed) (n/v)
trouble(n)
warn(ed) (v)

فَخْ / مَصيدة - يحتجز
خدعة - يخدع
مشكلة / مأزق
يُحذّر

3 Definitions تعريفات

conclusion(n)	خاتمة	the end or final part of something
conflict(n)	صراع	a situation in which you have to choose between two or more opposite needs, influences, etc.
creature(n)	مخلوق / كائن	anything that is living, such as an animal, fish, or insect, but not a plant
entertaining(adj)	مُسلي / ممتع	amusing and interesting
moral(n)	مَغْزِي أخلاقي	a practical lesson about what to do or how to behave, which you learn from a story or from something that happens to you
mythology(n)	علم الأساطير / أسطوريات	a set of ancient myths
perspective(n)	مفهوم / منظور	a way of thinking about something, especially one which is influenced by the type of person you are or by your experiences
relate(d) (v)	يتعلق بـ - يتفهّم	to feel that you understand someone's problem, situation, etc.
universal(adj)	شائع - عامّ	involving everyone in the world or in a particular group

General Exercise

On Vocabulary

• Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

- Crocodiles and frogs are that live on land or in water.
a. morals b. perspectives c. conclusions d. creatures
- Death is a/an truth.
a. relevant b. universal c. entertaining d. boring

3. I find it difficult to to the moral of this fable.
a. intend b. approach c. relate d. bounce
4. Isis And Osiris are characters from the of the pharaohs.
a. mythology b. conflict c. solution d. setting
5. It is known that white clothes heat.
a. stretch b. slip c. deserve d. reflect
6. The lesson a story teaches us is its
a. moral b. perspective c. conclusion d. creature
7. I find your company You're really a good friend.
a. relevant b. universal c. entertaining d. boring
8. There's an eternal between good and evil.
a. mythology b. conflict c. solution d. setting
9. Fables are of particular to children.
a. context b. humour c. relevance d. argument
10. Everybody sees the situation through their own
a. moral b. perspective c. conclusion d. creature
11. Your qualifications and skills are not to this type of work.
a. relevant b. universal c. entertaining d. boring
12. The of a story is its time and place.
a. mythology b. conflict c. solution d. setting
13. Most of my friends have a sense of When I am with them, I never stop laughing.
a. context b. humour c. relevance d. argument
14. In, respecting our parents and teachers is an important part of our behavioural code.
a. moral b. perspective c. conclusion d. creature
15. Compared to the excitement of the city, some people find the quietness in the countryside They do not like it.
a. relevant b. universal c. entertaining d. boring
16. There should be an urgent to this issue.
a. mythology b. conflict c. solution d. setting

2 Important vocabulary

17. The ball off the defender's knee and into the goal.
a. intended b. approached c. related d. bounced

18. Hit on the head, he lost and fell to the ground.
a. balance b. humour c. relevance d. argument
19. She up to reach the bag in the top shelf.
a. stretched b. slipped c. deserved d. reflected
20. Most children books are with colourful drawings.
a. flowed b. warned c. represented d. illustrated
21. Not many people read his stories because his style is
a. attractive b. outdated c. lively d. elastic
22. The farmer is making for the foxes that attack his animals.
a. traps b. tricks c. tales d. purposes
23. My father to change his old car. He is going to buy a BMW.
a. intends b. approaches c. relates d. bounces
24. Our children our full interest.
a. stretch b. slip c. deserve d. float
25. We were against swimming in deep water.
a. flowed b. warned c. represented d. illustrated
26. Children's trousers have waists.
a. complex b. outdated c. stuck d. elastic
27. My grandma used to tell us of adventure.
a. traps b. tricks c. tales d. purposes
28. Don't that dog. It is very aggressive. عنواني
a. intend b. approach c. relate d. bounce
29. I saw a piece of wood down the river.
a. warning b. slipping c. deserving d. floating
30. There are increasing numbers of refugees from the conflict areas.
a. flowing b. warning c. representing d. illustrating
31. I tried to move the desk but it was
a. complex b. outdated c. stuck d. elastic
32. The villagers didn't believe the boy because he had played several on them.
a. traps b. tricks c. tales d. purposes
33. You need more evidence to support your
a. balance b. humour c. relevance d. argument
34. The child on the soapy floor.
a. stretched b. slipped c. deserved d. reflected

35. Both people and animals are in the fable called "Alice in Wonderland".
a. flowed b. warned c. represented d. floated

36. A maths problem that is is very difficult to understand.
a. complex b. outdated c. stuck d. elastic

3 Definitions

37. To is to feel that you understand someone's problem, situation, etc.
a. intend b. approach c. relate d. bounce

38. A is a way of thinking about something, especially one which is influenced by the type of person you are or by your experiences.
a. moral b. perspective c. conclusion d. creature

39. is a set of ancient myths.
a. Mythology b. Conflict c. Solution d. Setting

40. means amusing and interesting.
a. Relevant b. Universal c. Entertaining d. Boring

41. A is anything that is living, such as an animal, fish, or insect, but not a plant.
a. moral b. perspective c. conclusion d. creature

42. is a situation in which you have to choose between two or more opposite needs, influences, etc.
a. Mythology b. Conflict c. Solution d. Setting

43. means involving everyone in the world or in a particular group.
a. Relevant b. Universal c. Entertaining d. Boring

44. The is the end or final part of something.
a. moral b. perspective c. conclusion d. creature

Part II Vocabulary Study

تتويبه ساعد فعلكم على الارتقاء بمستواكم عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مسبقاً بشكل جيد.

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

have	a picnic	يقوم بنزهة	play	a trick on	يُدبر مقلباً لـ
lose	his balance	يفقد توازنه	take	turns	يتبادل الأدوار
make	traps	ينصب فخاخاً			

Mini Test 1 Collocations

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We took to answer the multiple-choice questions.
a. out b. place c. turns d. tricks

2. The picnic I have has relieved the work stress.
a. to b. had c. lost d. played

3. Be careful not to your balance while painting the ceiling.
a. lose b. make c. have d. play

4. The so many tricks you have on us make it difficult to believe you any more.
a. lost b. taken c. done d. played

5. I think it is cruel to traps to catch these nice birds.
a. lose b. make c. do d. play

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
entertaining(adj)	مُسلي / مُمتع	amusing and interesting
moral(n)	مَعْرِي أخلاقي	a practical lesson
perspective(n)	مفهوم / منظور	outlook, view, viewpoint, point of view
relate(d) (v)	يتفهم	understand
relevant(adj)	ملائم	to the point, to the purpose
universal(adj)	شامل - عام	comprehensive

3 Antonyms متضادات

Word		Antonym (= Opposite)
entertaining(adj)	مُسلي / مُمتع	boring مُمل
universal(adj)	شامل - عام	particular, restricted مُحَدّد - محدود
relevant(adj)	ملائم	irrelevant غير ملائم

Mini Test 2 Synonyms & Antonyms

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Something that is 'entertaining' is not

a. boring b. amusing c. interesting d. b & c

2. "Pollution is a universal issue." In this context, the adjective 'universal' is a synonym of
 a. comprehensive b. restricted c. particular d. b & c
3. If a story has a moral, then it has a lesson.
 a. no b. one c. practical d. useless
4. is to 'understand' as 'relevant' is to 'to the purpose'.
 a. Misunderstand b. Relate c. Debate d. Entertain

4 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات ومصطلحات

any more as we see it at least elastic band	بعد الآن كما نراها - في رأينا على الأقل شرط مطاطي	in return once upon a time see a long way away	في المقابل ذات مرة يرى مسافة طويلة
--	--	--	--

5 Synonymous Idioms تعبيرات مترادفة

in favour of = on the side of = be for / all for = approving of	لصالح/داعم لـ	point of view = opinion stop for a break = take a break	وجهة نظر يتوقف للاستراحة
in trouble = in difficulty = in a tight corner	في ورطة	walk closer to = approach	يدنو من

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

climb onto escape from get on	يصعد إلى سطح يجرب من يركب على	hang from intend to reach up	يتدلى من ينوي أن يسط - يمد - يتعلق
-------------------------------------	-------------------------------------	------------------------------------	--

Mini Test 3 Expressions, Prepositions & Idioms

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. When you are in favour of an idea, you are it.
 a. beside b. next to c. for d. against
2. I saw a large bat hanging the ceiling of the old hut.
 a. from b. with c. out d. up
3. To walk closer to means to
 a. return b. support c. get on d. approach
4. She reached to get a jar of honey from the top shelf.
 a. down b. up c. at d. about

5. "We have stopped for a break." In this context, 'stopped for' can be replaced by
 a. suffered b. found c. approached d. took
6. When one is in, then they're in a tight corner.
 a. trouble b. return c. opinion d. difficult
7. Your point of view is your
 a. trouble b. return c. opinion d. difficult
8. I've stopped smoking. I do not smoke
 a. no more b. any more c. not longer d. no longer

7 Master your Key Vocabulary كل ما يخص المفردات

creature

كائن حي (إنسان/حيوان/حشرة/أسماك، وليس نبات)

• creature (n)

- I like watching programmes about strange sea creatures.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- creatures of the deep الكائنات التي تعيش في المحيط
- a creature of habit شخص نمطي لا يتغير
- a nocturnal creature كائن ليلي
- a primitive/simple creature كائن أولي (بدائي)
- a living creature كائن حي

• creature (n)

صنّاعة/نتاج (تطلق على الأشياء السيئة)

- Monopoly الاحتكار is a creature of first-world countries.

entertaining

• entertain (...with) (v)

يُسلي - يُرفّه عن

- My grandmother used to entertain us with her exciting stories.

• entertain (v)

يُضَيّف (علي طعام أو شراب)

- I entertained my friends to a meal on the occasion of my success.

• entertainer (n)

فنان ترفيهي

- He was one of the Egyptian cinema top entertainers.

• entertainment (n)

الترفيه (مثل الأفلام والمسلسلات والمسرحيات ...)

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية :

- We went to the cinema for entertainment.
- the entertainment industry/business/world (النشاط الترفيهي أمام الجمهور مباشرة)
- live entertainment (الكوميديا)
- light entertainment (= comedy) (يوفر وسائل الترفيه)
- provide entertainment

• entertainment = entertaining (n)

- The **entertainment** of all your classmates will cost a lot of money.
- = Entertaining all your classmates will cost a lot of money.

• entertaining (adj)

- The children watched an **entertaining** cartoon.

perspective

• perspective (on) (n)

- His illness has changed his **perspective on** life.

- from my perspective / في تصوُّري
- wider/broader perspective (من منظور أرحب)
- have a perspective (لديه تصوُّر)
- see/view ... from a perspective ... يري ... من منظور ...
- lose perspective (يفقد حُسن تقديره للأمور)

relate

• relate (to) (v) يرتبط / يتعلَّق (ب) = connect = has ... to do with

- It is difficult to understand how one of these two ideas **relates** to the other.
- = It is difficult to understand how one of these two ideas **connects** to the other.
- = It is difficult to understand what one of these two ideas **has to do with** the other.

• relate (... to) (v)

- Most doctors **relate** lung cancer to smoking.

• relate (... to) (v)

- She **relates** everything she does to her mother.

• relate (to) (v)

- Rodayna looks angry. I can relate to that.

- **relation (between) (n)** = ارتباط / علاقة (بين) = relationship
- What you say has no **relation** to the topic.
- = What you say has no **relationship** to the topic.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- close relations (علاقات قوية)
- establish relations (with) (مع) (يوطّد العلاقات)
- maintain relations (with) (مع) (يحافظ علي العلاقات)
- break off relations (with) (مع) (يقطع العلاقات)
- restore/resume relations (with) (مع) (يوطّد العلاقات)

• relation (to/of) (n) = relative (n) أحد الأقارب

- I have some **relations** here in Aswan.
- = I have some **relatives** here in Aswan.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- a close relation/relative (قريب من الدرجة الأولى أو الثانية)
- a distant relation/relative (قراءة من بعيد)
- a blood relation/relative (ليست قرابة مصاهرة)
- a relation by marriage (قرابة مصاهرة (عن طريق الزواج))

• relative (to) (adj)

- Travel by air has so many **relative** advantages.

• related (to) (adj) ≠ unrelated (مرتبط / مُتعلِّق (ب) ≠ غير مرتبط)

- The problem of homeless children is **related** to drug abuse.

• related (adj) (لا تُستخدم قبل الاسم) ذو قرابة مع

- Sama and Mariam are **related**.

universal

• universal (adj)

- Pollution is a problem of **universal** interest.

• universal (adj)

- Death is a **universal** truth.

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- I was to lunch by my boss in a five-star restaurant.
a. entertained b. reflected c. intended d. approached

2. A break or a short nap might give you a better on the problem.
a. mythology b. perspective c. solution d. conclusion
3. My father insists that I whatever I do to him.
a. relate b. bounce c. represent d. deserve
4. Here're some simple recipes for simple
a. inventing b. relating c. bouncing d. entertaining
5. Terrorism is a/an of poverty and ignorance.
a. perspective b. elastic c. creature d. purpose

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	a	الفعْل (was entertained) هنا يعني (استضافته / عَزَم)
2.	b	كلمة (perspective) هنا تعني (حُسن تقدير الأمور)
3.	a	الفعْل (relate) هنا يعني (يحكي / يسرد / يخبر)
4.	d	كلمة (entertaining) هنا اسم يعني (الاستضافة على طعام أو شراب)
5.	c	كلمة (creature) هنا تعني (صنّاعة / نتاج)

Part III Reading

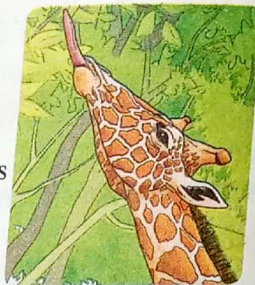
1 Reading Texts

Why do giraffes have long necks ?

A very long time ago, in Africa, there was a family of giraffes with very short necks. One hot summer day, the giraffe family were having a picnic. Ben, the youngest giraffe, was playing with his two cousins, Sophie and Archie. They were playing with a ball and bouncing⁽¹⁾ it on their heads.

When they stopped for a break, a naughty⁽²⁾ cousin, Frankie, decided to play a trick⁽³⁾ on them. He threw the ball up into a very high tree.

'Ha ha ... you can't play ball any more,' he laughed. Ben, Sophie and Archie weren't happy, but Ben had a plan. He told Sophie to get on his shoulders⁽⁴⁾, and then Archie climbed on top of Sophie's shoulders, like a ladder⁽⁵⁾.



(SB page 67)

Check Vocabulary

- بَرَنَ / يَبْرُنُ (يتنطط)
(1) يَنْطَطُ
(2) مشاغِب / شَقِي
(3) خَدَعَة
(4) أَكْتَاف
(5) سَلَم مُنْتَقِل

Ben walked beneath⁽⁶⁾ the tree where the ball was stuck⁽⁷⁾ and Archie reached up to get the ball. However, Ben lost his balance⁽⁸⁾ and he and Sophie fell to the ground, leaving Archie hanging from the tree. He had knocked the ball out of the tree, but his neck was stuck between two branches⁽⁹⁾. All the giraffes gathered⁽¹⁰⁾ round the tree and started pulling⁽¹¹⁾ his feet. While they were pulling, something strange was happening; his neck started to stretch⁽¹²⁾ like an elastic⁽¹³⁾ band⁽¹⁴⁾.

Finally, Archie's head became free from the branches, and by now his feet were touching the ground. He looked very funny with his long neck, but it was very useful as he could eat leaves off the tops of trees and he could see a long way away, and warn⁽¹⁵⁾ everyone if there were any dangerous animals approaching⁽¹⁶⁾. The other giraffes were quite jealous⁽¹⁷⁾, so they took turns to climb into the tree and got the other giraffes to pull on their legs to stretch their necks too. That is why giraffes have long necks.

- (6) أسفل / تحت
(7) يَغْلِقُ - يَنْحَسِرُ
(8) الاتزان / التوازن
(9) فروع الأشجار
(10) يتجمع
(11) يجذب/يسحب
(12) يَمُط - يَتَمَدَّد
(13) مَظَاطِي
(14) شَرِيصَة
(15) يُحذِر
(16) يقترب / يدنو
(17) غيور

The Ant and the Dove

(WB page 41)

Once upon a time on a warm sunny day, an ant⁽¹⁾ was working hard to collect food. The ant said, 'I'm thirsty⁽²⁾ as I have started early this morning and have not stopped once⁽³⁾'. He saw a river nearby⁽⁴⁾ and decided to have a drink before he continued.



The river was flowing⁽⁵⁾ very quickly and although the ant moved slowly towards the water to drink, he slipped⁽⁶⁾ and fell into the water.

As he was floating down the river, a dove⁽⁷⁾, which was sitting in a tree above the river, saw the ant in trouble⁽⁸⁾ and decided to drop⁽⁹⁾ a leaf⁽¹⁰⁾ into the river. The ant was able to climb onto the leaf, which floated⁽¹¹⁾ to the side of the river, and the ant could climb back onto the land to safety⁽¹²⁾.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) نملة
(2) عطشان
(3) مَرَّة
(4) قريب / مجاور
(5) يتدفق
(6) ينزلق
(7) حمامة
(8) مشكلة / مأزق
(9) يُسْقِط
(10) ورقة نبات
(11) يطفو
(12) الأمان

He was very happy to be alive. As he walked back to thank the dove, he saw a hunter⁽¹³⁾ under the tree where the dove was sitting. The hunter was making traps⁽¹⁴⁾ to catch the dove. The ant walked quietly closer to the hunter and bit⁽¹⁵⁾ his leg, with his sharp⁽¹⁶⁾ teeth, as hard as he could. As soon as he had done this, the hunter shouted because of the pain and the dove was able to fly away to safety. We can learn from this story that one good action deserves⁽¹⁷⁾ another in return.

- (13) صياد
(14) فخاً/مصيدة
(15) يعض
(16) حادة
(17) يستحق

Part IV Language

Reported Questions المَسْئَلَةُ فِي الْكَلَامِ غَيْرِ الْمُبَاشَرِ

1 يبدأ السؤال في الكلام المباشر بأحد أدوات الاستفهام التالية يليها الفعل المساعد :
What – When – Where – Why – Who – Whose – Which – How ...

- "Where have you spent the weekend?" asked Omar. (مباشرة)
= Omar asked, "Where have you spent the weekend?" (مباشرة)

تتكون جملة السؤال بأداة استفهام في الكلام غير المباشر من :

نص الكلام غير المباشر → + أداة استفهام → + فعل إبلاغ → + مُبَلِّغ (متحدث)
Omar asked where I had spent the weekend.

لاحظ : نص الكلام غير المباشر يكون على شكل جملة خبرية (فاعل + فعل ...)

2 يبدأ سؤال (Yes / No) بأحد الأفعال المساعدة أو الناقصة مثل :

am – is – are – was – were – have – has – had – do – does – did
can – could – will – would – may – might – shall – should – must ...

- "Are you doing your homework, Rodayna?" asked mum. (مباشرة)

= Mum asked, "Are you doing your homework, Rodayna?" (مباشرة)

3 تتكون جملة سؤال (Yes / No) في الكلام غير المباشر من :

نص الكلام غير المباشر → + if / whether → + فعل قول → + مُبَلِّغ (متحدث)
Mum asked Rodayna if/whether She was doing homework.

لاحظ : نص الكلام غير المباشر يكون على شكل جملة خبرية (فاعل + فعل ...)

5 يستخدم فعل إبلاغ بعد المُبَلِّغ (المتحدث) ، وهناك نوعان من أفعال الإبلاغ الخاصة بالأسئلة :
(1) يمكن استخدام أو عدم استخدام المخاطب بعد الفعل (asked) والمُخَاطَب يكون اسم أو ضمير مفعول (me – him – her – it – you – us – them) :

(السؤال كان موجهاً لأحمد) Nada asked Ahmed when he was leaving home.
(السؤال كان موجهاً لأحمد أو غيره) Nada asked when Ahmed was leaving home.
(ب) لا يمكن أن يأتي المُخَاطَب بعد أفعال الإبلاغ التالية :

- استفسر inquired - أراد أن يعرف wanted to know - تساءل wondered
Nada wondered when Ahmed was leaving home. (Not : wondered Ahmed)

6 لا تُستخدم علامات التنصيص (".....") أو علامة الاستفهام في الكلام غير المباشر :

(مباشرة) "Why are you angry, father?" said Abdu.
(غير مباشرة) Abdu asked father why he was angry.

Mini Test 1 Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Mohammed me if I enjoyed my mid-year holiday.
a. told b. asked c. inquired d. a & b
- Mohammed if I enjoyed my mid-year holiday.
a. told b. asked c. inquired d. b & c
- She wanted to know I was doing.
a. if b. whether c. a & b d. what
- She wanted to know I was doing anything.
a. if b. whether c. a & b d. what
- My father asked I had been.
a. where b. who c. if d. which
- My father asked I had been busy or not.
a. where b. who c. if d. which
- My father asked I had been visiting.
a. where b. who c. if d. which

تذكر أن: بعد كل من (if - whether) وأدوات الاستفهام يأتي الفاعل وليس الفعل المساعد في الكلام غير المباشر:

- Mum asked if **had I done** the shopping. (X)
- Mum asked if **I had done** the shopping. (✓)
- Hasnaa wanted to know **why was I** late for school. (X)
- Hasnaa wanted to know **why I was** late for school. (✓)

تتحول الضمائر حسب المتكلم والمُخاطَب مثل الجملة الخبرية (راجع جدول تحويل الضمائر بالوحدة التاسعة):

- Yara asked, "When are **you** repairing **my** tablet for **me**, father?" (مباشر)
- Yara asked father when **he** was repairing **her** tablet for **her**. (غير مباشر)

تتحول بعض ظروف الزمان والمكان مثل الجملة الخبرية (راجع جدول تحويل الظروف بالوحدة التاسعة):

- "Did you visit **this** place **last year**?", said Khalid. (مباشر)
- Khalid asked me if I had visited **that** place **the previous year**. (غير مباشر)

تتحول الأزمنة مثل الجملة الخبرية (راجع جدول تحويل الأزمنة بالوحدة التاسعة):

- "Are **you** having dinner outdoors tomorrow?" Mariam said to Karim. (مباشر)
- Mariam asked Karim if **he was** having dinner outdoors the next day. (غير مباشر)
- "Where **have you** found your lost keys, Amr?" asked Nancy. (مباشر)
- Nancy asked Amr where **he had** found his lost keys. (غير مباشر)

Mini Test 2

Apply

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The reporter asked if the firefighters were saving the child
a. tonight b. now c. today d. then
2. The reporter asked if the firefighters had saved the child
a. then b. the following day
c. the day before d. a & b
3. Menna asked Bassant how travel to Cairo.
a. will she b. she will c. would she d. she would
4. Menna asks Bassant how travel to Cairo.
a. will she b. she will c. would she d. she would

5. I asked Mai what doing.

- a. she was b. was she c. could she be d. is she
- 6. Ahmed asked me when I had gone to bed
a. tonight b. that night c. now d. yet

لا تُستخدم (do - does) كأفعال مساعدة في الكلام غير المباشر ويتحول الفعل الأصلي إلى زمن الماضي البسيط (التصريف الثاني):

- "What time **do you** have your break?" asked Eman. (مباشر)
- Eman asked me what time **I had** my break. (غير مباشر)
- "Does **your** mother help you, Rokaya?" asked Leen. (مباشر)
- Leen asked Rokaya if **her** mother **helped** her. (غير مباشر)

لا تُستخدم (did) كفعل مساعد في الكلام غير المباشر ويتحول الفعل الأصلي إلى زمن الماضي التام أو يبقى ماضيًا بسيطًا كما هو:

- "What **did you** prepare for lunch, mum?" asked Walid. (مباشر)
- Walid asked mum what **she (had)** prepared for lunch. (غير مباشر)
- "Did **you** use my tablet, Zamzam?" asked Rodayna. (مباشر)
- Rodayna asked Zamzam if **she (had)** used her tablet. (غير مباشر)

Mini Test 3

Apply

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I wondered when up every morning.
a. does he get b. he gets
c. did he get d. he got
2. I wonder when up every morning.
a. does he get b. he gets c. did he get d. was he getting
3. I asked, "When up every morning?"
a. does he get b. he gets c. did he get d. a & c
4. Rodayna wants to know whether her a present.
a. mum has bought b. has mum bought
c. did mum buy d. mum bought
5. Rodayna wanted to know whether her a present.
a. mum has bought b. has mum bought
c. did mum buy d. mum bought

Important Notes

ملحظات هامة

1. تتحول (shall) في حالة الاقتراح إلى (should) :
 - "Shall we speak English?" said Ahmed. (مباشر)
 - Ahmed wondered if / whether we should speak English. (غير مباشر)
 الصيغة التالية ليست كلام غير مباشر، لكن يأتي الفاعل وليس الفعل المساعد بعد (if / whether) أو أداة الاستفهام :

... فاعل subj. + أدوات استفهام + you / he / ... + Can / Could ...

- Can you tell me how I can answer this question? (NOT : how can I)
 - Do you know if Mai will be late. (NOT : if will Mai)

2. يمكن استخدام أفعال الإبلاغ الخاصة بالجملة الخيرية قبل (if / whether) أو أداة الاستفهام عند الرد على سؤال وليس في الكلام غير المباشر :

- I have told you why I was late for school.
 - Malak didn't say whether her father would attend the party or not.

3. عند تحويل السؤال المذلل إلى غير المباشر يتم تحويل الجملة الخيرية مثل الجملة الاستفهامية وفضل استخدام فعل القول (want(ed) to make sure).

- John said, "You'll buy a car, won't you?"
 - John wanted to make sure if I would buy a car.

General Exercise On Language

Apply

✦ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

I Getting Started

- The policeman where my identity card was.
 a. remark b. said c. told d. asked
- My neighbours wanted to know I had lived in my flat.
 a. to b. what c. how long d. that
- Ayman asked Ashraf he would have fish for lunch or not.
 a. how b. what c. that d. whether
- Mona asked the technician he had fixed her mobile.
 a. why b. if c. that d. weather

- Salah said he could read when he three.
 a. had been b. is c. has been d. had
- She wanted to know if to go to university the following year.
 a. I am planning b. I plan c. I was planning d. I will plan
- He wanted to know swimming and had a good time.
 a. whether I enjoying b. if did I enjoy c. whether I enjoy d. if I enjoyed
- She asked me for my holiday the previous summer.
 a. where I have gone b. I had gone c. where I had gone d. where had I
- Sama asked me where
 a. I lived b. did I live c. I have lived d. had I lived
- Mum wanted to know whether I anything wrong that made my aunt leave so angrily.
 a. had said b. was said c. would say d. was saying
- Emma said, "Can we use your camera?"
 - Emma asked me if could use my camera.
 a. I b. he c. we d. they
- The interviewer asked her she had experience in sales.
 a. what b. while c. if d. weather
- Leila asked Sara if anything the next day.
 a. she is doing b. she was doing c. was she doing d. is she doing
- "He asked me whether I had finished reading the book lent me the week before.
 a. he was b. was he c. he had d. had he
- "How much money do you need?" he asked. - "Twenty pounds," I
 a. replied b. told c. wanted d. asked
- She wanted to know if he was staying with his family at time.
 a. that b. the c. this d. these
- Nadia wanted to know if I anything interesting that weekend.
 a. am going to do b. have done c. am doing d. was doing
- He asked me if I knew that his sister ill the week before.
 a. was b. has been c. had been d. is

19. She wanted to know if I a driving licence.
a. am b. has c. had d. was

20. She asked me which university I to.
a. had been b. was gone c. has been d. have been

21. She wanted to know in his spare time.
a. if he did b. what he did c. what did he d. what he does

22. She asked him what doing since he left school.
a. had he been b. he was c. he had been d. he is

II Special Cases

23. The policeman asked the reporter about when he was jogging.
(الموديل الوزاري الثاني ٢٠٢٠)

a. what did he lose b. what had he lost
c. what he lost d. what he was losing

24. She asked what at that moment.
a. I was doing b. was I doing c. I had done d. I did

25. She asked me whether there before.
a. I had been b. I went c. I had had d. had I been

26. A: I want to know opened the door. B: Mona did.
a. what b. where c. who d. why

27. Omar wondered where the charger
a. puts b. is putting c. was put d. is put

28. He wondered if iron a metal.
a. had been b. were c. is d. has been

29. He wanted to know whether anyone the book he was reading.
a. had seen b. has seen c. sees d. was seeing

30. "Where been?" he asked me.
a. have you b. you have c. had you d. you had

31. Nadia wants to know if I anything interesting next weekend.
a. am going to do b. have done c. am doing d. a & c

32. He asked me whether I I would enjoy working there.
a. thinking b. has thought c. was thinking d. thought

33. I wonder why at me like that. Stop it, please.
a. you shouted b. did you shout c. you shout d. do you shout

34. Can you tell me how to the train station, please?
a. I got b. I get c. can I get d. do I get

III Check your understanding

35. Mustafa wonders if I have enough money on me. What is Mustafa's question?

a. Have you had enough money on you?
b. Have you got enough money on you?
c. Do you have enough money on you?
d. b & c

36. "Would you mind lending me some money?" I asked Omar
a. if he minds lending me some money.
b. whether he would mind lending me some money.
c. if I minded lending him some money.
d. whether I would mind lending him some money.

37. "Shall we go to the park?" Esraa asked
a. if we will go to the park. b. if they will go to the park.
c. if we should go to the park. d. a & c

38. "Could you show me?"
a. how I can answer this question
b. how can I answer this question
c. how I had answered this question
d. how had I answered this question

39. Sama: "Where are my glasses, mum? Mum: On your desk!"
a. Sama asked mum where her glasses were
b. I have told you where they are, Sama
c. I told Sama where they were
d. a & b

40. Ali: "You are OK, aren't you?" Ziad: What does Ali say?
a. Ali told you whether he was OK.
b. Ali tells you whether he is OK.
c. Ali wanted to make sure if you had been OK.
d. Ali wants to make sure if you are OK.

• هذا الجزء خاص بالمفردات والتعبيرات الرئيسية للقصة. لقراءة نص القصة المقررة وللمزيد من المفردات اللغوية والتدريبات نهاية الكتاب.

تنويه

Key Vocabulary, Idioms & Collocations

apart (adv)	متفرقين - بعيداً عن بعضهم البعض	find ... guilty	تُثبِتُ إدانة ...
break into (phr. v)	يقتحم	have a place in ... heart	يَهْوِي / يُحِب
consider (ed) (v)	يُفكر في	pay with his life	يدفع حياته ثمناً
fascinate (d) (v)	يَفْتِن - يَسْتَهْوِي - يَجْتَذِب	struggle (d) (v)	يكافح / يناضل
fight for freedom	يقا تل من أجل الحرية		

Exercise

On Vocabulary

• Understand

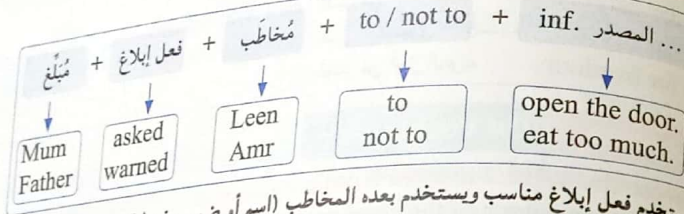
Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- The green colour of the countryside me.
a. considers b. breaks c. fights d. fascinates
- He's never been from his family. That's why he finds it difficult to live away from them.
a. a part b. apart c. partly d. part
- The soldiers who defend our country pay their lives.
a. to b. for c. with d. down
- The identity of the thieves who have broken our house is still a mystery.
a. of b. up c. down d. into
- If someone has a place in your heart, then you them.
a. love b. can't stand c. don't mind d. detest
- He didn't even my offer.
a. struggle b. consider c. flow d. float
- He was found; he was sentenced to death.
a. a guilt b. guiltless c. guilt d. guilty
- The Egyptians have always for of their country freedom.
a. considered b. broken c. fought d. fascinated

Part II

Reported imperatives, suggestions and advice
جمل الأمر والحقوق والتوصية في الكلام غير المباشر

- تبدأ جملة الأمر المثبت (افعل) في الكلام المباشر بالفعل في المصدر (inf.) :
 - "Open the door, Leen", said mum. = Mum said, "Open the door, Leen".
 تبدأ جملة النهي (لا تفعل) في الكلام المباشر بـ (Don't / Never + inf.) :
 - "Don't / Never eat too much, Amr", said father.
 = Father said, "Don't / Never eat too much, Amr".
 تتكون جملة الأمر / النهي في الكلام غير المباشر من :



يُستخدم فعل إبلاغ مناسب ويستخدم بعده المخاطب (اسم أو ضمير مفعول) :

خُذِر - warned - ذُكِر - reminded - أُمِر - commanded - أُمِر - ordered - طُلب - asked - أُخْبِر / قَالُوا - told
 - أراد - wanted - دُعِيَ - invited - أُمِر - instructed - شُجِع - encouraged - نَصَح - advised
 المُخَاطَب + obj. + هَدِد - threatened - تَوَقَّع - expected - عَلَّمَ - taught - سَاعَد - helped

- I told Sama to help her mother.
 - Grandpa advised me to work hard at school.

- لا تُستخدم علامات التنصيص (".....") في الأمر أو النهي في صيغة غير المباشر :
 - "Never play with matches", said my mother. (مباشر)
 - My mother warned me not to play with matches. (غير مباشر)

تُستخدم (to + inf.) بمعنى (أن ...) في الإثبات :

- I told him to do more exercise.

تُستخدم (not to + inf.) بمعنى (ألا ...) في النفي :

- The officer ordered the soldiers not to leave their places.

تتحوّل الضمائر حسب المتكلم والمُخَاطَب (راجع تحويلات الضمائر بالوحدة التاسعة) :

- Amira said, "Lend me your camera, Ali". (مباشر)
 Amira asked Ali to lend her his camera. (غير مباشر)

٩ تتحوّل بعض ظروف الزمان والمكان (راجع تحويلات الظروف بالوحدة التاسعة) :

- "Bring this book with you tomorrow", said Miss Mona. (مباشر)
 - Miss Mona asked me to bring that book with me the following day. (غير مباشر)

Mini Test 1

Apply

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Leen asked me my money on clothes.
 a. to waste b. to wasting c. not to waste d. not to wasting
- Leen asked me good use of my money.
 a. to make b. to making c. not to make d. not to making
- My mother asked Aya the phone.
 a. that she answered b. if she answer
 c. what she answered d. to answer
- The head teacher told to do our best.
 a. we b. us c. our d. ourselves
- "Put away your toys, Hamza." - Mum told Hamza to put toys away.
 a. he b. him c. his d. himself
- "Send the email now." - He asked me to send the email
 a. then b. than c. earlier d. ago

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

١ لاحظ تحويل جمل النصيحة :

- "You should study hard, Malak", said Mr Hassan. (مباشر)
 Mr Hassan advised / told Malak to study hard. (غير مباشر)
 - "If I were you, I'd get up early", said Aya. (مباشر)
 Aya advised me to get up early. (غير مباشر)

٢ لاحظ تحويل جمل الطلب :

- "Can you lend me some money, Omar ?", said Mustafa. (مباشر)
 Mustafa asked / wanted Omar to lend him some money. (غير مباشر)

٣ عند تحويل جمل النصيحة إلى الكلام غير المباشر يمكن استخدام الفعلين (suggest / recommend) ويأتي بعدهما (inf. + ing) :

- "What about going to the cinema ?", said Doaa. (مباشر)
 Doaa suggested / recommended going to the cinema. (غير مباشر)

في حالة وجود جملة بعد الأفعال التالية يكون فعلها (inf. / should + inf.)
 ينصح - advise - يصم - insist - ask - يوصي - recommend - suggests
 - suggest - recommend - يوصي - advise
 - It is / was (vital) ضروري - essential / crucial / necessary - important

- Ahmed suggested / advised that Sama take a rest.
- = Ahmed suggested / advised that Sama should take a rest.
- It is important that Omar see a doctor.
- = It is important that Omar should see a doctor.
- It is essential that he be fit.
- = It is essential that he should be fit.

تتحول (come here) إلى (go there) في الكلام غير المباشر:
 - "Come here, Emma," Said mum.
 Mum asked Emma to go there.

(مباشر)
 (غير مباشر)

راجع شرح الوجدتين (٩ - ١٠).

Mini Test 2

Apply

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- I suggested that she the conference as our representative.
 a. attends b. attend c. had attended d. to attend
- It is important that he careful.
 a. be b. was c. has been d. is being
- Omar asked Nada help her mother.
 a. if b. what c. whether d. that
- It is essential that he hard.
 a. works b. work c. should work d. b & c

General Exercise On Language

Apply

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

I Getting Started

- Our chemistry teacher advised us experiments to understand well.
 a. does b. doing c. would do d. to do
- Malik advised me that I my bed.
 a. make b. makes c. to make d. making
- It's important that we rules.
 a. followed b. had followed c. should follow d. follows

- My friend me to go and see a doctor.
 a. threatened b. forbade c. advised d. stopped
- She me to turn off the lights.
 a. insisted b. remarked c. reminded d. denied
- Shady told me that again.
 a. do b. don't do c. not to do d. did
- The doctor me to walk 5 km every day.
 a. do b. told c. spoke d. talked
- The teacher the students to stop running in the corridor.
 a. said b. ordered c. suggested d. avoided
- The policeman warned me go near the fire.
 a. not to b. to c. if d. that
- It is important that we home as soon as we arrive.
 a. have called b. are called c. call d. called
- The doctor me to take off my jacket.
 a. said to b. asked c. reported d. suggested
- The teacher warned me make any noise.
 a. to b. not to c. that d. if
- Malak going shopping at the new mall.
 a. advised b. demanded c. suggested d. warned
- He told me be silly.
 a. whether b. that c. to d. not to
- The tour guide the tourists not to go into the desert on their own.
 a. encouraged b. advised c. warned d. b & c
- The teacher to punish me if I didn't keep quiet.
 a. advised b. promised c. told d. threatened
- We want the windows before Friday.
 a. be washed b. to wash c. washing d. to be washed
- Father forbade us home after twelve.
 a. come b. came c. not to come d. to come
- My mother warned me the plate because it was very hot.
 a. don't touch b. not touch c. not touching d. not to touch

II Special Cases

20. Ahmed recommended me on the new course.
a. enrolling b. should enrol c. enrol d. to enrol (نموذج الوزارة الثاني ٢٠٢٠)
21. Heba suggested a new servant as she has some health problems.
a. is getting b. getting c. gets d. has got (دور ثان ٢٠١٩)
22. It is necessary that every student a uniform.
a. wear b. wore c. had worn d. was wearing
23. Mido trained attack thieves.
a. to his dog b. his dog c. his dog to d. to his dog to
24. The doctors recommended that she a holiday.
a. take b. takes c. has taken d. will take
25. My professor suggested a chemistry course.
a. that I take b. me to take c. to take d. me take
26. They demanded that the president something about the situation.
a. do b. does c. has done d. were doing
27. It is important that each patient comfortable.
a. was b. be c. were d. had
28. The landlord requested that Mamdouh out of the apartment.
a. has moved b. will move c. move d. moves
29. We insist that more money in education.
a. to be invested b. has invested c. was invested d. be invested
30. The boss asks that you early for your first day of work.
a. are b. be c. were d. had been
31. People demand that the hospital
a. be renewed b. was renewed c. renews d. renew
32. The psychologists recommended that the criminal in prison.
a. puts b. is put c. be put d. has put
33. Mohammed that his daughter take the medicine in time.
a. insisted b. said c. told d. advised
34. It was important that everyone
a. enrol b. enrolls c. is enrolling d. has enrolled

35. It is essential that she at the meeting.
a. have been b. does c. be d. was

III Check your understanding

36. "Stop shouting at me, Rokaya." - Nada
a. asked Rokaya to shout at her.
b. asked Rokaya not to shout at her.
c. asked Rokaya if she could shout at her.
d. asked Rokaya why she shouted at her.
37. "Give me back my money." - I wanted Omar
a. to give him back my money. b. to give me back his money.
c. to give me back my money. d. to give him back his money.
38. "Come here at five tomorrow, Mai."
- When we were in the club, I
a. told Mai to come here at five tomorrow.
b. told Mai to come there at five tomorrow.
c. told Mai to go here at five tomorrow.
d. told Mai to go there at five tomorrow.
39. "If I were you, I'd accept the offer." - I
a. advised Ahmed to accept the offer.
b. advised Ahmed that he accept the offer.
c. advised Ahmed that he should accept the offer.
d. a, b & c
40. "Do you mind helping me, Sama?" - I
a. asked Sama to help me. b. asked Sama if she helped me.
c. asked Sama that she helped me. d. a & c
41. "What about going on a boat trip?" - Ahmed suggested
a. to go on a boat trip. b. that we go on a boat trip.
c. going on a boat trip. d. b & c

Advanced Exercise on Language

تنويه: التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. "Don't park there."
- The policeman said that we park there.
a. didn't have to b. don't have to c. did not d. must not

2. It was essential that Nasser late for work.
a. be b. be not c. not be d. doesn't be
3. He tries to study hard. It is important that he
a. tried b. was trying c. has tried d. try
4. It is crucial that you be there when the manager
a. arrive b. arrives c. arrived d. had arrived
5. The company asked that each employee personal phone calls during business hours.
a. not accept b. doesn't accept c. don't accept d. never accepts

الإجابة والتوضيح		Answer & Explanation
1.	d	- الفعل الناقص (must) هنا يدل علي القانون، فلا يتحول الي الأبعد، كما أنه لا يوجد اختيار آخر يؤدي معني صحيح
2.	c	- التعبير (It was essential) يأتي بعد المصدر الذي يتم نفيه بوضع (not) أمامه
3.	d	- فعل الجملة التي تأتي بعد التعبير (It is important) يكون في المصدر أو (should + inf.)
4.	b	- الجملة الثانوية بعد أداة الربط (when) لا تتأثر بوجودها بعد التعبير (It is crucial).
5.	a	- فعل الجملة التي تأتي بعد التعبير (asked that)، وهو هنا منفي فيكون (not accept).

Part II

Skills

الترجمة Translation

1 Choose the best Arabic translation :

1. Don't neglect the future in times of plenty, for tomorrow you may need what you wasted today.

- أ. لا تهمل المستقبل في أوقات الرفاهية، فقد تحتاج غداً إلى ما أهدرت اليوم.
ب. لا تهمل في المستقبل أوقات الرفاهية، فقد تحتاج غداً إلى ما أهدرت اليوم.
ج. لا تهمل المستقبل في أوقات الرفاهية، فقد تحتاج غداً إلى ما أهدرت اليوم.
د. لا تهمل المستقبل في أوقات الرفاهية، فقد تحتاج اليوم إلى ما أهدرت غداً.

2. To write your own fable, you can choose to stay in the traditional vein of forest creatures, or you can try something new.

- أ. لكتابة حكايتك الرمزية الخاصة، يمكنك اختيار البقاء في السياق التقليدي لمخلوقات الغابة، أو يمكنك تجربة شيء جديد.
ب. لكتابة حكايتك الخاصة، يمكنك اختيار البقاء في سياق مخلوقات الغابة، أو يمكنك تجربة شيء جديد.
ج. لكتابة خرافاتك الخاصة، يمكنك اختيار البقاء في السياق التقليدي لمخلوقات الغابة، أو يمكنك تجربة شيء جديد.
د. لكتابة حكايتك الرمزية الخاصة، يمكنك اختيار البقاء في السياق التقليدي لمخلوقات الغابة، ولا يمكنك تجربة شيء جديد.

3. Don't expect to find a job that is all advantages; you will have to face hardships every now and then.

- أ. لا تتوقع أن تجد وظيفة بكل المزايا؛ سيكون عليك مواجهة المصاعب بين الحين والآخر.
ب. لا تتوقع أن تجد وظيفة بلا مزايا؛ سيكون عليك مواجهة المصاعب بين الحين والآخر.
ج. لا تتوقع ألا تجد وظيفة لكل المزايا؛ سيكون عليك مواجهة المصاعب بين الحين والآخر.
د. لا تتوقع أن تجد وظيفة بها كل المزايا؛ سيكون عليك مواجهة المصاعب بين الحين والآخر.

4. A moral is the lesson we get to learn from a situation in real life, or from reading a piece of writing.

- أ. الخلق هو الدرس الذي نتعلمه من موقف في الحياة الواقعية، أو من قراءة قطعة من الكتابة.
ب. الدرس الأخلاقي هي الدرس الذي نتعلمه من موقف في الحياة الواقعية، أو من قراءة قطعة من الكتابة.
ج. الأخلاق هي الدرس الذي نتعلمه مواقف الحياة الواقعية، أو من قراءة قطعة من الكتابة.
د. الأخلاق هي الدرس الذي نتعلمه من موقف في الحياة الواقعية، لا من قراءة قطعة من الكتابة.

2 Choose the best English translation :

١. تنفق الدولة ملايين الجنيهات على ترميم وصيانة المواقع الأثرية القديمة لكونها جزء هام من تراثنا الثقافي.

- a. The state spends millions of pounds on the restoration of ancient archaeological sites as they are an important part of our cultural heritage.
b. The state spends millions of pounds on the restoration and maintenance of ancient biological sites as they are an important part of our cultural heritage.
c. The state sends millions of pounds on the restoration and maintenance of ancient archaeological sites as they are an important part of our cultural heritage.

d. The state spends millions of pounds on the restoration and maintenance of ancient archaeological sites as they are an important part of our cultural heritage.

٢. إن ضغوط الحياة رغم شدتها لا يجب أن تكون عقبة أمام استمتاع جميع الناس بحياتهم.

a. The pressures of life, however their intensity, should not be an obstacle to all people enjoying their lives.

b. The pressures of life, despite their intensity, should be an obstacle to all people enjoying their lives.

c. The pressures of life, despite their intensity, should not be an obstacle to all people enjoying their lives.

d. The pressures of life, despite its intensity, should not be an obstacle to all people enjoying their lives.

٣. تتميز الحكاية الرمزية بأنها قصة قصيرة ذات لغة بسيطة تنتهي بلرس مستفاد يصلح في كل مكان وزمان.

a. The fable is characterized as a short story with simple language that ends with a lesson learned that is suitable for every place and time.

b. The myth is characterized as a short story with simple language that ends with a lesson learned that is suitable for every place and time.

c. The myth is characterized as a short story with simple language that ends with a lesson learned that is suitable for every place and time.

d. The novel is characterized as a short story with simple language that ends with a lesson learned that is suitable for every place and time.

٤. الأساطير القديمة لا تقوم على الواقع، بل تختلق شخصيات ذات قوى خارقة تدخل في صراع عنيف بين الخير والشر.

a. Ancient fables are not based on reality, but rather create supernatural characters who engage in a violent struggle between good and evil.

b. Ancient myths are not based on reality, but rather create supernatural characters who engage in a violent struggle between good and evil.

c. Ancient myths are not based in reality, but rather create supernatural characters who engage in a violent struggle between good and evil.

d. Ancient myths are based on reality, but rather create supernatural characters who engage in a violent struggle between good and evil.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. To be means behaving or speaking in a way that is correct for the social situation you are in, and showing that you are careful to consider other people's needs and feelings.

a. humble b. generous c. polite d. fed up

2. War needs people who do not fear death.

a. modern-day b. generous c. brave d. fed up

3. You need more evidence to your arguments.

a. take b. support c. bring d. pay

4. "Mo Salah is a legendary footballer." In this utterance, the adjective 'legendary' is an antonym of

a. unknown b. obscure c. a & b d. well-known

5. A joke doesn't make you laugh unless you understand its cultural

a. context b. dove c. hunter d. argument

6. The moral is the of a novel, a story or a film.

a. trap b. trick c. tale d. purpose

7. A is a practical lesson about what to do or how to behave, which you learn from a story or from something that happens to you.

a. moral b. perspective c. conclusion d. creature

8. Something that is 'entertaining' is

a. boring b. amusing c. interesting d. b & c

9. He he wouldn't be able to sleep until he had finished it.

a. asked b. wondered c. said d. told

10. She asked me whether there before.

a. I had been b. I went c. I go d. had I been

11. My uncle promises he wait for me at home.

a. would b. will c. can d. may

12. My father wondered where his keys

a. put b. are putting c. were put d. are put

13. He asked me I had had lunch or not or not.

a. whether b. weather c. if d. a & c

14. I asked her if she was enjoying the novel she

a. read b. was reading c. will read d. would read

15. "If I were you, I'd take your coat."
- My mother me to take my coat.
a. advised b. recommended c. suggested d. explained
16. "Do exercise 2 again," said Leila.
- Leila asked exercise 2 again.
a. to do b. that I do c. whether I do d. if I did

Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

At the start of the Civil War, the people in the state of Tennessee struggled with the decision of whether to stay with the Union or to join the Confederacy. Eventually, the state would be the last to secede. However, there were people living in the state who would remain loyal to the Union. One such person was Captain William Driver. Driver is best known for a special flag he owned and hid during the Civil War, affectionately called "Old Glory."

William Driver was born in 1803 and was apprenticed to a blacksmith. Hating his situation, Driver ran away and became a cabin boy on a ship. His father told him not to come home until he had his own ship and was captain. Eventually, Driver did become a captain of his own ship. The people of his hometown in Salem, Massachusetts, were all very proud of Driver and made him a huge flag that was twelve feet by twenty-four feet, which he nicknamed "Old Glory." Driver eventually sailed around the world and even rescued the descendants of the crew that had mutinied against their captain on the British ship the *HMS Bounty*.

Later, Driver would retire to Nashville, Tennessee, leaving the sea behind and becoming a clerk at his brother's store. During the Civil War, he hid "Old Glory" by sewing the flag into a quilt. When Tennessee was taken over by Union soldiers, the soldiers asked Driver to raise his flag over the state's capitol. As people heard about Driver and his flag, others began calling the American flag "Old Glory," a nickname that is still used today for the flag of the United States of America.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

17. What is the best title for this passage?

- a. William's fast ship b. Old Glory
c. A brave captain d. A valueless flag

18. How do you think Driver felt towards the flag?
a. The flag represented his loyalty to the Union.
b. The flag was a memento from his younger days.
c. It reminded him of being a captain of his own ship.
d. The flag was not special to Driver.

19. The moral that we can get from the text is
a. you should do your best to achieve yours goals
b. you should always achieve others' goals
c. you should have your own ship on time
d. you should retire when you become old

20. Why do you think William Driver hid the American flag during the Civil War?

- a. He knew that the large flag would make his quilt thicker and warmer.
b. He liked the feeling of safety he had being covered with the American flag.
c. He wanted to hide the flag from his neighbours in Salem, Massachusetts.
d. He was worried the Confederates would take or harm the Union flag.

21. The second paragraph deals with

- a. William's education b. Sewing William's flag
c. Captain William's life d. Buying William's ship

22. What can you infer استنتج about William Driver?

- a. He rarely finished anything he started.
b. He was a person with an extremely strong will.
c. He had become sick of the ocean as he aged.
d. He missed his days as captain of his own ship.

23. The meaning of the word "secede" according to the passage is to

- a. win b. lose c. remain d. leave

24. What happened at the end?

- a. The Union soldiers controlled the state.
b. The state joined the Confederacy.
c. William was taken to prison by the soldiers.
d. William went mad after his failure.

Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

The victory of the small Greek democracy of Athens over the mighty Persian empire in 490 BC is one of the most famous events in history. Darius, king of the Persian empire, was furious because Athens had interceded for the other Greek city-states in revolt against Persian domination. In anger the king sent an enormous army to defeat Athens. He thought it would take drastic steps to pacify the rebellious part of the empire.

Persia was ruled by one man. In Athens, however, all citizens helped to rule. Ennobled by this participation, Athenians were prepared to die for their city-state. Perhaps this was the secret of the remarkable victory at Marathon, which freed them from Persian rule. On their way to Marathon, the Persians tried to fool some Greek city-states by claiming to have come in peace. The frightened citizens of Delos refused to believe this. Not wanting to abet the conquest of Greece, they fled from their city and did not return until the Persians had left. They were wise, for the Persians next conquered the city of Etria and captured its people.

Tiny Athens stood alone against Persia. The Athenian people went to their sanctuaries. There they prayed for deliverance. They asked their gods to expedite their victory. The Athenians refurbished their weapons and moved to the plain of Marathon, where their little band would meet the Persians. At the last moment, soldiers from Plataea reinforced the Athenian troops.

The Athenian army attacked, and Greek citizens fought bravely. The power of the mighty Persians was offset by the love that the Athenians had for their city. Athenians defeated the Persians in archery and hand combat. Greek soldiers seized Persian ships and burned them, and the Persians fled in terror. Herodotus, a famous historian, reports that 6400 Persians died, compared with only 192 Athenians.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

25. The city mentioned in the last paragraph is
 a. Persia b. Athens c. Greece d. Etria
26. What mainly enabled the Athenians to defeat the Persians is
 a. their great army b. their love for their city
 c. the desire to take revenge d. the desire to invade another country

27. Athens had the other Greek city-states against the Persians.
 a. wanted to fight b. intervened on behalf of
 c. given orders for all to fight d. defeated
28. Darius took drastic steps to the rebellious Athenians.
 a. duplicate b. placate c. weaken d. destroy
29. The Athenians were by some soldiers who arrived from Plataea.
 a. captured b. welcomed c. strengthened d. held
30. The weakness point of the Persians was that
 a. they had a vast empire b. there was a conflict over power
 c. they were less in number d. they suffered from individual rule
31. The writer of this text is interested in
 a. science b. history
 c. the techniques of writing d. mysteries
32. Which of the following sentences summarises the last paragraph?
 a. The war was lost. b. The war was fruitful.
 c. The citizens were coward. d. Democracy beats dictatorship.

Choose the best Arabic translation :

33. To provide a comfortable life for its nation, the government should offer good services.
 أ. لتوفير حياة مريحة لوطنها ، يجب على الحكومة تقديم خدمات مريحة.
 ب. لتوفير معيشة مريحة لشعبها ، كان يجب على الحكومة تقديم بعض الخدمات الجيدة.
 ج. يجب على الحكومة تقديم خدمات جيدة لتوفير حياة مريحة لشعبها.
 د. كان يجب على الحكومة تقديم بعض الخدمات الجيدة لتوفير حياة بسيطة لشعبها.
34. Our great big cities don't suit modern living because of the great increase in population.
 أ. لا تتناسب مدننا الكبيرة مع الحياة المعاصرة بسبب الزيادة الكبيرة في عدد السكان.
 ب. لا تتناسب مدننا الحديثة مع الحياة الكبيرة بسبب الزيادة الواسعة في عدد السكان.
 ج. تتناسب مدننا الكبيرة مع الحياة المعاصرة بسبب الزيادة المفرطة في عدد السكان.
 د. لا تتناسب مدننا الكبيرة مع الحياة المعاصرة بسبب الزيادة المحددة في عدد السكان.

B. Choose the best English translation :

٣٥. تتمتع مصر بالكثير من المواقع الأثرية القديمة والمنتجعات السياحية الحديثة ، مما يجعلها واحدة من أكثر الدول الجاذبة للسياح.
 أ. Egypt has many ancient historical sites and modern tourist resorts which makes it one of the most attractive countries for tourists.

- b. Egypt has many old historical sites and modern terrorist hotels which makes it one of the most countries for tourists.
c. Egypt has much ancient historical sites and modern tourist resorts which makes it one of the most interactive countries for tourists.
d. Egypt has many old historical sites and modern tourist hotels which made it the most attractive countries for tourists.

٣٦. نحتاج أن نضع حد أقصى للأجور في الوظائف الحكومية ووظائف القطاع العام، لتحقيق العدالة بين كل الناس.
a. We should have maximum wages for environmental jobs and the jobs of public sector to believe the justice between all people.
b. We should have minimum salaries for governmental jobs and the jobs of private section to achieve the justice between all people.
c. We should have maximum wages for governmental jobs and the jobs of public sector to achieve the justice between all people.
d. We should have minimum salaries for environmental jobs and the jobs of public section to achieve the justice between all people.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

37. When should you use an apostrophe?
a. For a contraction (where letters are missing).
b. When an independent clause is attached to a dependent clause.
c. To indicate possession (where a noun owns something).
d. a & c
38. Choose the statement with the correct punctuation.
a. My uncle, who lives in Cairo is a film director.
b. My uncle, who lives in Cairo is a film director.
c. My uncle who lives in Cairo, is a film director.
d. My uncle, who lives in Cairo, is a film director.
39. To make email content concise and relevant, you should
a. break long text into paragraphs b. omit unnecessary words
c. keep sentences short d. a, b & c
40. An essay that presents information or facts is called
a. expository b. reflective c. descriptive d. narrative

- | | | | | | | | |
|---------|-----|-----|-----|---------|-----|-----|-----|
| 1. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) | 21. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) |
| 2. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) | 22. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) |
| 3. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) | 23. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) |
| 4. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) | 24. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) |
| 5. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) | 25. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) |
| 6. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) | 26. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) |
| 7. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) | 27. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) |
| 8. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) | 28. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) |
| 9. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) | 29. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) |
| 10. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) | 30. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) |
| 11. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) | 31. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) |
| 12. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) | 32. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) |
| 13. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) | 33. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) |
| 14. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) | 34. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) |
| 15. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) | 35. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) |
| 16. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) | 36. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) |
| 17. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) | 37. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) |
| 18. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) | 38. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) |
| 19. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) | 39. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) |
| 20. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) | 40. (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) |

made by Mansy

على ع النبي وإدع على دعوة حلوة

#دفعه المنوفية 2022

#قناة تالة ثانوى 2022